JOHN GLOVER

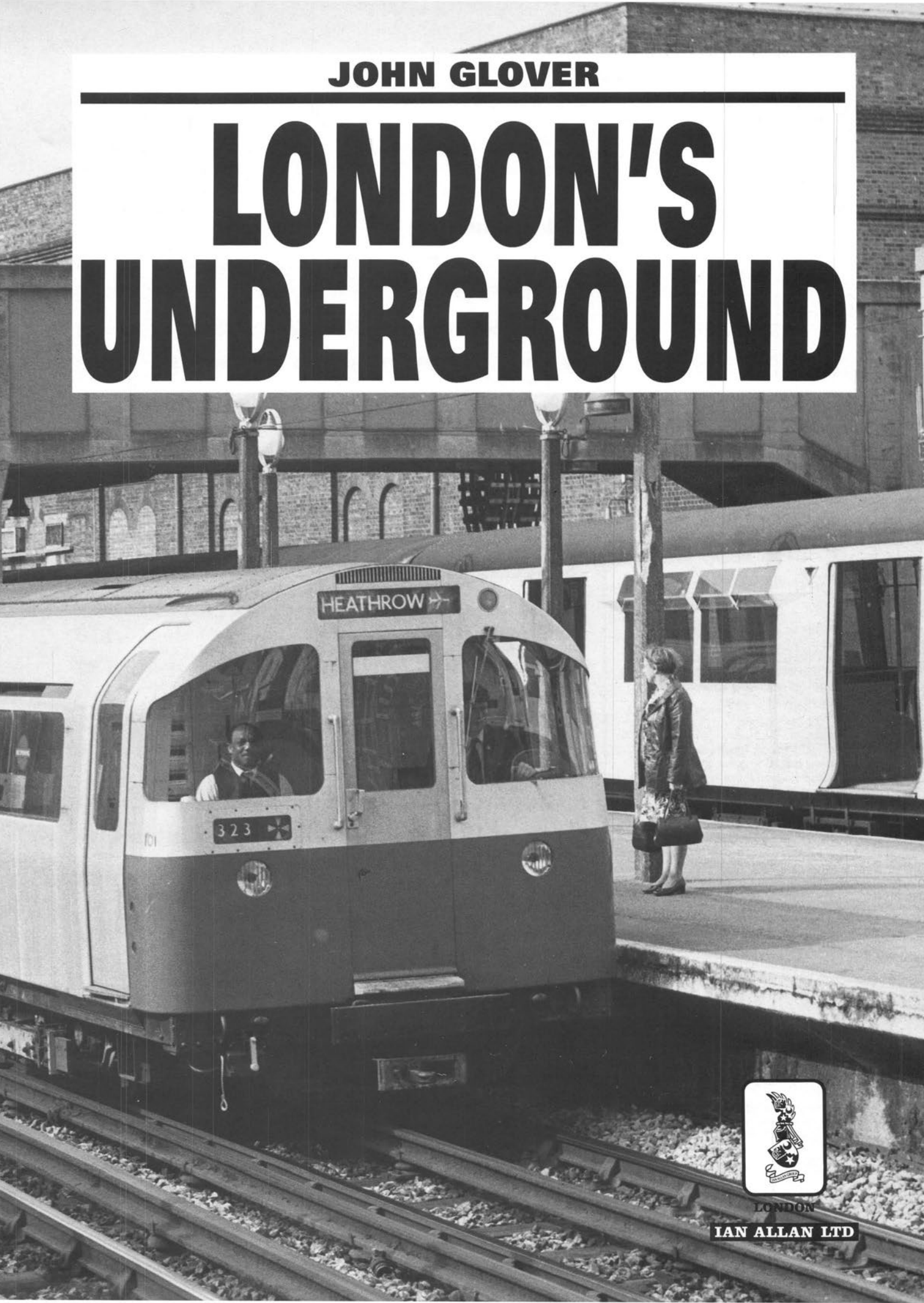
LONDON'S UNDERGROUND

LONDON'S UNDERGROUND

UXBRIDGE

JOHN GLOVER

LONDON'S UNDERGROUND



LONDON
IAN ALLAN LTD

Contents

Introduction	5
1 The Coming of the Underground	6
2 The First Tube Railways	19
3 The System Reaches Maturity	31
4 The London Passenger Transport Board	43
5 The Postwar Years	54
6 Development of the Underground Train	70
7 The Underground Station	81
8 Operations and Control	93
9 Engineering Support	106
10 Victoria Line to the Greater London Council	116
11 Light Rail in London	132
12 London Underground Ltd	140
APPENDICES	
1 Chronology of Principal Events	155
2 List of Underground Lines and Routes	157
3 Royal Occasions	158
Selected Further Reading	158
INDEX	159

Half title:
A detail of the styling applied in the 1930s on the Piccadilly Line extension is this combined seat and nameboard at Arnos Grove. ***John Glover***

Previous page:
A pair of 1973 stock trains are seen at Acton Town on 10 August 1978. The blind on the train on the right is incorrect, as it is just arriving from Heathrow. An R stock train stands in the District Line platform to the right. ***John Glover***

First published 1951
Second edition 1959
Third edition 1961
Fourth edition 1967
Fifth edition 1981
Sixth edition 1986
Seventh edition 1991

ISBN 0 7110 1899 5

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system, without permission from the Publisher in writing.

© Ian Allan Ltd 1991

Published by Ian Allan Ltd, Shepperton, Surrey; and printed by Ian Allan Printing Ltd at their works at Coombelands in Runnymede, England

Introduction

Forty years ago, the first edition of Henry Howson's *London's Underground* became one of the original hardback books to be published by the fledgling Ian Allan organisation, then based in Vauxhall Bridge Road. The present author can just remember seeing it for sale, and wondering why anybody should want to buy a book about holes in the ground through which trains chase one another at more or less regular intervals! Yet the confidence of author and publisher was well founded, and the book has seldom been out of print as edition followed edition over the years. The Underground railways of London have a long and distinguished history in the service of the capital, their fortunes waxing and waning as they struggled to match the changing demands made of them.

In 1863, the first element of the Underground system was born into an era of horse bus and hansom cab, of steam railways . . . and traffic congestion. Despite all the technical problems in those early days, it became common ground that the most effective means of allowing people to move in and about the capital city was by railways beneath the streets. The system expanded slowly until the turn of the century, when the advent of electric traction suddenly offered, literally, new horizons. There was a frenzied period of construction. This was private capital being employed for private gain, even if the profits turned out to be rather less than anticipated. Criss-crossing of the central area was completed in 1906, after which the promoters concentrated on extensions into the suburbs. Later, tunnels were enlarged and station platforms lengthened to cope with the growing traffic. The deep level 'tubes' vastly enhanced the travel opportunities in the built up area, but by pushing out beyond it were instrumental in the creation and nurturing of suburban London.

These excursions to the boundaries were not welcomed universally. The planning profession was distraught: 'The influence of electric trains on suburban growth was deplorable. Live in Metroland was the slogan of mutually supporting rail and building interests in exploitation of the house-in-the-country hunger of London workers and those in the new factory estates. . .' That *cri de coeur* was written in 1962, but the plain fact that the provision of public transport, and particularly rail, services had made a decisive impact on the form and growth of London, was there for all to see.

The Underground was thus a powerful tool in its effect on land use patterns and development, but its own evolution from the 1920s onwards was dependent on at least some support from public funds. Perhaps the long drawn out post war hiatus in the 1950s was due to lack of agreement as to what the Underground was there to achieve. The Victoria Line was 20 years in gestation before it was opened in stages from 1968 to 1971, the operators by that time having exhausted their ingenuity for devising improved means of handling the traffic on offer. Its opening coincided with the solution of passing the problem to local politicians in 1970, which then proceeded to demonstrate how wide a gulf there could be between opposing, albeit sincerely held, views. Unfortunately, a system as complex, permanent, and with such long lead times as an Underground railway, is among the least able to adapt quickly to political whim.

Since 1984, London Underground has been a subsidiary business of London Regional Transport, a state-owned corporation. Today, the Underground is far from a monopoly provider, with two million private cars registered in the Greater London area alone. Once again, the single most important problem is congestion, whether on the streets or in the record traffics now being carried on the rail systems. Once again, there is no shortage of plans on how to cope with the situation, though how many will be still-born remains to be seen.

Technical refinements accompanied the physical development. The trains became more sophisticated, with greater space being devoted to passengers rather than equipment, while the coming of the sliding door dispensed with the need for gatemen to be stationed at the ends of cars. Rubber springs needed less maintenance than steel. At stations, the escalator replaced the lift. Technology assisted the development of traffic control systems, while out on the track signalling systems were perfected, and the welding of rails did much to reduce rail wear. Ticket machines enabled passengers to serve themselves long before the checkout became commonplace in the retail trade. Good industrial design became the hallmark of the system, epitomised by the roundel.

As the reader will find in the following pages, this is essentially a physical record of the Underground's development, concentrating on the growth of a whole system of lines out of a short stretch of smoky steam railway. It has been an outstanding achievement, notwithstanding the criticisms which may be fairly made. Perhaps the most remarkable aspect is that the Underground works today as well as it does; the credit for this lies almost entirely with the 20,000 staff of all grades, whose collective business it is to run the railway.

Acknowledgments

A book of this nature draws its material from many sources, but my greatest debt is to Henry Howson who, sadly, died in 1985 during the preparation of the last edition. In presenting this new seventh edition, I have taken the opportunity of totally revising the earlier script, as well as expanding considerably on the subject matter. Some suggestions for further reading from the vast amount of available literature are listed in the back of the book.

I am grateful to the Editor of *Underground News* for permission to reproduce extracts from *The Phantom of Aldenham* by T. Handorff, and my thanks go to all who have contributed in various ways. Naming individuals is always potentially unjust to others, but I would mention especially J Graeme Bruce who read through the script and made a number of helpful suggestions and Sue Woolley, the ever helpful former librarian of the Chartered Institute of Transport. Finally, it has only been the support of my own family which has allowed the book to be written at all, and their tolerance is much appreciated.

John Glover
Worcester Park
Surrey

1991

Chapter 1

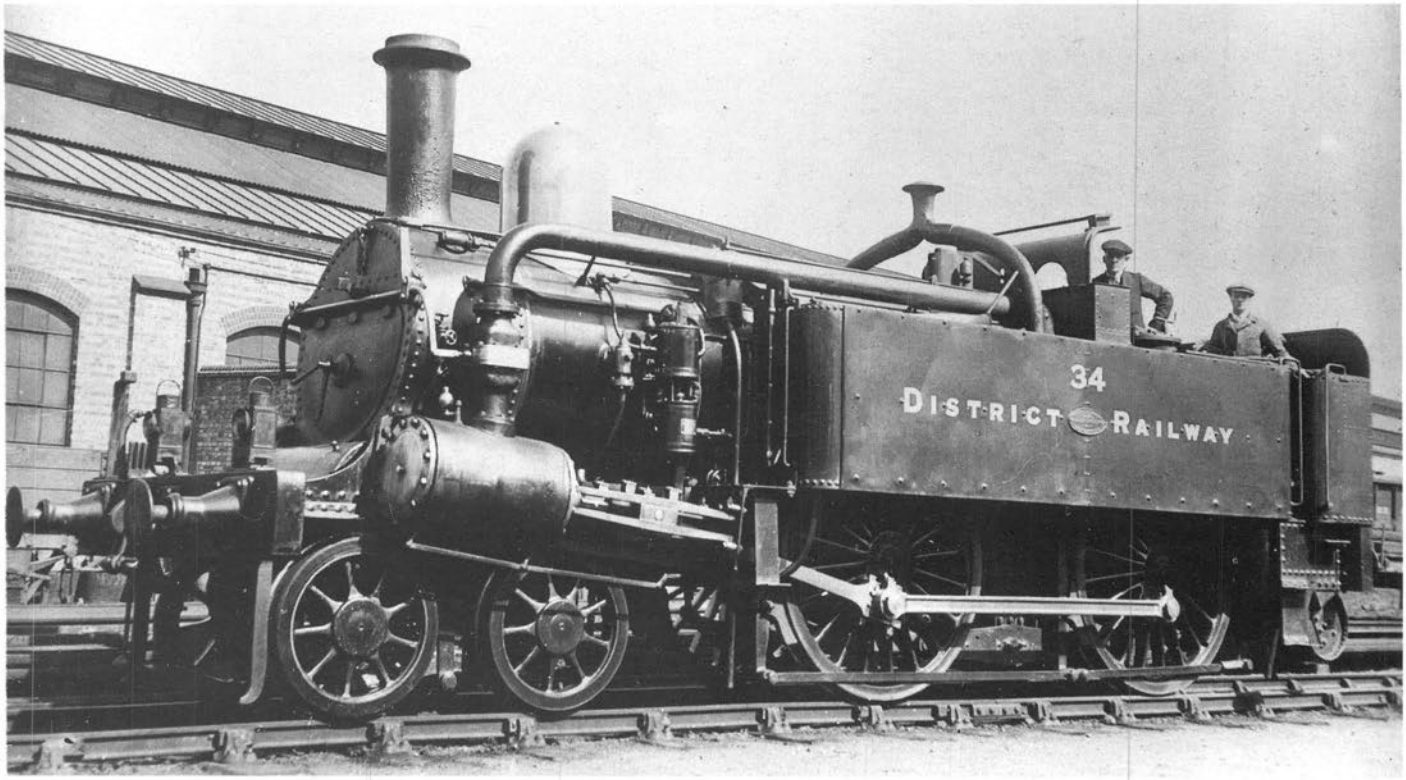
The Coming of the Underground

The site of London was originally selected way back in Roman times, offering as it did good drinking water and suitable locations at which to construct quays. A good 30 miles up the Thames estuary, London offered a degree of inland penetration by waterborne transport, which was far preferable to the muddy tracks on land which were, initially, the only alternatives for the occupying armies. The Thames thus became a major highway, and also a divider; hence London's axis has always been east-west. This influenced the detailed layout, but London was able to develop in all directions unlike, say, Liverpool, bounded by the Irish Sea and the Mersey. All principal streets like the Strand and Piccadilly run broadly parallel to the river. Industry was situated on the east, so that the prevailing westerly winds carried the smoke away from the city; as a result the west end became 'superior'. On the south bank, the alluvial deposits delayed the building of roads. Thus, the north bank with its better natural drainage was developed first, and it has always retained its pre-eminence in commercial, business, court and governmental terms.

In 1500 the population was 75,000, considerably smaller than Paris and the Mediterranean centres. In the 17th century it grew from 200,000 to 575,000 and in 1800 was over one million; by 1900 it was over six million, and eight million by the 1960s. The proportion of residents has remained fairly constant.

The growth was made possible by the industrial and agrarian revolutions, and the development of foreign trade. It was reflected in the river and street traffic, and street improvements, slum clearance and more bridges across the Thames went hand in hand. After the Napoleonic wars the need for enhancement of street facilities became ever more pressing, as London continued to spread outwards beyond the previously built up area. There was money to be made out of transporting people, and in 1829 George Shillibeer used horse buses for the first successful route between Marylebone, King's Cross, Old Street and the Bank. A fixed timetable was operated, with no pre-booking, both novelties in comparison with the hackney cabs. However, horse buses were expensive, and most suburban dwellers from Camden or Camberwell walked to work.

The first railways built for local traffic were the London & Greenwich, opened in 1836/38, and the London & Blackwall, opened from 1840. Oriented to passenger traffic, as were subsequent lines constructed to the south and east of the City, they contrasted with the main line railways to the north and west where short distance traffic was discouraged by few stations and trains. In time, this led to uneven development of



Left:
The original stations of the Metropolitan Railway have been much altered over the years, but nothing can disguise the sheer size of the west tunnel mouth at Great Portland Street and its suitability for the broad gauge. In this 1989 picture, a C stock train on the Hammersmith & City service is arriving. ***John Glover***

Above:
The ubiquitous 4-4-0T locomotives of Beyer Peacock were found all over both the Metropolitan and District Railways; this is No 34, a District Railway version. It was the last of that company's steam locomotives to be withdrawn, in 1928. ***Ian Allan Library***

the urban railways which were devised and built to fill the vacuum left by the main lines, in the form of the Underground.

The northern main line railways had been excluded from central London, siting their terminals along the New Road, today's Euston Road and its continuations. In the south the barrier was the river. Attempts to extend their lines into the centre to get better access were turned down by a Royal Commission in 1846; with few exceptions (notably Charing Cross) that decision stood. The railways were thus not going to be allowed to contribute to solving London's by now chronic traffic problems. Rather, they would henceforth be adding to it, by disgorging passengers onto the road system at what were then the outskirts. However, had they been given the go-ahead to approach the heart of London more closely, it is an open question as to the extent they would have done so, given the relatively enormous costs of property acquisition and demolition, or tunnelling – to say nothing of the investments represented by their existing termini which would then become redundant.

In 1855, a Select Committee had been set up to consider how to combat the congestion. It was estimated that over 750,000 people were entering London every day, whether by main line railway or by road, and the streets were being blocked by a variety of iron-tyred vehicles – omnibuses, coaches, hackney carriages, drays, and so forth – all making a vast din on the cobbled roads. With frayed nerves and tempers Londoners looked around for alleviation, and the Press were vocal in their denouncing of the 'scandalous state of London's transport facilities'. Grandiose and, one fears, ultimately impractical ideas were abundant. One of the most ambitious was the construction of a tile-lined glass arcade encircling central London. There would have been a street above and a railway below; trains on no less than four tracks would be powered by atmospheric pressure. This came from Sir Joseph Paxton of Crystal Palace fame, and was to have been titled the 'Great Victorian Way'. The Committee though seem to have had their feet firmly on the ground, and their recommendations included the removal of bridge tolls, and the linking of street improvements with underground railway building.

Some improvement in road passenger transport was afforded by the formation of the Paris-based London General Omnibus Co in 1856, which led to a shake out of the multiplicity of horse-bus operators competing one with another, and an altogether more orderly situation. Somewhat later, from 1870 onwards, the development in earnest of the rival horse tram offered the prospect of a cheaper operation, as the use of rails allowed the haulage of greater loads. In addition, all horse transport was given a boost through the importation of cheaper grain from abroad. But by then there was a new phenomenon in London, in the form of the Metropolitan Railway.

In his evidence to the Royal Commission, Charles Pearson, solicitor to the City of London, had presented his proposals for his Arcade Railway & Central City Terminus Co. 'Ingenious' said the Commission, and left it at that. But Pearson was undoubtedly right in his championing the cause of railways as a means of offering relief to London's streets, and it is thus of no surprise to find him as a leading light in the promotion of the Metropolitan.

With the help of John Stevens, Architect and Surveyor to the City (Western Section), Pearson evolved a plan for a steam-operated underground railway to run the 3¾ miles between Farringdon Street and Bishop's Road, Paddington. This was to follow Farringdon Road and King's Cross Road to King's Cross, and then more or less beneath the course of Euston Road, Marylebone Road and Praed Street to Paddington. Thus it would serve as a link between three main line railway termini: the Great Western at Paddington, the London & North Western at Euston, and the Great Northern at King's Cross. It did in fact eventually serve St Pancras as well when that station was built in 1868; prior to this Midland trains had used the Great Northern's premises at King's Cross via a long-defunct connection between Bedford and Hitchin.

Farringdon Street was chosen as the site for the eastern terminus principally because the City Cattle Market, then occupying the site, was about to be moved to the Copenhagen Fields, Islington. The Act of Parliament obtained by the North Metropolitan Railway Co in 1853, however, only authorised the construction of the section between Edgware Road and Battle Bridge. Here, it is said, Queen Boadicea routed the Roman legions before putting London to the fire and sword. Battle Bridge became the more prosaic King's Cross when in 1830 a tall octagonal building surmounted by a statue of King George IV was erected. Though demolished only 15 years later, the name stuck. Further Acts were thus necessary for the construction of the original line.

Work began in 1860, and it was always envisaged as being a complex task. Although the construction of bored tunnels had been well practiced by the canals and main line

Such was the weight of freight as well as passenger traffic on the newly opened Metropolitan Railway that preparations for doubling the line east of King's Cross began almost immediately. The 'widened lines' were opened in sections from 1866. This view is of what is now known as King's Cross Thameslink station from the east; behind the photographer the tracks dip sharply to pass below the Metropolitan before reaching Farringdon. A CO/CP stock train is passing in a view taken around 1965. *London Transport Museum*

railways, this was something new. The method of digging a trench for the trains and then roofing it over became known as 'cut and cover' construction. Finding and diverting sewers, gas and water mains and drains was followed by the excavation of vast chasms in the streets 30ft wide and 15ft deep, to be lined with brickwork and roofed over, followed finally by the relaying of the streets for surface traffic. Although the method minimised interference with private property and avoided the need for its purchase as the law then required, the effects on the road traffic in the vicinity must have been disastrous. Generally, damage to buildings was minimal, although owners were not slow in claiming for any structural defects which could possibly have been caused by 'the digging of an enormous ditch' in front of their properties.

A severe setback occurred in June 1862, when the Fleet river, which had been diverted into a ditch alongside the railway, burst. This flooded the workings to a depth of 10ft between Farringdon and King's Cross, and the opening was put back to the following year partly as a result of this mishap, but also because of the need for signalling alterations to satisfy the Board of Trade.

The means of traction was debated while the Bill was in Parliament. John Fowler, the Engineer, was said to have envisaged at first that trains should be blown through an airtight tunnel using giant compressors at each terminus. Such a system was being used on a mail-carrying narrow gauge railway in the City, but as with Brunel's atmospheric railway in South Devon before it, the difficulties of maintaining a satisfactory seal proved

Above:
This pair of dummy houses in Leinster Gardens, Bayswater, were built at the railway's expense to preserve the dignity of the neighbourhood, for the railway passes directly underneath. Environmental pressures are not of recent origin! The trees in the foreground have now grown to the height of the houses. ***O. J. Morris/IAL***

Right:
The Metropolitan Railway facade in the station at Praed Street, Paddington today disguises a station at which only Circle and District Line services call. This rebuilding dates from 1915, and was carried out to provide commercial letting space on two floors. ***John Glover***

insurmountable. Thus Fowler opted for a fireless locomotive, to be recharged with high pressure steam at each terminus, and assisted with a firebrick heater on the locomotive itself to maintain a working pressure. Regrettably, although having the desired effect in getting the Bill enacted, the technical problems proved to be altogether too much. A prototype was constructed by Robert Stephenson, but it languished in the sheds after being christened 'Fowler's Ghost'. Thus the Metropolitan opened for traffic on 10 January 1863 using conventional steam locomotives.

It had been a considerable feat to obtain finance for such a novel undertaking, the costs of construction of which were inevitably huge in comparison with its length. But an even greater potential hurdle must have been the attitude of the public to being hauled through glorified sewers by smoke belching monsters. Pearson had been indefatigable in his promotion of the project, and it is sad to record that he died too soon to see the realisation of his ambitions. Nevertheless, much interest had been created by the very visible construction methods, and private viewing days were laid on for Mr and Mrs Gladstone and other notables, who rode through the newly built tunnels in open wagons! On 9 January 1863, the formal opening was celebrated by a banquet held at Farringdon Street, and the special trains as they approached the station were heralded by music from a band.

Despite a sceptical Press, the Metropolitan was well patronised from the start. With fares of up to 9d (3.75p) for a First Class return, as much as £850 was taken on the first day. Patronage was 9,500,000 in the first year and 12,000,000 in the second, and did not look back.

From the start of services proper on 10 January, closed carriages were used. This original section of Metropolitan track was laid to the mixed gauge of standard and the Great Western's broad gauge of 7ft 0¼in. At first, the GWR supplied the motive power, rolling stock and personnel. 22 coke-burning 2-4-0Ts of Gooch design were fitted with condensing apparatus, whereby nuisance from atmospheric pollution was to be attenuated. They were named after insects, foreign rulers and flowers, in true Great Western fashion. These were complemented by 45 eight-wheeled coaches of various origins, but all were lit by coal gas as were the stations.

The Great Western proved to be an uncertain partner for the Metropolitan. The Metropolitan management were anxious to increase service frequency from the basic four trains an hour to cope with a traffic running at 27,000 journeys daily, but the cautious Great Western objected to the effect of the additional working costs. Only two months after opening, payments were being withheld; then, outraged at not receiving an allotment of shares in the Moorgate Street extension, the GWR used this as a lever to bring the Metropolitan to heel. Or so they hoped. Late in July 1863, an ultimatum was issued by Paddington that the GWR would cease all operations from 30 September, a date then advanced to 11 August. Furthermore, they would not sell the locomotives and rolling stock to the Metropolitan for that company to run the service itself.

Both the Great Western and the City of London Corporation had put up substantial sums for the Metropolitan, the GWR seeing advantage in the access to the City which it otherwise had no hope of reaching. The Corporation wanted the removal of carts from the streets. Both it and the GWR were thus keen to see rail access constructed to the new market at Smithfield. Fortunately for the Metropolitan, arrangements had also been entered into with the Great Northern, as a result of which connections had been provided to that company's lines. Hence it was to the Great Northern that the Metropolitan turned in its hour of need. It turned out that the Great Northern were not averse to scoring a few points off Paddington. By a superhuman effort in concert with the London & North Western company, the GNR managed to assemble sufficient rolling stock to work the services from 11 August on the standard gauge, which had so fortuitously been provided.

With scratch crews unfamiliar with the line, service quality went downhill rapidly. On the first day alone, six trains were derailed due to misalignment of the hitherto

Above:
The view towards Edgware Road at platform level at Paddington shows the original elegant wrought iron ribbed roof above the retaining walls. A C stock train for Wimbledon is arriving. ***John Glover***

unused standard gauge rails, but order was soon restored. The arrangement could only be a stopgap, and the Metropolitan hurriedly ordered locomotives and coaches of their own.

The locomotives were outside cylindered 4-4-0Ts built by Beyer Peacock & Co of Manchester, and were an adapted version of a design supplied for export to Spain. There was no cab roof, only a cab plate, which on later versions carried a top lip which was bent back to afford a little more protection for the crew. The engines were painted green, with the typical Beyer Peacock fittings of polished brass domes and numbers on the copper capped chimneys; each weighed just over 42 tons. The first order for 18 of the 'A' class was later expanded to 44 over several batches delivered from 1864 to 1870. The improved 'B' class followed, and ran to 22 locomotives between 1879 and 1885. The Metropolitan replaced the green livery with maroon from 1885. This outstandingly successful class was further multiplied for the Metropolitan District Railway which secured 54, making 120 in all. The principal (and important) difference was the Metropolitan's use of the automatic vacuum brake, having first experimented with the Clark & Webb chain brake, whereas the District used the incompatible Westinghouse air system. The Metropolitan District used their locomotives exclusively up until the end of steam traction in 1905, but the Metropolitan went on to purchase and build a number of types of tank engines for general work.

One of the biggest problems confronting the engineers of the underground steam railways was to provide and maintain a supply of breathable air in tunnels and stations. The Metropolitan engines burned coke, which is clean but gives off poisonous fumes, and after abortive trials with additional ventilators at the stations, the railway went over to coal, with the immediate result of an extremely smoky atmosphere. It reached its worst at Gower Street (today's Euston Square). As a remedy, certain openings originally provided in the covered way at King's Cross and elsewhere for lighting purposes were adapted as smoke vents, and finally 'blow holes' were bored all along the route between King's Cross and Edgware Road. They were covered by gratings in the roadways above, and were prone to sudden belchings of steamy vapour which startled the passing horses.

The locomotives were fitted with condensing gear, which gave the driver a means of diverting exhaust steam from the chimney outlet into the water tanks, where the steam condensed, leaving the tunnels more or less clear of smoke and vapour. The trouble was that the blast on the fire was much reduced, and the power of the engine correspondingly impaired, whereas to maintain schedules between closely spaced stations needed a pretty lively engine. By rule the driver would operate his condensing lever on approaching a tunnel section, and restore the chimney exhaust wherever the line was not enclosed. From the sulphurous state of the tunnels, which some passengers found actively nauseating, it seems that the rule was not always obeyed. Matters were bearable initially, but conditions worsened as the frequency of service increased, and niceties such as the replacement of the warmed condensing water with cold at the end of each journey were abandoned.

The first of the new coaches were delivered by the Ashbury Railway Carriage Co on 1 October, and were finished externally in varnished teak. First Class was distinguished by being painted white above the waist, and was fitted with carpets, mirrors and well-upholstered seats. No doubt this offset to some extent the discomfort caused by penetrating smoke in such confined spaces. Furnishings decreased in elegance according to the class, as did the space allotted per person, and one imagines that the third class passenger was usually glad to resurface, somewhat stiff after a ride during which all the windows had to be kept closed. It seems a little incongruous that after all this there should have been a 'No Smoking' rule applied impartially across all three classes, though this was later rescinded.

Above:
The District Railway ticket office at Fulham Broadway, opened as Walham Green, carries the DR monogram on the brackets below the roof level. Many London Underground stations have a decidedly dated appearance, which does not match today's market-led approach too well. ***John Glover***

For the locomotive crews, the experience of driving steam locomotives underground, even with rather more openings to the sky than remain today, was not pleasant. 'In the summer you could hardly breathe going through the tunnels, it was so hot. It was enough to boil you on the footplate. You took your jacket off and stripped down to your shirt. There was a terrific wind and smoke going through the tunnels . . . I'd shovel about two hundredweight in a day's work: it was a dirty, hot, sweaty job, but we had to put up with it'. This was George Spiller, in the early years of the present century. Nevertheless, the locomotives performed a grand job, and it is pleasing to relate that one of the 66 constructed, No 23, has survived, to find a permanent resting place in the London Transport Museum.

The broad gauge trains disappeared for good from central London, and their rails had been totally removed by 1873. The GWR left behind only a few rather more widely spaced running lines than might otherwise have been there.

The Metropolitan was run first and foremost as a passenger railway, and carried 9½ million passengers in its first year, a figure which rose to 28 million by 1868. Workmen's trains were introduced at a fare of 1d (0.4p) per single journey, but the line remained peripheral to central London. It thus became apparent that a route running through the heart of the capital from east to west might command even more success.

Murky and grimy the Metropolitan may have been, but that did not deter the good people of west London from pressing for an equivalent. At least the journey could be accomplished in the warm and dry, and more quickly than along the streets. The latter bore copious evidence of the use of horses, which made them especially unpleasant in wet weather. A few years after the opening of the Metropolitan, the District started operations, and thereafter each line carried out a programme of extension with the same object in view: to bring the suburbs and the underdeveloped country beyond into direct rail communication with central London.

The first section of the Metropolitan District Railway opened in 1868 between South Kensington and Westminster, a distance of just over two miles. Construction was not without difficulty; the Westbourne River had to be contained and carried over Sloane Square station in a conduit, and the company had to take special precautions to ensure that Westminster Abbey did not vanish into the cut and cover construction. Concurrent developments saw what became known as the Inner Circle begin to take shape. The Metropolitan extended from a junction west of Edgware Road, with a new line turning south through Notting Hill Gate to meet the Metropolitan District in an end-on junction at South Kensington. Environmental objections overcame the original intention to run across Kensington Gardens and Hyde Park(!), and the present route was selected instead. Here too, the susceptibilities of the residents of the area were involved, and in Leinster Gardens, Bayswater, the railway was forced to build a dummy pair of houses, Nos 23 and 24. Although identical to the adjacent houses, they are merely facades 5ft thick, complete with false windows and front doors (minus letter boxes). Their purpose was to fill what would otherwise have been an ugly gap in the uniform, dignified, frontage of the row of buildings, for at this point the Metropolitan Railway passes beneath.

For the first 2½ years, the whole line through to Westminster was worked by Metropolitan stock, under an agreement between the two companies, but in the meantime the District (as it quickly became known) extended its lines eastward under Victoria Embankment to Blackfriars. Bearing in mind the smoke problem, the later District Railway engineers built their line in open cutting wherever possible and avoided much of the nuisance. This was not practicable along the Embankment and City sec-

tions, and here ventilators proved essential and unduly costly because of the need for camouflage. In the neighbourhood of Temple Gardens all surface evidence of an underground railway was frowned on, excepting Temple station itself, and the pump house chimney stack there had to be carried horizontally right along the station wall and up the side of a neighbouring building, where it was decently screened by the wall and could smoke without giving offence. The Embankment and this portion of the District were built together, the railway opening in May 1870 and the road six weeks later.

In the meantime, extension westward was contemplated. Projection to West Brompton over the District's own tracks took place in 1869 though the purpose, which was to connect physically with the West London Extension Railway, was never fulfilled. Kensington still lay in the western outskirts, and beyond was practically open country, with places like Hammersmith and Chiswick still villages but rapidly growing. Extension became a fruitful proposition, District trains reaching Hammersmith in 1874.

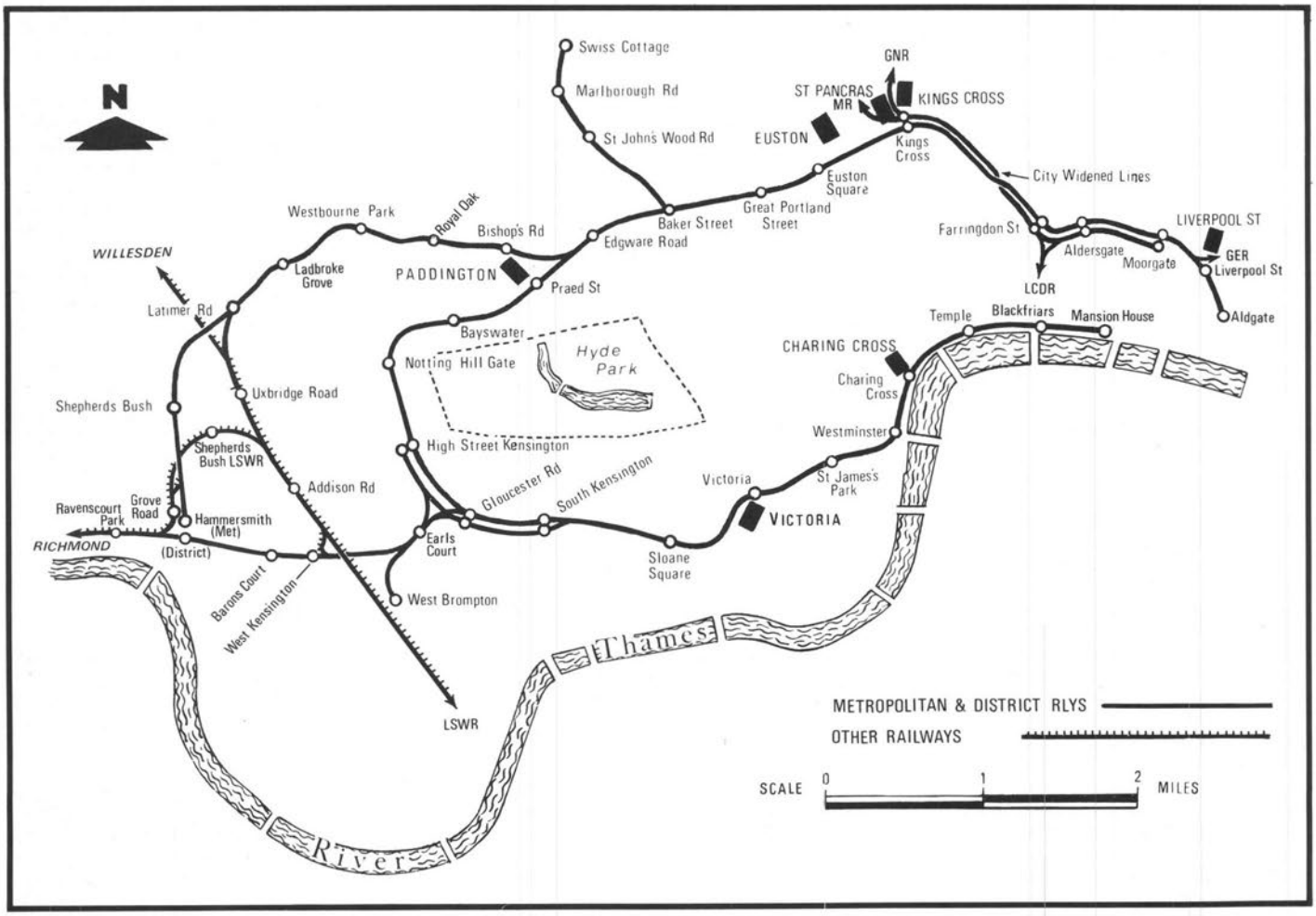
The suburbs were seen as the key to prosperity, and the District pressed on westwards. A short link at Hammersmith gained access to the tracks of the London & South Western Railway and thus to Richmond in 1877, with a branch leaving this line at Turnham Green and continuing to Ealing Broadway (1879). The West Brompton stub was pushed south to Putney Bridge in 1880, while arrangements were made to work the independently sponsored Hounslow branch from Acton Town in 1883. The District's last westward extension in the 19th century was over the Thames at Putney in 1889, to join with an L&SWR anxious to preserve 'its' territory, to Wimbledon.

Meanwhile the Metropolitan had been driving steadily east and west, with its ends both pointing towards the Thames, and an eastern extension to Moorgate was opened in 1865. In the west a railway between Hammersmith Broadway and Bishop's Road (Paddington) was opened in 1864 by the independent Hammersmith & City Railway, which made working arrangements with both the Metropolitan and the Great Western. Unwisely, the GWR had allowed this railway to cross their main line on the level; a diveunder was constructed between Royal Oak and Westbourne Park, and opened in 1878. A service was also provided from Latimer Road to Kensington (Olympia), then known as Addison Road, on the West London Railway. It was worked by portions detached from Hammersmith trains and ultimately gave access to the District at Earl's Court. As from 1872, after the District had struggled eastwards as far as Mansion House, it became part of the meandering 'Outer Circle' worked by the L&NWR between Mansion House and Broad Street via Addison Road and Willesden. By a connection at Grove Road Junction, Hammersmith, the Metropolitan gained access to Richmond from 1877.

The District's arrangements with the Metropolitan for that company to operate its trains meant that in return the Metropolitan received 55% of the receipts. However, this proportion was tied to a given service level, and if the District wanted more trains (as it did), it had to pay out more to the Metropolitan. Hoping to escape from what it considered to be an excessive outpayment to the other company, the District determined to work its own trains, and gave notice to that effect. It thus built for itself a depot at West Brompton, now known as the Engineers' Depot at Lillie Bridge. Additionally, use of the Metropolitan's facilities would be avoided wherever possible, and to this end the District created its own separate running lines westwards from South Kensington. The upshot was a prolonged 'who does what' battle on the 1872 Circle service between Mansion House and Moorgate; eventually the Metropolitan agreed that it would accept District trains providing half the Circle service on Metropolitan metals. The District also worked its own lines. Although a solution had been found, further altercations followed on matters such as the division of receipts for bookings to the South Kensington exhibitions held annually on what is now the Imperial Institute site, and of which the 'Exhibition Subway' is a tangible reminder. The quarrels enriched nobody.

The District also provided decent rolling stock. This company too used coal gas lighting, but rather than copying the Metropolitan system of carrying gas in long rubber bags in a clerestory on the carriage roofs, the District pioneered a distinct improvement in 1878 by substituting oil gas com-

Below:
The Metropolitan and Metropolitan District Railways in 1877.



Above:
The Metropolitan bought two off-the-peg standard industrial 0-6-0ST shunters from Peckett & Sons in 1897/9 for shunting the yards at Finchley Road and Harrow. This is No 101, which lasted (as No L53) until 1960. ***Bucknall Collection/IAL***

pressed into wrought-iron cylinders hung below the carriages. The gas was produced at Lillie Bridge depot and transported at night in mobile containers to various points on the system, where the carriage cylinders could be recharged. The use of compressed oil gas later became general in Britain.

While all this was going on, the Metropolitan began its long excursions into north west London and the land beyond, a journey that was to take it eventually to Verney Junction in darkest Buckinghamshire and over 50 miles from Baker Street. The promoters of the Aylesbury & Buckingham Railway could hardly have imagined that their railway, remote and unconnected with the London Underground system as it was, would one day become part of that distant and greater whole. Yet both the A&BR and the independent St John's Wood Railway which built a single line from Baker Street to Swiss Cottage were opened in 1868.

The Swiss Cottage appendage was forced to operate as a shuttle, the Metropolitan declining the use of the Baker Street Junction to enable trains to be projected towards the City. A passing loop had been provided at St John's Wood, and pilotmen were employed for the two sections each side of the loop to act as the authority to proceed. One wore a red cap and the other blue, and St John's Wood became a noted place for acrobatics. Here, each man changed over to the other's train, which he had to pilot to his original starting point, and seconds counted. On drawing level with the train waiting at the opposite platform face, the incoming pilotman would leap nimbly off the moving locomotive and join the outgoing footplate. The more prosaic wooden token, held by the guard rather than the driver, soon replaced the human one. Five 0-6-0 tanks were built for this service by the Worcester Engine Co to cope with the steep gradients, but these turned out to be overpowered and were substituted by the standard 4-4-0Ts.

Meanwhile, the prospect of trains from the Great Northern and elsewhere converging on its tracks and disrupting its traffic had been exercising the Metropolitan, and it was decided to construct a second pair of tracks between King's Cross and Moorgate. The 'Widened Lines' dipped down through a second Clerkenwell Tunnel, passing beneath the Metropolitan which was carried above them on the 'Ray Street Gridiron'. This was a remarkable skew bridge of wrought iron which also acted as a strut between the walls of the deep cutting. When all work was complete in 1869, a cross-London route was in place serving the Great Western, the Midland (via a connection to its new main line north of St Pancras), the London Chatham & Dover (by a spur to Farringdon from Blackfriars), as well as the Great Northern. All were thus enabled to reach Smithfield meat market. The Midland got to Moorgate with trains from Bedford in July 1868, nearly three months before St Pancras was ready, and Moorgate thus became the company's first London terminus.

The Metropolitan reached east to the Great Eastern at Liverpool Street in 1875, making connections with the main line as well as building its own station. Ironically, in view of the constructional and subsequent operational complexities which ensued for the GER's Liverpool Street terminus, the connecting tunnel saw next to no use. A century later it housed the BR Staff Dining Club, but it is now buried in the Broadgate development. The terminus at Aldgate was reached in 1876.

For the time being, that was it as far as the Inner Circle was concerned. The principal cause was that the Metropolitan was now under the control of the redoubtable Sir Edward Watkin, while the neighbouring District which had generally been considered a natural business partner and likely to fall under the same ownership, was headed by James Staat Forbes. With conflicting railway interests in Kent, these two men were personal enemies; what price therefore the construction of an inordinately expensive piece of linking railway 1.15 miles long under the City, which could only be worked satisfactorily in close co-operation?

Even without Watkin, relationships between the companies had been strained. Yet the public clamour for completion of the Inner Circle could not be resisted indefinitely. The necessary parliamentary powers were in existence, and eventually the City Lines & Extensions Act received Royal Assent in 1879.

Mindful of the disruption that cut and cover construction could cause, it was stipu-

Left:
The coat of arms of the Metropolitan District Railway, in stained glass. ***John Glover***

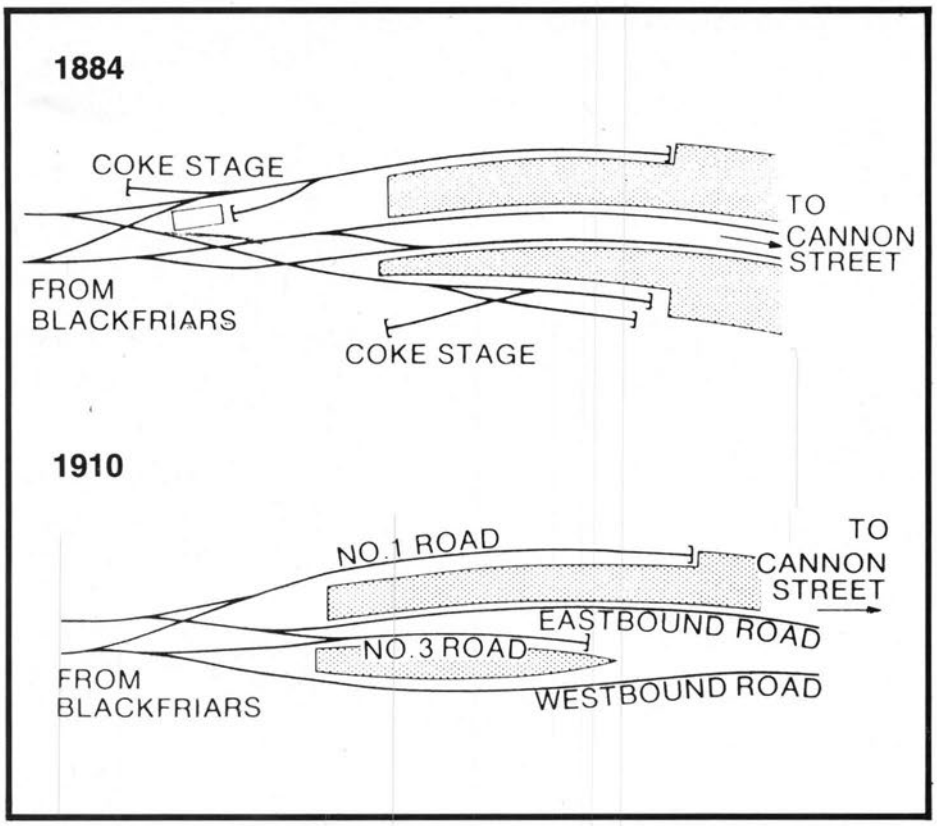
lated in the Act that during construction the streets must be kept open for road traffic from 0600 to 1800. Consequently, the excavations had to be covered with a timber roof as they advanced; eventually work proceeded at 20ft a night. Completion was achieved on 6 October 1884.

Operation of the Circle was not straightforward. To make sure that the intentions of the legislators were carried out, the Act had laid statutory obligations on the companies to maintain the Circle Line service once it had been established. This was perhaps wise, as the ability of the two companies to agree showed no signs of improving, especially as the financial results of the completion of the Circle project were disappointing. But there were fundamental difficulties in running a railway without a terminus: how would locomotives be coaled and watered, and the carriages 'gassed'? The practical solution was a two-minute stop at Aldgate for all trains to have the condensing water changed, with locomotives removed for servicing at South Kensington (Metropolitan) or High Street, Kensington (District). The locomotives were then reattached to the following trains. The problem of how to recover from delays without the benefit of a terminal layover was tackled in part by an examination of the cause. Most trains using the Circle tracks originated and terminated on the many branches which radiated from that core, using it as a kind of overgrown carousel, and the system in the early days was overstretched. Eventually, a compromise six Circle trains an hour instead of the eight intended enabled a workable result to be achieved. During busy parts of the day, the Metropolitan still managed to run an extra 13 trains an hour of its own along the northern side, a quite remarkable feat in the age of steam.

The City Lines & Extensions Act had also authorised both companies to extend eastwards and link with the East London Railway and its outlets to the south; the District also built its own eastern terminal at Whitechapel. The East London company had bought up the Thames Tunnel which was in use as a pedestrian subway in 1865, converted it to railway use and arranged with the London, Brighton & South Coast Railway to operate a service from New Cross to Wapping from 1869. Connections to the South Eastern and Great Eastern companies followed, the latter via Whitechapel and Bishopsgate Junction to Liverpool Street main line. A curve at St Mary's, Whitechapel, linked in the Underground railways from 1884, and from that time the Metropolitan and the District provided the local services under a working agreement. The main line companies all worked freight trains through the tunnel, and a passenger service terminated at Liverpool Street. It was said that Forbes, Chairman of the District, envisaged trains starting at New Cross and, having reached Aldgate East, running round the Circle in each direction alternately, and back to New Cross! It was no wonder that the operating managers of the day had difficulties.

If the completion of the Inner Circle was something which had to be virtually forced out of the companies, the same could not be said for the Metropolitan's bid for main line status. Sir Edward Watkin, chairman from 1872 to 1894, also controlled the Manchester, Sheffield & Lincolnshire, the East London, and South Eastern Railways, as well as having Channel Tunnel interests. It was not therefore altogether surprising to find him championing the Metropolitan as part of a great trunk railway from the Midlands and the North, across London to Dover, and thence to the Continent. The shareholders found that the short urban railway in which they had placed their savings was now intent on greater things. No matter; by 1879, the short Swiss Cottage appendage was extended to Willesden Green, and less than a year later to Harrow-on-the-Hill. At Neasden, a site was earmarked for workshops to replace what must have been desperately cramped facilities at Edgware Road. The tunnel section from Baker Street to Finchley Road was doubled in 1882.

Pausing shortly for breath at Harrow, it was not until 1885 that Watkin got his railway to Pinner, followed by Rickmansworth in 1887. By now, the Metropolitan had a



main line 17½ miles in length, which amounted to a very long country tail to wag the urban dog. Although Aylesbury was the objective and the company had the necessary powers to build the line, finance could not be raised and the railway was instead diverted to Chesham. Here, the grateful inhabitants presented the Metropolitan with the land required for the last half mile into the terminus to enable a town centre site to be found for the station; Chesham was reached in 1889.

Finally, the section from Chalfont & Latimer, which became the branch junction, to Amersham and Aylesbury was completed

Left:
Mansion House station in steam days in the 1880s, and after rebuilding for electric traction in 1910.

Below:
There are many evocative pictures of the Brill branch; this is Wood Siding. Note the raised platform for the Metropolitan's coach, the flag displayed to stop an approaching train, and the bridge in the background under which British Rail trains still pass on their way to Aynho and Banbury. *Ian Allan Library*

The spirit of the country branch line is evident in this photograph of Metropolitan Railway A class 4-4-0T No 23 of 1866 with a one coach train. This was the Brill branch in its closing days, circa 1934. That such a line should be owned and operated by London Transport seems truly remarkable. ***H. C. Casserley***

in 1892. From Aylesbury, further possibilities arose. For this was the starting point of the Aylesbury and Buckingham line, which to Quainton Road provided a natural extension of the Metropolitan, before turning north to Verney Junction on the Oxford-Bletchley railway. The A&BR's single line was promptly taken over by the Metropolitan, and doubled. The stage was now set for what was shortly to be renamed the Great Central Railway, formerly the Manchester, Sheffield & Lincolnshire, to press south and gain running powers over what were now Metropolitan tracks from Quainton Road. This was duly agreed, although separate running lines for Marylebone trains were constructed south from Harrow-on-the-Hill. This work was completed in 1899.

There remained the oddity of the Wotton Tramway, or the Brill branch, and a more unlikely concern to have become part of London Transport in 1933 can hardly be imagined. It started life as a private single-track railway owned by the Duke of Buckingham, and was constructed to carry staff and goods between Quainton Road station and the Duke's estate at Wotton. The line was 6½ miles long, with intermediate stations at Waddesdon, Westcott, Wotton, Church Siding and Wood Siding; trains took all of 1½ hours for the journey, including stops. Construction started in 1870; the first section from Quainton Road to Wotton was brought into use on 1 April 1871, and the whole line completely to Brill by the summer of 1872.

The first locomotives were a pair of thoroughly unconventional Aveling & Porter 0-4-0 geared locomotives, supplied at a cost of £400 each. Each 10-ton locomotive had a single overslung cylinder, 7¾in x 10in, connected through a countershaft and pinion to further pinions on the axles. Their maximum speed was about 8 mile/h.

Operation was at first contracted out, while maintenance work was undertaken by the Duke's staff. Signalling was primitive, but only one engine was in use at a time. The operating regulations were notably strict, and a rule book was published in 1873. This contained a list of fines which might be levied on staff for misdemeanours. Thus, 'If the train be late at Quainton Junction (sic) in consequence of a late Start, the fault of the driver in not having his engine ready, a fine of Half a day's Pay to be imposed.'

On the death of the Duke in 1894, the tramway passed as part of the estate to Earl Temple, and in that year the working of the line was taken over by the Oxford & Aylesbury Tramroad Company. This company set about improving the line, replacing the original light rails laid on longitudinal sleepers with flat-bottomed rails spiked direct to transverse sleepers. The rolling stock was also replaced, and the two original locomotives sold to the Nether Heyford brickworks, near Weedon, Northants.

Not wishing to miss any expansion potential in the area, the Metropolitan was pleased to lease the railway and purchase the rolling stock when approached; the company assumed control on 1 December 1899. The Metropolitan had already provided a new coach, much higher off the ground than the original offerings. Station platforms were raised, but to avoid the expense of complete rebuilding they were altered at one end only, retaining the 1894 tramroad buildings at the old level.

By the turn of the century, steam operation had nearly reached its zenith; only the Whitechapel & Bow extension of the District in a joint venture with the London, Tilbury & Southend Railway remained to be completed (in 1902), and the Uxbridge branch of the Metropolitan from Harrow-on-the-Hill. Steam trains began to work that line in 1904, but as a temporary expedient only; they were replaced by electric traction within six months.

Chapter 2

The First Tube Railways

The basic process of driving a large tunnel without disturbing the surface directly above is old. The first significant example for the London Underground was completed in 1843, although there was then no intention of putting it to railway use.

In March of that year, the first tunnel beneath the Thames was opened, connecting Rotherhithe on the south bank with Wapping on the north. Its length was 1,200ft. In fact, it was the first tunnel for public traffic ever to be driven beneath a river anywhere in the world. The engineer responsible was Sir Marc Isambard Brunel, with the assistance of his even more illustrious son.

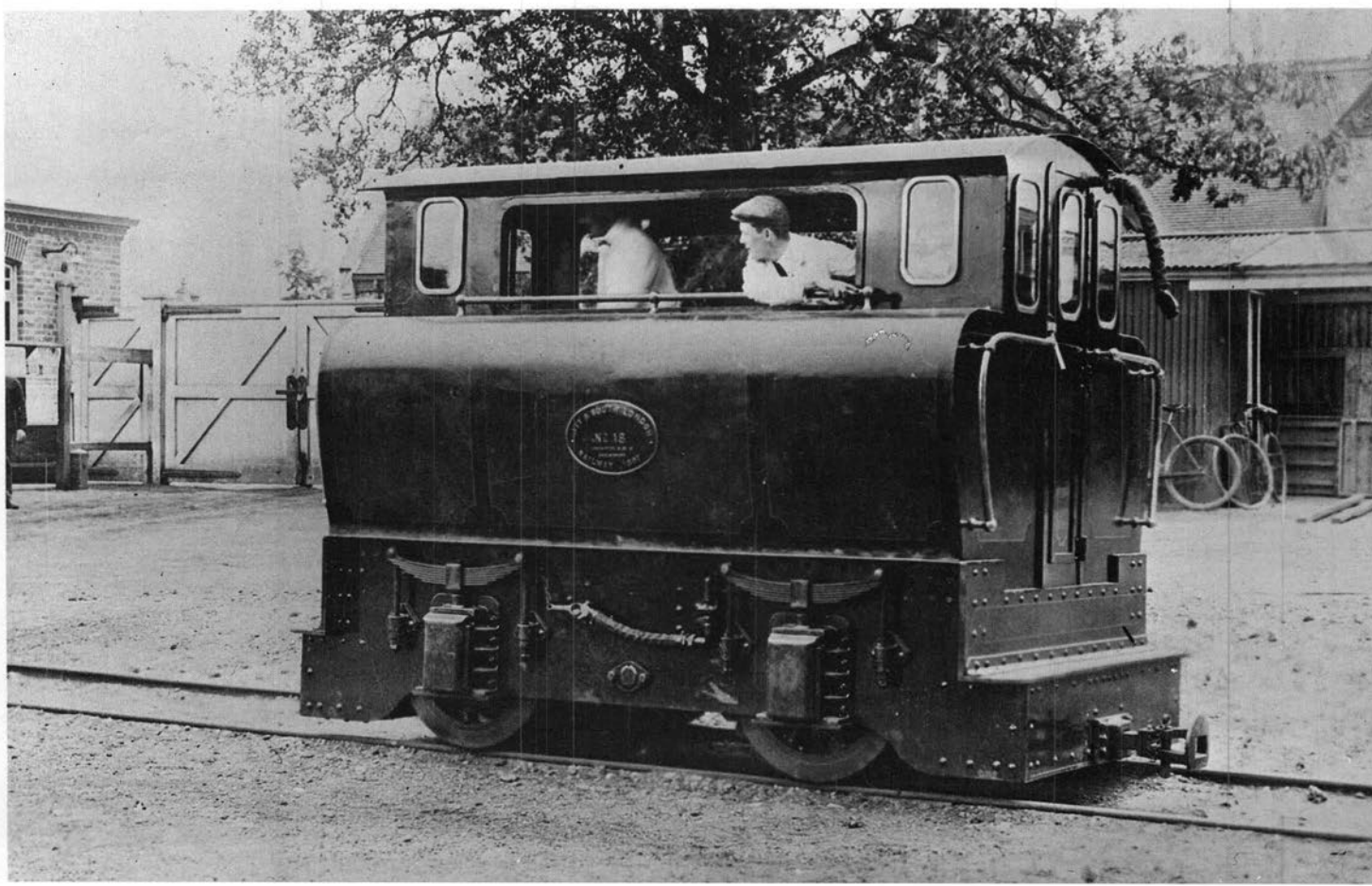
Brunel's method of tunnel construction was by a shield forced into the earth and excavated from within; although primitive by modern standards, the principles have yet to be bettered. For the Thames Tunnel, Brunel employed a rectangular shield made of iron, shaped like a huge box with open ends, and furnished with projecting teeth. It was placed at the working face of the tunnel, and as the face was gradually excavated the shield was moved forward, protecting the men within against the great pressure of the ground above them. The shield was honeycombed with compartments wherein worked miners and bricklayers, and as it moved forward beneath the river bed, the miner excavated the soil and strengthened the cavity he made. The bricklayer followed and lined it with bricks.

This tunnel was intended to expedite the work of the London Docks and to save horse drawn traffic from making the long detour via London Bridge. Long sloping approaches would have been necessary for this purpose, but when the tunnel was completed after a series of misfortunes, the promoting company had no funds left. The only access was by stairways down the circular shafts which had been used for construction access, and usage was thus confined to pedestrians. It was an extremely costly project which took 18 years to complete, including a seven year period during which it was abandoned through lack of funds. This followed an accident in which the Thames had burst through the roof, flooding the workings and drowning seven men; the project also claimed the health of Marc Brunel.

The opening saw a band of the Coldstream Guards at the head of a procession in which Brunel took part, but the tunnel was quickly dubbed a white elephant by a sceptical public. It languished until it was acquired, as already related, by the East London Railway. Nevertheless, Brunel had shown a way which many others would follow, and in 1869 Peter Barlow was engaged to drive a second Thames tunnel, this time between the Tower and Bermondsey. He improved on Brunel's method, using a circular shield and dispensing with brickwork, lining the tunnel instead with cast iron segments bolted flange to flange. The Tower Subway, as it was named, had a minimum depth of 22ft as against the shallower Rotherhithe tunnel, but was only 7ft in diameter when completed, which severely limited its usefulness. Barlow's shield was driven forward through the earth by levers and jacks, cutting into clay and averaging 5ft progress a day.

Both the method of tunnelling and the tunnel itself are notable in railway history, for Barlow's iron-lined tube was the first of its kind in the world. Since it also contained a small railway, it was also the very first tube railway. Passengers descended a shaft in a lift, and at the bottom took their seats in a car which was drawn through the tube by cable, worked by a small stationary engine. The rail track gauge was 2ft 6in and the car held 12 passengers. After a life of only three months, the company went bankrupt and the lifts and the cable car were removed. It lingered on as a pedestrian walkway until

Below:
The sideways driving position of the City and South London Railway locomotives is clearly demonstrated in this view of No 18, built in 1897 by Crompton & Co, who later gained a contract for the supply of the final 30 locomotives.
Ian Allan Library



the opening of Tower Bridge in 1894, since which time it has been used to carry hydraulic power and water mains under the river.

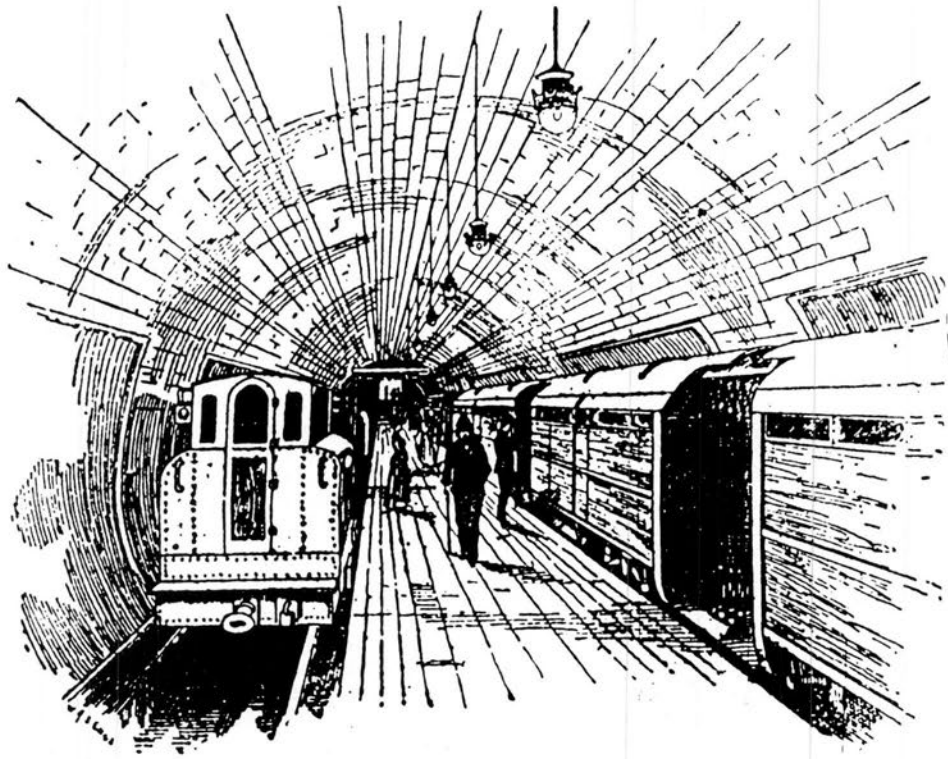
From these two beginnings evolved the famous Greathead shield, which cut most of London's subsequent tube tunnels. James Henry Greathead drove the tunnels for the King William Street-Stockwell tube railway in 1886, using a shield of his own design. It differed from Barlow's insofar as it was driven forward into the earth by hydraulic rams of jacks working at a pressure generally of 1 ton/sq in, although the larger Greathead shield used for the Blackwall (road) tunnel worked at a pressure of 2¾ ton/sq in. The rams pressed against the tunnel segments already fixed in place, and forced the 12ft diameter shield into the earth, enclosing a great core which was then removed by the miners. The excavated section of tunnel was sprayed with liquid cement, and after a ring of iron plates was placed in position, more cement was forced through the holes in the plates to fill the small intervening spaces; the process is known as grouting.

The driving of tunnels required a great deal of precision if they were to meet accurately, since an error of only ⅛in in sighting would throw the actual driving seriously out of alignment. Sufficient was now known to enable the whole of the tube network to be cut accurately.

Along the line of route, a series of vertical shafts was sunk, from which headings were driven at right angles to the line of route. To find the exact centre line along which to bore the running tunnel, a theodolite (an instrument for measuring angles by optical means) was set on the surface over the end of a heading and precisely over the subterranean line of route, but way above it. Two plumb lines were next hung down the working shaft, and exactly aligned with a sight on the instrument. The theodolite, thus set, was taken to the bottom of the shaft, and its position adjusted until this time it agreed with the plumb lines already adjusted from above. In other words, a sight line taken above ground was about to be transferred below, and it was then only necessary to determine a true right angle off the vertical plummets and to fix a true depth. When the correct distance along the heading had been measured, and the true right angle determined, the point and direction of the running tunnel's centre line was known, and work could begin.

The shield was erected in position in a chamber formed by several rings of iron lining, and a short excavation made in the working face of the running tunnel. Providing the earth was soft enough for the purpose, piles were inserted between it and the edge of the shield, and a forward thrust of the shield drove the piles into the face and broke up the earth for easy removal. With the Greathead type of shield it was necessary thereafter to cut a small chamber in the face in advance of the shield, so that the earth enclosed by the ring of the shield after each forward thrust might collapse into the space made.

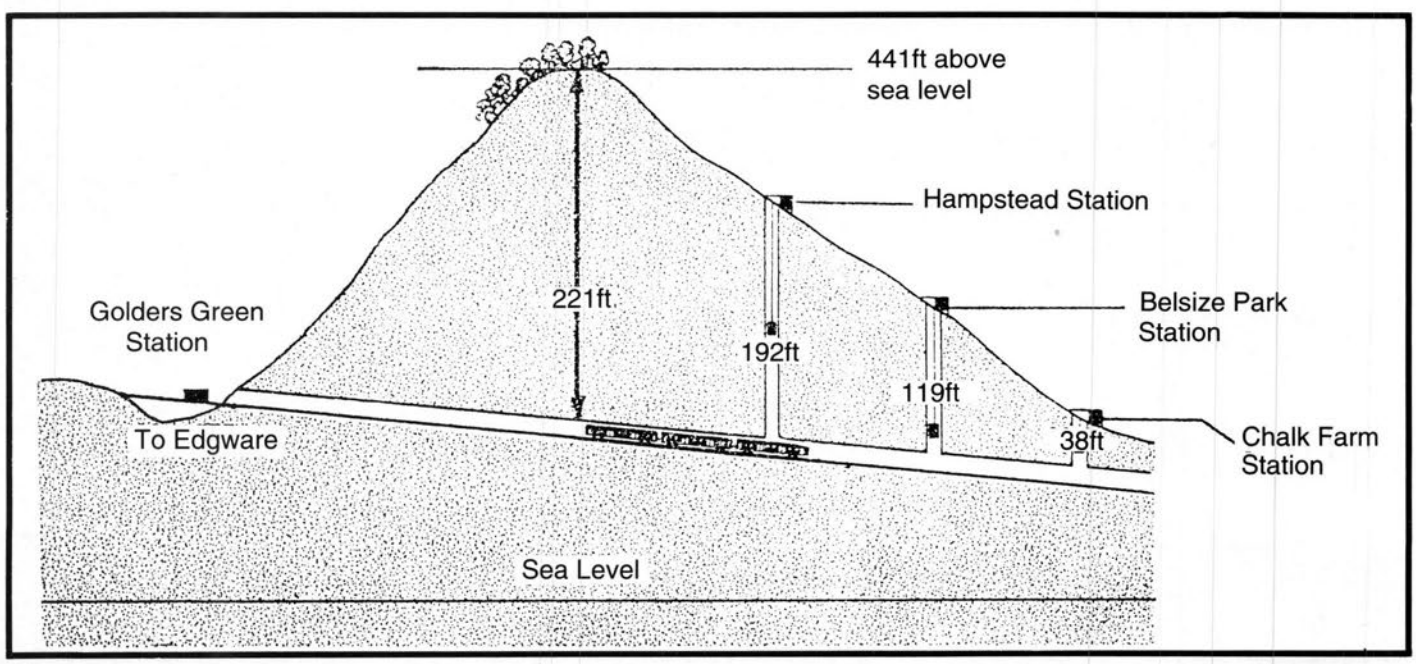
On certain sections of the London tubes, the tunnels may be seen to dip on leaving



Above:
This drawing of Stockwell station at platform level shows well the diminutive size of locomotives and trains. Both Clapham North and Clapham Common on the Northern Line still use the central island platform arrangement shown here. ***South London Press***

Right:
The City & South London Railway installed a 20-ton hydraulic hoist at Stockwell in 1906 after an unfortunate accident on the steep incline used initially. It is seen here with an unidentified locomotive. ***London Transport Museum***

Below:
The Northern Line passing under Hampstead, 1907.



the stations and to rise on approach to them; by looking through the end windows of a car where a sight along the interior of several successive cars can be had, the bend of the train on meeting each change in direction is perceptible. It has become the practice that running tunnels should be so graded for the double purpose of accelerating the departure of a train and retarding its speed on approach. The falling gradient of about 1 in 30 results in a saving in current consumption, and conversely the rising gradient, which is made rather less acute, results in an economy on brake wear. With modern trains possessing reserves of tractive power and powerful brakes these switchbacks are less important, although they still appreciably augment the overall speed when stations are closely spaced. The double reverse curve encountered on the Piccadilly Line at South Kensington though, and the fearsome bend on the Central Line at Bank, stem from a different reason, in that the builders preferred to follow the street patterns above rather than tussle with property owners over possible compensation problems.

On various occasions when driving tunnels, engineers have had to contend with more than clay or workable earth. They have encountered waterlogged sand, or have had to tunnel below rivers and streams where normal methods would have quickly resulted in flooded workings. The general procedure is to construct airtight working chambers and compress the air within them, so that there is sufficient pressure to keep out the water or, in certain cases, to help support the periphery of the tunnel face. If a waterlogged stratum is met when sinking a shaft, a vertical chamber is constructed; and if a tunnel has to be driven through a bed of soaked sand, for instance, then a horizontal chamber is made. In both cases a smaller compartment is constructed at the entrance to the pressure chamber to form an airlock, so that men and material do not enter or leave the pressure chamber direct from the outer air. The move from atmospheric pressure is thus via a chamber in which pressure can be increased until it equals that at the work face. On tube construction work, air pressures vary up to 35lb/sq in, but the average is around 10lb/sq in.

The greater proportion of tunnelling for London's tubes has been driven through what is known as London clay, varying in colour from grey green to yellow, and which lies on top of the chalk and sand that once formed a sea bed. The tunnels burrow beneath shallow beds of gravel and river drift which the Thames and its tributaries have deposited over the clay during the ages. Roughly north of a line represented by Euston Road, the London clay comes to the surface, and stretches out as far as the chalk of the Chiltern hills. In central and southern districts of London, pockets of sand and gravel, often waterlogged, are found lying beneath layers of 'made ground' formed by the foundations of older London. The depth of the made ground is as much as 24ft at Farringdon. Under a few parts of London the predominant clay is shallow in depth, and chalk is encountered, but generally London rests on a very thick layer of clay which is anything up to 450ft deep.

Little of this was known to the tube pioneers, but even in Victorian London it was clear that the cut and cover method of railway construction was unacceptably disruptive of normal day to day living. At the same time, the need to improve transport facilities within the central area, that is within the area of London encompassed by the Circle Line, became ever more pressing. An effective tunnelling method was therefore a prerequisite for the expansion which was to follow.

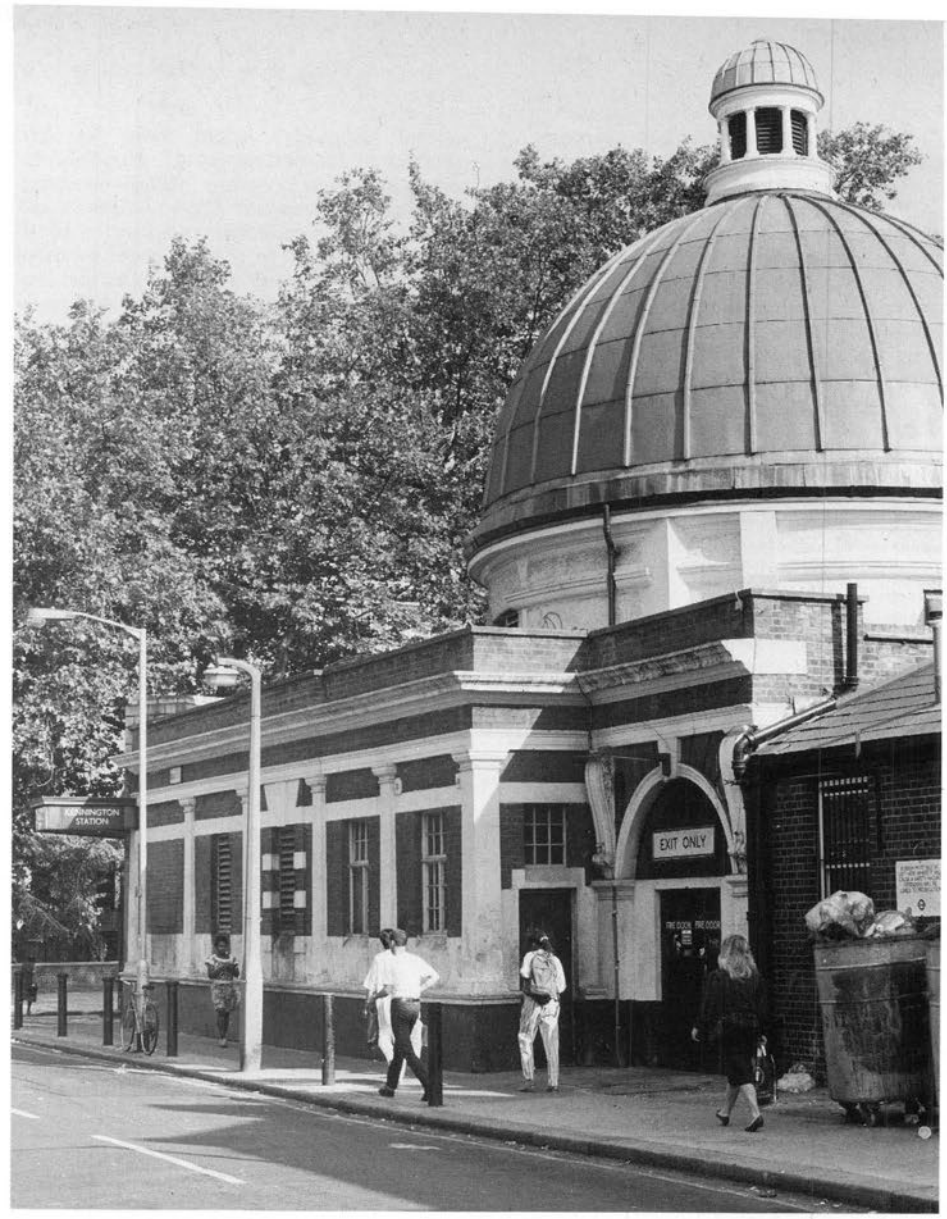
The other necessary technical development was the means of traction. Cable haulage had been used since the earliest days of railways, until it was supplanted by the steam locomotive. Could cables be used satisfactorily for underground railways?

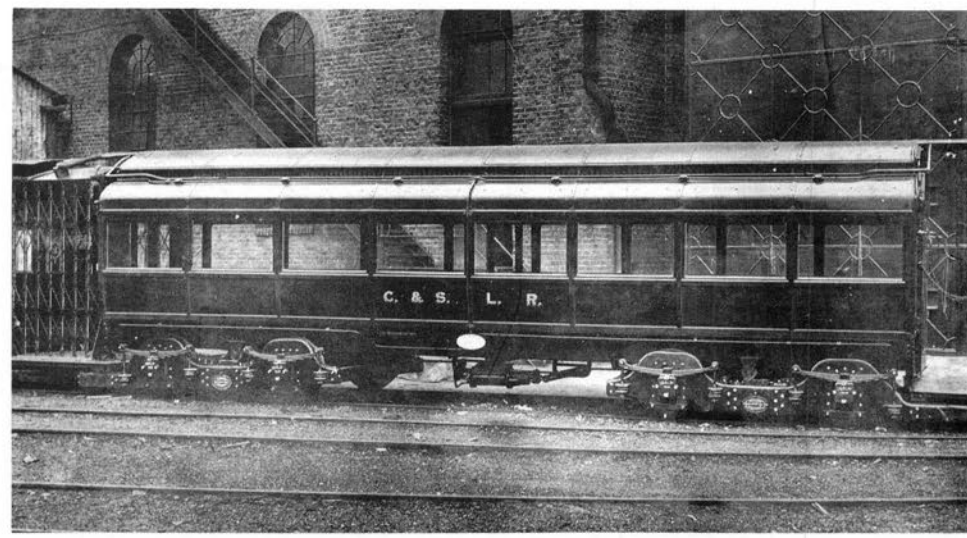
The City & South London Railway was built on the premise that they could. With an original route length of 1½ miles, quickly extended to three miles after work started when it was realised that the full potential of the line was unlikely to be developed otherwise, the C&SLR was to be powered by a stationary engine at Elephant & Castle. Two cables were to be provided, one at 10mph on the sharply curving section north to King William Street, the other at 12mph on the straighter and easier Stockwell section. Contracts were signed, but the work was never carried out as in the meantime the decision was made to adopt electricity as the motive power. This promised to offer a higher average speed and, ultimately, to be a cheaper medium than cable. Thus in 1890 the C&SLR opened for public traffic, its trains of three bogie trailer cars hauled by 12-ton electric locomotives at an average speed of 11½ mph.

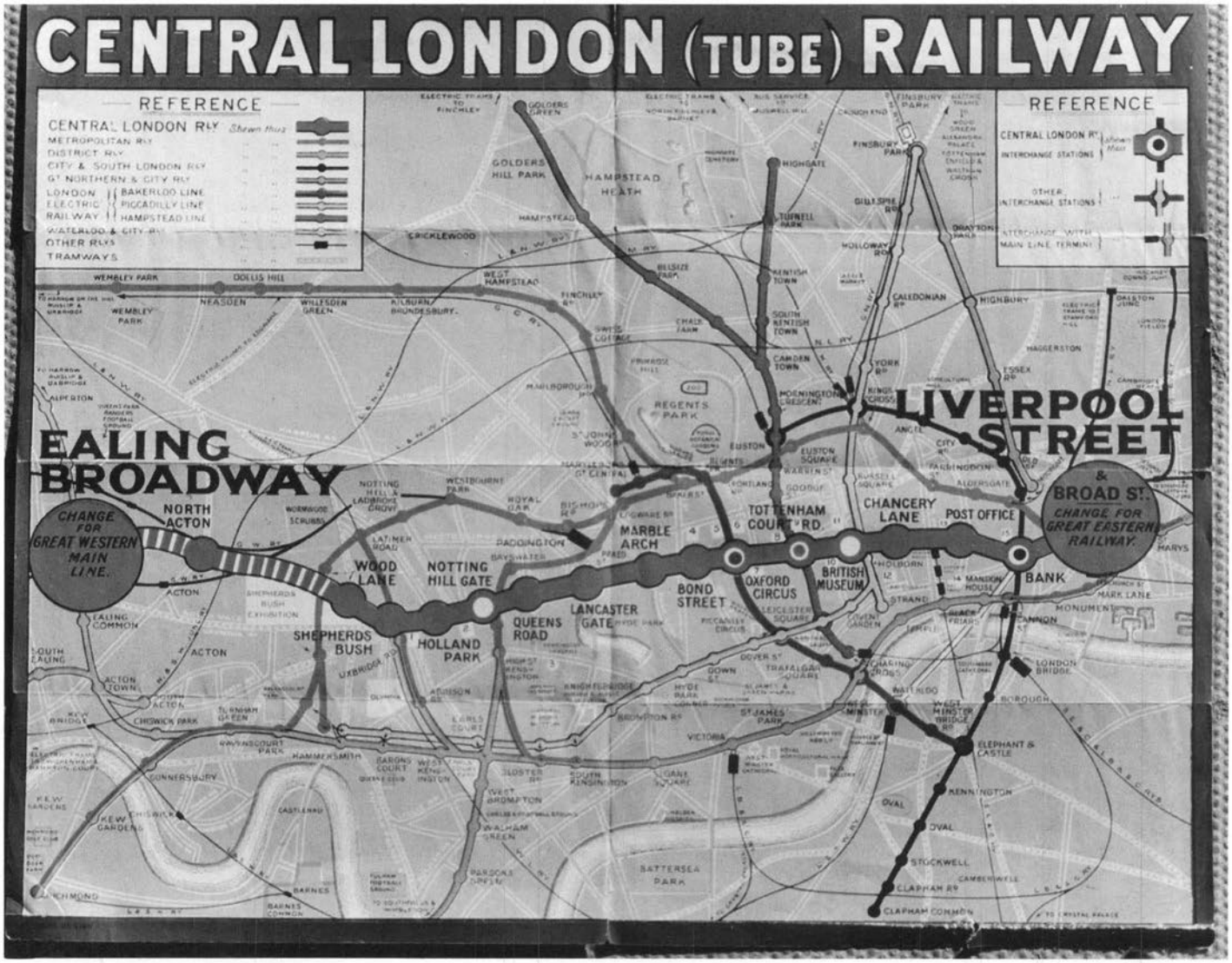
Only by their freedom from steam and smoke could these early trains have commended themselves to travellers. Unlike the creature comforts of the traditional steam hauled rolling stock found on the Metropolitan and District railways, the City & South London offered little amenity. It was a railway designed for a purpose, without the constraints of the compatibility needed for an installation which was part of a system. Its function as the 'sardine box' railway was to take passengers from one station to another, avoiding the delays from road traffic. This it did with remarkable success, and within three years of its opening was carrying 15,000 passengers each day. The coaches, appropriately nicknamed 'padded cells', were a mere 6ft 10in wide, designed for a tunnel purposely made as small as possible to reduce construction costs. Passengers sat on longitudinal benches, above which were tiny windows that were little more than ventilators, so that in the absence of advertisements passengers could do little more than sit and stare at one another. Electric lighting was provided, which was a luxury compared with the gas lights in the Metropolitan and District stock, so perhaps the fortunates who sat below one of the low powered bulbs were able to read their newspapers. If the description seems less than enticing, the tram alternative had oil lamps, and seats with negligible upholstery. The two guards on each train were responsible for control of the gates at the ends of the cars and also for informing passengers of the names of the stations. It seems that ridicule as much as anything else persuaded the company to build their future stock with larger windows; the fleet reached 170 cars by 1908.

There were basically two types of locomotives, represented by Nos 1-14 with flat sides, distinguished from later builds with rounded sides which gave more space for housing the air brake reservoirs. This was a matter of some moment, since the locomotives at first carried no compressors, and for their braking had to rely on a fresh supply of compressed air taken in at the terminus. The train pipe of the braking system was taken over the roof of the locomotive and its cars. The first 14 locomotives were built by Mather & Platt of Manchester, Nos 15-16 by Siemens, and most of the others by Crompton. A maximum of 52 were in service in 1901. All were driven by a pair of 50hp motors; No 22 was subsequently remotored in 1912 with two 120hp interpole units and was thus the most powerful on the line. The four-wheeled locomotives were minute, being only 14ft long, 6ft 6in wide and 8ft 6in high. Even so, the driving cabs extended from front to rear of the locomotive, with the driver facing sideways. Passengers waiting on platforms were thus presented with the odd sight of the driver facing them as the train rumbled in. Perhaps it was as well that he was provided with an assistant.

These midgets of locomotives were designed for an uncomplicated run under known conditions, and were therefore both simple in design and sturdy in build, with a minimum of fittings which could give trouble. There was no reduction gear in the drive, and the motor armature was mounted directly on the axle. Wiring was equally simple; the traction current merely passing from the collector shoes to a fuse cut-out and main switch, thence to a rheostat (or variable control), and through the motors back to earth via the axlebox, wheel and rail. In short, the locomotives were the absolute embodiment of electric motors on wheels.







Above left:
All the City & South London stations were provided with a pair of hydraulic lifts, but of the domes containing the winding gear only that at Kennington survives. This picture was taken in 1990. ***John Glover***

Left:
The City & South London Railway cars had seats for 32 passengers, 16 on longitudinal seats on each side of the car. The wheels projected above the car body floors into the under seat space, a feature which has been perpetuated on all subsequent construction. Electric lighting was provided, but a pair of oil lamps was carried for use in emergency. ***Lens of Sutton***

Above:
Map advertising the Central London Railway, 1912. The prominence of the CLR emphasises the competitive aspect of the Underground railways at that time rather than coordination! ***Peter White collection***

This highly practical engineering approach was rewarded by many years of hard work, hauling 40-ton trains at speeds of up to 25mph.

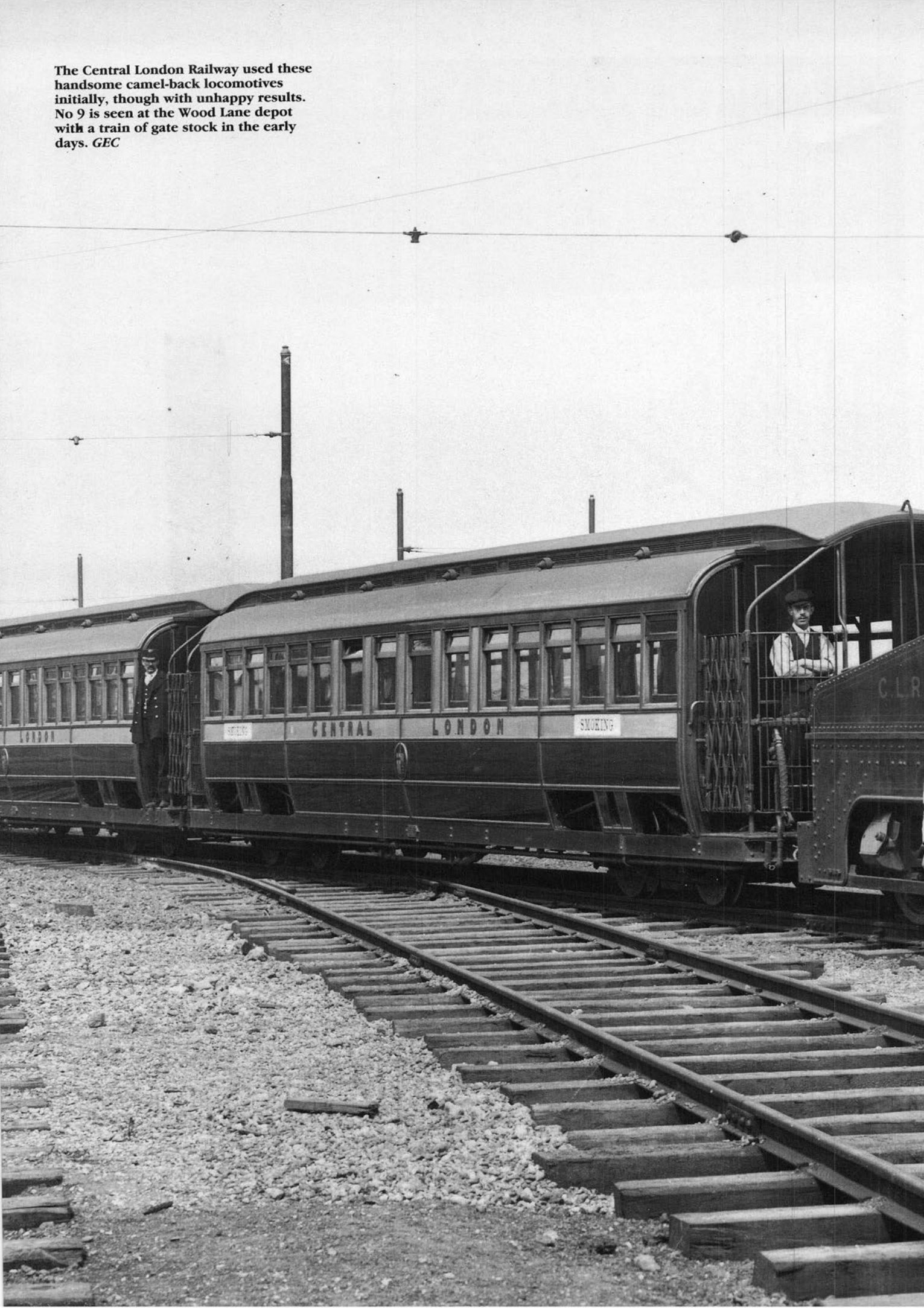
The whole of the running line was below ground, as much as 105ft down at the Thames crossing and never less than 45ft. The workshops and depot were on the surface, reached by a 1 in 3½ inclined ramp at Stockwell. Later, and after an unfortunate mishap when the tow rope broke and a car took a headlong flight back to the main line, a hoist similar to the one in place until recently on the Waterloo and City line was installed. The up and down running lines were in their own separate tunnels of 10ft 2in diameter north of the Elephant and 10ft 6in to the south. This reflected the 2mph greater speed planned with cable haulage on the southern section and which would thus increase the sway of the trains! Today's engineers refer grandly to the 'kinematic envelope'; this was an early practical response to the problem.

At the termini, the running tunnels merged into one larger elliptical tunnel. Locomotives had to be placed on the other end of the trains, and this was carried out by 'stepping back' each incoming train locomotive so that it returned with the subsequent train. Coupling and uncoupling were jobs for the driver's assistant. The stations and passages were lined with white tiles, except where space was monopolised by advertisements, and the effect was recorded as being 'to provide a bright and cheerful gleam under the artificial light'. All stations were furnished with lifts.

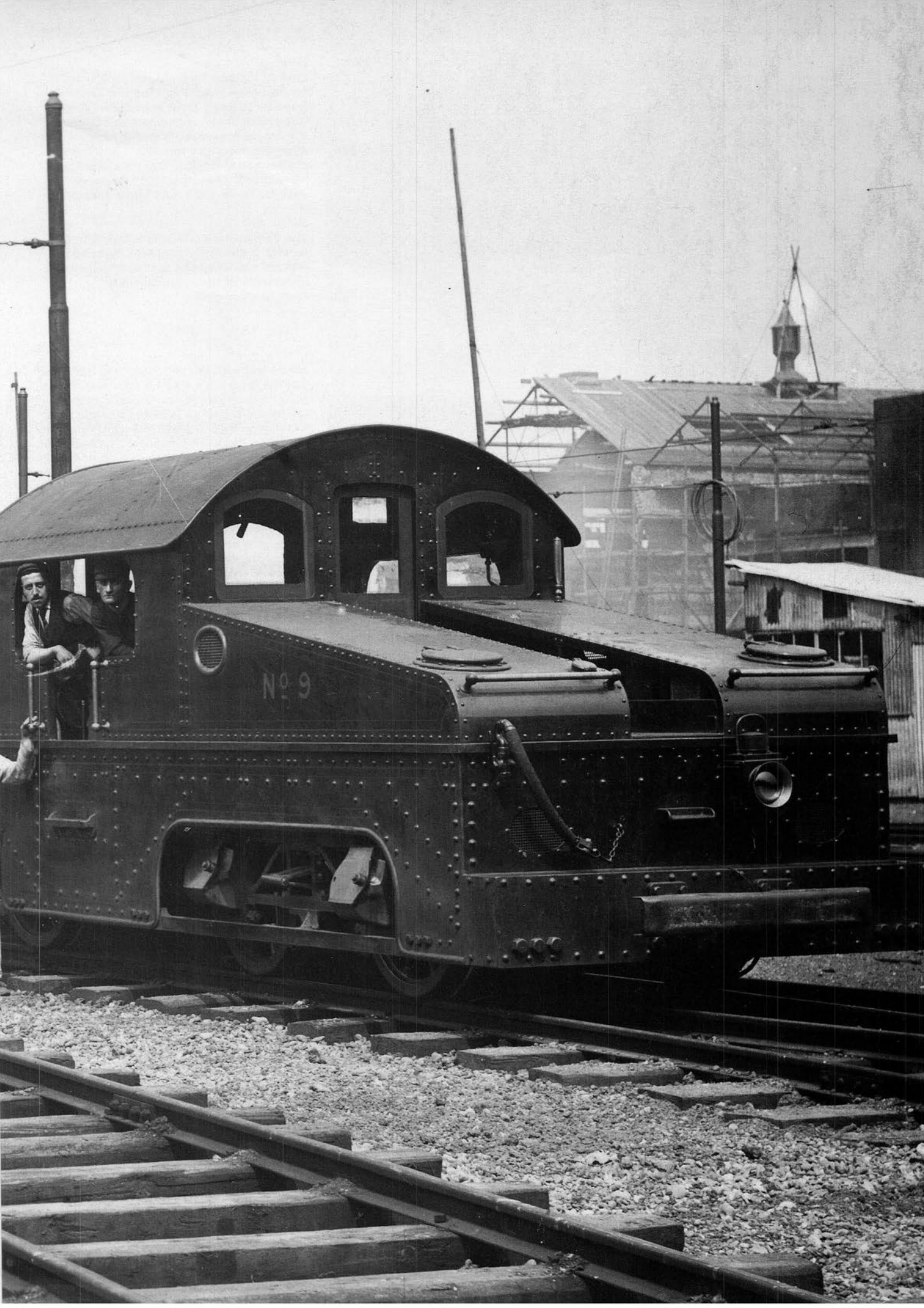
Power was taken from the company's own power house at Stockwell, where three dynamos were belt-driven by steam engines with massive 14ft diameter flywheels. The current was taken along the tunnels by feeder cable to signal cabins at each station, where other cables led to the conductor rails.

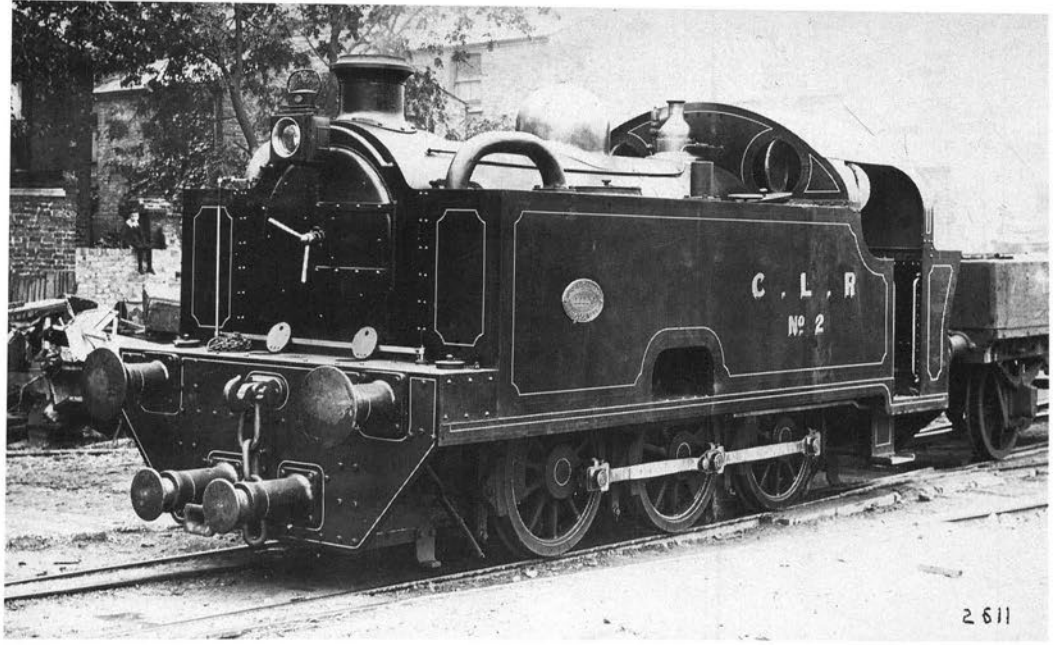
The City & South London Railway proved so popular during peak hours that capacity became a real problem. It was decided to raise the fare during the morning peak, but modification of the signalling system allowed more trains to be run and this early example of a peak hour surcharge was not proceeded with. However, passenger traffic continued to grow, so that the small single road terminus at King William Street became overcrowded. The Company's solution here was to abandon the terminus with its steeply inclined approaches, and to build a replacement at Bank. The extension diverged from the old line at London Bridge and was opened in 1900. In the next two years the tube was extended south to Clapham Common and north to Moorgate, after which it continued beneath the line of City Road to the Angel at Islington, and subsequently reached King's Cross and then Euston by following the slope of Pentonville Road. This final section opened in 1907.

Traffic continued to increase in the years preceding World War I, until it became obvious that the C&SLR would have to be completely modernised. This was the penalty for the pioneer, upon whose work others had subsequently improved. It meant the installation of a new signalling system, the

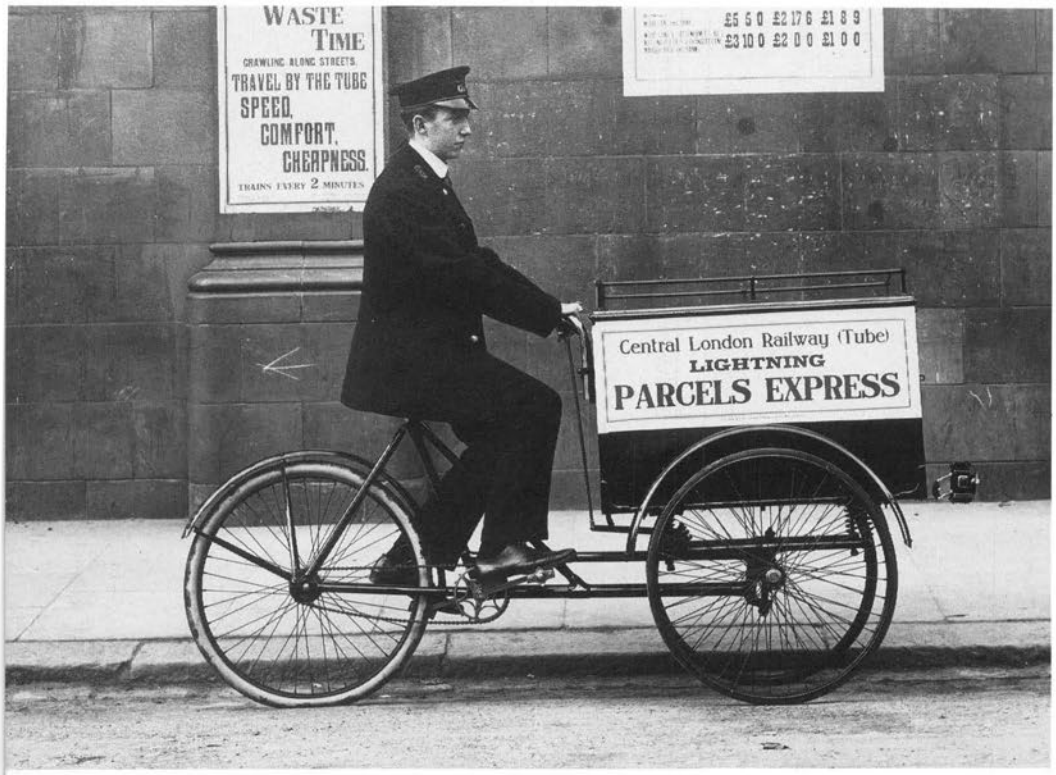


The Central London Railway used these handsome camel-back locomotives initially, though with unhappy results. No 9 is seen at the Wood Lane depot with a train of gate stock in the early days. *GEC*


Nº 9



Left:
One of the two tube tunnel gauge 0-6-0T locomotives purchased for the Central London Railway from Hunslet in 1899. They were fitted with condensing apparatus for working in the tunnels after the current was switched off. Both conventional buffing and tube drawgear were fitted. These locomotives were withdrawn in 1923. ***Ian Allan Library***



Below left:
The CLR parcels collection and delivery service is carefully posed in front of posters extolling the speed, comfort and cheapness of the tube. ***London Transport Museum***

enlargement of the stations to take longer trains, and the reconstruction of the tunnels to what became the increased standard diameter of 11ft 8¼in. Such work was well beyond the financial capabilities of the company to carry out unaided, and an agreement was sought with the Underground Electric Railways Co which by then controlled most of the other underground lines in London. Consequently, control of the C&SLR passed to the UERC in 1913, although the war delayed a start on the expansion work for a further nine years.

Since tube railway schemes were now coming before Parliament in some numbers, an attempt was made to set out some ground rules. With the example of the C&SLR no doubt in mind, a Parliamentary Committee of 1892 suggested that future tubes should be of a minimum 11ft 6in in diameter. They also proposed that the principle which required companies to purchase properties they passed beneath should be abandoned, and replaced by a wayleave system. The ability to obtain such permission might avoid some of the tortuous curves which resulted in following the streets above, although it would still leave the companies open to claims of extortionate compensation payments. Wayleaves would be granted free of charge when running under public streets. These sensible reforms were to be of benefit to London, although they did not solve the problems of funding highly capital intensive railway construction.

The completion of the Circle Line in 1882 had resulted in the linking of all the main line railway termini to the City that were not within walking distance; all, that is, except Waterloo. In the days when the West End was of less importance, this was a serious shortcoming as far as the London & South Western Railway was concerned, and to remedy it they promoted a direct tube link using the newly developed technology and backed with that Company's substantial resources.

The second tube railway in the capital was opened in 1898 after a construction period of less than four years. Completely self-contained and with the two stations at Waterloo and the Bank only, this 1.6 mile line crosses beneath the Thames near Blackfriars Bridge. An inclined tunnel which meant a long wearisome walk formed the exit from the system at Bank, and remained thus for the next 62 years. The line's power station and sidings were at Waterloo, where a hoist brought cars to the surface.

This was the first tube line to use rolling stock with motor cars instead of locomotives. The bodywork of the 22 cars was built in America by Jackson & Sharpe, with electrical equipment by Siemens and bogies from the L&SWR workshops at Eastleigh where the vehicles were assembled. The open saloons were of distinctively transatlantic appearance, and the seats were formed of perforated plywood without any upholstery. To reduce the cost of operation during the day when traffic was light, five additional single unit motor cars were supplied by Dick Kerr of Preston the following year.

Current collection was from a centre conductor rail, and the trains were formed of a pair of motor cars with two intermediate trailers. Eight power cables ran along the roofs of the trailers to connect the power cars, a feature which was not allowed on any other tube railway. Commendably, all electrical gear was arranged so that it did not reduce the length of the vehicles which was available for passenger use, although the truly massive motor bogies with their 33in diameter wheels had a raised floor level above them.

A Siemens shunting locomotive was provided and worked in the sidings at Waterloo.

The line has never had any formal connection with the Underground railways or London Transport, and remained with the L&SWR and its successors. The original equipment proved to be sound in design and construction, and few changes were made until new rolling stock was acquired in 1940.

The C&SLR and the W&C came; the public saw; the Central London Railway conquered. At nearly six miles in length, it ran through the heart of London in an area which until then had not seen a railway of any kind. It deserved to be, and was, an instant success, and managed to avoid falling into the trap of catering for business traffic only. By tapping the theatre, shopping and hotel areas of the West End as well, it attracted over 40 million passengers

in its first full year of operation in 1901. This was eight times the number generated by the City and South London after a similar period. It was a tremendous improvement on the Metropolitan, still wedded to steam. Hamilton Ellis recalled that *Punch* published 'a happy cartoon of sweet little *Fairy Electra* riding on a sort of sparkling Catherine wheel, waving a minatory wand at a hideous demon with a smoking chimney hat, and remarking that now people had seen her, she fancied his days were numbered'. However, the Central London too had its share of technical problems.

Its route was from the Bank, westward in a straight line to Shepherd's Bush. There were 11 intermediate stations. It was decided not to use the island platform arrangement favoured by the C&SLR (and still to be seen today at three stations), and instead to separate the twin tubes widely enough to allow a platform for each direction, joined to its neighbour by cross passages. Where the streets were narrow as at Notting Hill Gate, Chancery Lane and St Pauls (formerly Post Office), one tube was placed directly above the other to take advantage of the free wayleaves thus obtained. In the anxiety not to incur compensation costs as a result of undermining buildings, some ferocious curves were introduced between St Pauls and Bank, so much so that the tunnel diameter had to be increased by up to 9in to accommodate the 'throwover' of the cars as they negotiated the line. This has proved to be a lasting nuisance, particularly at Bank station where the train to platform gap can be excessive.

The stations were finished with white tiling, and had large nameboards in white enamel picked out in blue, but in addition the train guards were instructed to call out the name of the next station on leaving the previous one, and repeat it on arrival. Electric arc lamps illuminated the platforms, which were reached by electric lifts, offering an altogether more attractive environment than the C&SLR. This superiority was continued in the 170 cars, which were built by Ashbury and Brush to take full advantage of the increased tunnel size. These were long, low vehicles with a platform at each end enclosed by a lattice gate structure, with slightly bowed sides and clerestory roof. Although the intention had been to use the recommended 11ft 6in diameter tunnels, a later decision not to line the cast iron segments of the tubes resulted in an effective diameter of 11ft 8¼in, which became the standard.

The platforms were 325ft long, and it was envisaged that a locomotive would be provided at each end of the seven car trains. This was vetoed by the Board of Trade's Railway Department, who this time refused to let power cables to run between the two. So the company had to confine itself to one locomotive per train, which then required time wasting shunting movements at each terminus and restricted the minimum service interval to 3½ minutes.

There were other disadvantages. Locomotives required the use of valuable platform space but, more seriously, they gave rise to complaints of vibration. Fortunately, a technical solution was at hand thanks to the work of Frank J. Sprague in Chicago. Sprague is credited with the invention of multiple-unit working, whereby a single master controller used a low voltage circuit to achieve simultaneous control of all the traction motors in a train. This overcame concerns about the wisdom of allowing high current traction power to be transferred by cable along the length of the train. Experimentally, four trailers were converted to driving motor cars with two motors in each, and sandwiching four trailers in between. Success led to an order for 64 new motor cars, and these were delivered in 1903 from the Metropolitan Railway Carriage & Wagon Co and the Birmingham Railway Carriage & Wagon Co. However, much valuable space was still taken up by the control equipment and switchgear, which were housed above the car frame. Another useful outcome was the ability to run trains at two minute intervals if required, thanks to the quick turnrounds which could be achieved.

The electric locomotives were scrapped, apart from two which were fitted with trolley poles and sent to join the Company's pair of steam locomotives, which had been built by Hunslet to tube gauge. These condensing 0-6-0Ts were used for shunting duties at the Wood Lane depot beyond the Shepherd's Bush terminus, and for maintenance work in the tunnels when the power was off. The power station was also located here.

The first extension to the Central London Railway was opened in 1908 to serve the Franco-British Exhibition at White City. In view of the existing depot connections, the terminal loop provided was negotiated in an anti-clockwise direction, with a single platform at Wood Lane situated on the loop. This introduced some operating and technical problems, since cars were 'handed' depending on the direction they faced and they could now be turned in the course of their journeys. The importance of 'handing' lies in the electrical and air pipe connections made between cars, since unless these are arranged symmetrically about the centre (and are thus expensively duplicated), a car to be coupled to another cannot reverse direction. The penalty for not providing full reversibility is the constraint in limiting what may be coupled to what.

At the eastern end, the line to Liverpool Street was completed in 1912.

Motorbus competition ate into receipts from 1905 onwards, and the Central London Railway was drawn inexorably into closer cooperation with the Underground Group, under whose control it fell in 1913. Commercially, it was known by the nick-

Below:
Maida Vale station on the Bakerloo Line remains today at street level as it was when opened in 1915. The facing is of ruby-glazed blocks in the style of Leslie Green. ***John Glover***

name 'Twopenny Tube' long after graduated fares were adopted. From 1911 the Company decided to carry parcels in compartments set aside on the trains. A porter sorted these during the journey, and they were then delivered by messenger boys on tricycles. Parcels could be up to 56lb in weight and not exceeding 4ft x 2½ft x 1ft in size, with a collection and delivery radius of ½-mile from any station. Passengers were also wooed with season tickets, with reduced rates for those under 18. The company also indicated how a model passenger should behave 'in order to aid in rendering the service expeditious, clean and comfortable for all':

- To enter and pass along the lifts quickly and not congregate around the entrances.
- To be ready to leave the train immediately on arrival at destination.
- To be careful to extinguish matches, cigar and cigarette ends before throwing them away.
- To refrain from spitting.
- To refrain from smoking in the lifts.

By far the most massive of all tube construction in London resulted in the building of the big 16ft diameter bores of the Great Northern & City Railway, between Finsbury Park and Moorgate. The original intention was to allow Great Northern trains to reach the City direct via a connection at Drayton Park which would have rendered the continuation to the underground station below the GNR premises unnecessary, but this ambition was frustrated for over 70 years.

The 3½-mile long line was built by using an extra powerful Greathead shield, but as the shield progressed the lower cast iron segments were removed and replaced by a blue brick invert as an economy. It was the only economy which was practiced, since the stations were built to a full 420ft long and 450ft at the termini, in the fond hope that one day they would be needed by Great Northern trains. They appeared immense and deserted, as indeed they mostly were, with trains occupying only a small portion of the platform length during the slack hours.

The line was electrified from the outset using multiple units on the Sprague principle; it opened in 1904. The conductor rails followed closely the arrangement used in the earlier Metropolitan and District trials to be described in the next Chapter, with both positive and negative rails placed 10in outside the running rails and 2in above their level. This ensured that no traction currents were present in the running rails. For the first time, these were being used to carry track circuits in the modern sense and provide automatic signalling without the use of electro-mechanical devices. This conductor rail arrangement could only be used where trains were never turned, but was perfectly serviceable and remained in use until the original cars were replaced in 1939.

Thirty-two motor and 44 trailer cars were built for the service by Brush and Dick Kerr. Trains of six cars operated in the peak, and two cars at other times. The cars had open end platforms where the guard stood and worked the lattice gates by levers. There were also sliding doors in the centre of each car, but these were opened only from the outside, and then only at the termini, by porters specially detailed for the job. The line had its own power station near Essex Road, which allowed for direct cables to be run to four connections along the line, thus making substations unnecessary.

The line was acquired by the Metropolitan Railway in 1913, and the new owners promptly abandoned the power station and provided their own supplies from Neasden.

Success for entrepreneurs in the promotion of underground railways was thus far from a foregone conclusion, and many lesser schemes fell by the wayside. Nevertheless, all the interest which was now being shown resulted in some which were deserving of being built (having obtained their necessary powers), but found themselves struggling. The common denominator was a lack of sufficient backing, and this they were to find in the person of the American financier, Charles Tyson Yerkes.

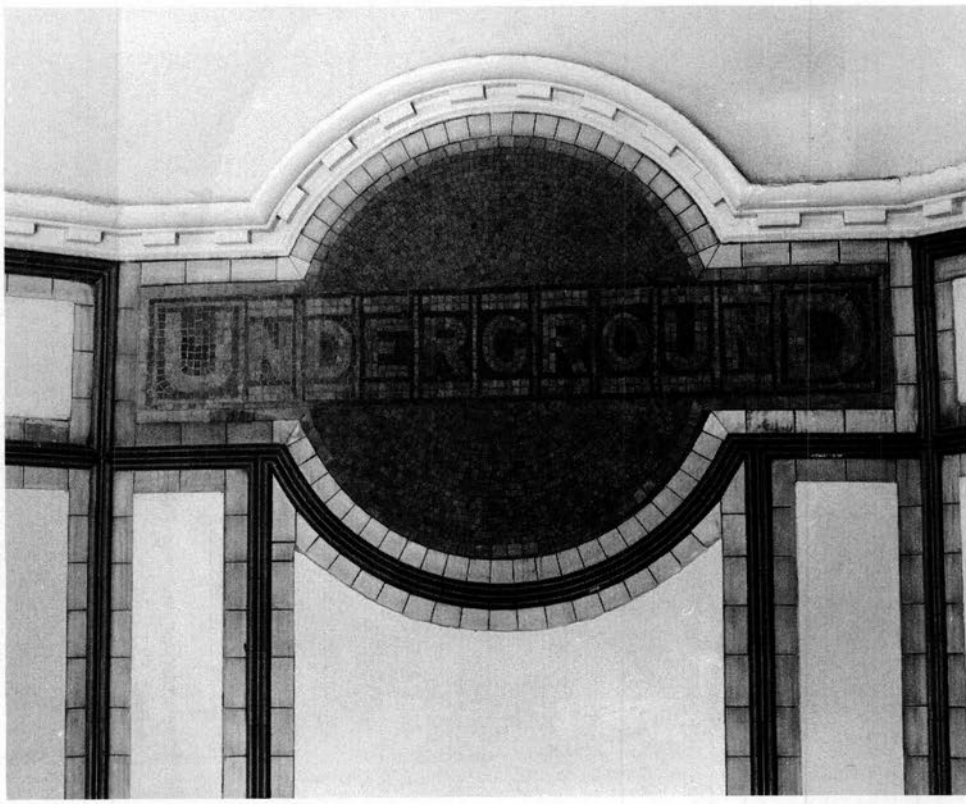
Yerkes was already involved in the District, confirmed by his taking a controlling stake in 1901. His interests quickly expanded. The Metropolitan District Electric Traction Co was created for the purpose of electrifying that railway and the building of a power station at Lots Road, Chelsea, to supply it. Within a year the company had bought out the Charing Cross, Euston & Hampstead Railway interests, the Brompton & Piccadilly Circus and the Great Northern & Strand (which were combined and enhanced to become the Great Northern, Piccadilly & Brompton) and the partially constructed Baker Street & Waterloo. In 1902 the MDET was revamped as the Underground Electric Railway Company of London Ltd. Yerkes was its Chairman, and although some variations to schemes already authorised were approved, no underground railway proposals outside the UERL empire survived to be built.

Yerkes' backer was Edgar Speyer, the American-born son of a German Jewish banker. Through his international banking concern and the Old Colony Trust of Boston, Massachusetts, it proved possible for Yerkes and the UERL to raise the capital to build the lines. To what extent financial chicanery was resorted to remains unclear, but the result was that central London gained a network of underground lines which was to remain in its 1907 form for a further 60 years. Yerkes died in 1905 before any of his tubes were opened; he was succeeded by Speyer, while George Gibb of the North Eastern Railway was brought in to manage the undertaking.

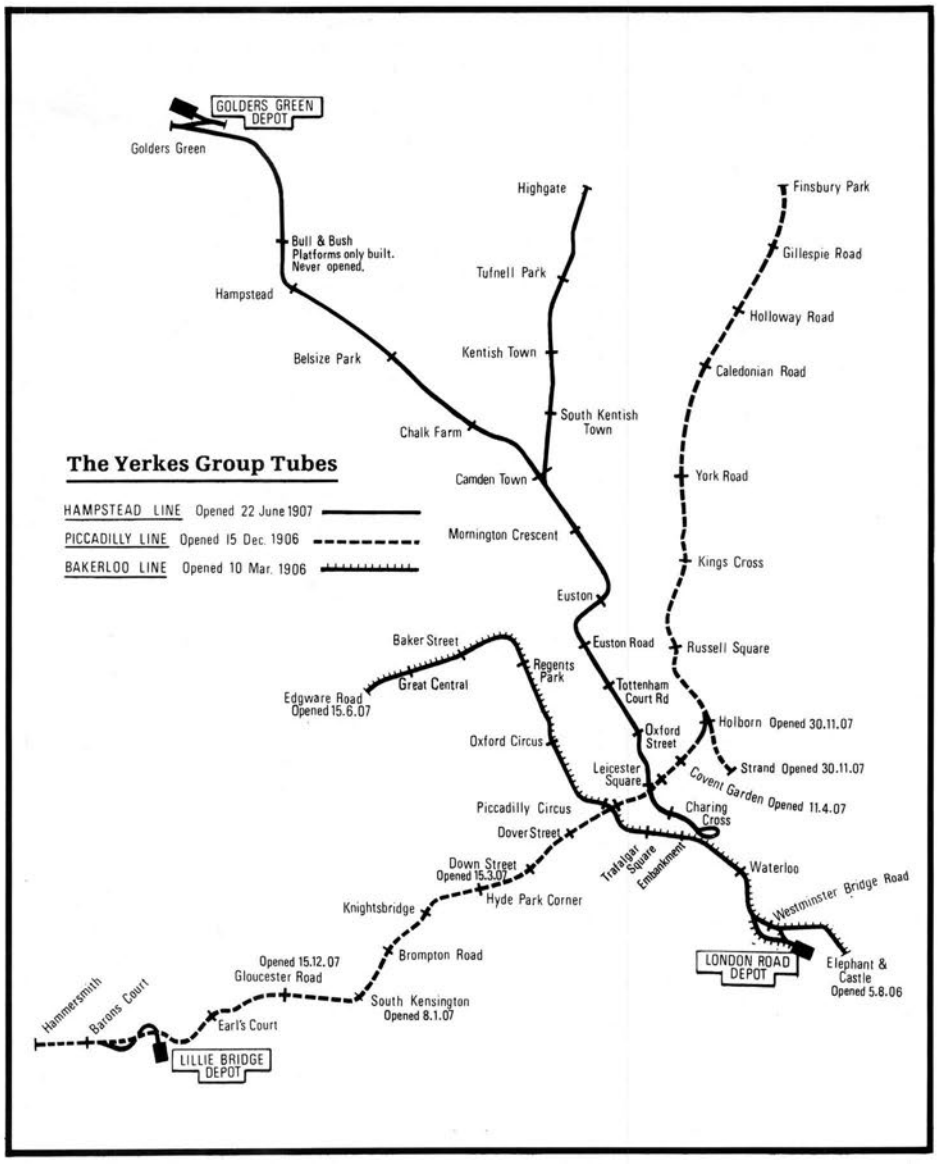
The 'Bakerloo', to which the name of the Baker Street & Waterloo was quickly corrupted, opened to traffic in March 1906 between Baker Street and what is now Lambeth North; by June 1907 the Piccadilly and Hampstead tubes were also in being, leaving only the Aldwych (previously named Strand) spur from Holborn, which opened on 30 November of that year. Using current station names, the Yerkes' tube lines therefore were:

- Edgware Road and Elephant and Castle
- Finsbury Park and Hammersmith, with a branch from Holborn to Aldwych
- Golders Green and Charing Cross, with a branch from Camden Town to Archway.

Common ownership had brought a number of common features, one of the most distinctive being the stations. Designed by Leslie Green, many of the 'ox-blood' coloured tiles cladding steel framed buildings, sometimes with further offices above, were designed to draw attention. At platform level (there were no islands), tiles on the walls spelt out the station name in large letters and these were colour coded to aid station recognition.



Right:
Maida Vale ticket hall is at basement level, reached by a flight of stairs inside the street level building. This mosaic is on the wall opposite, above the stair well. ***John Glover***



All of the lines were fitted with automatic signalling which relied on track circuits, with the additional refinement of the automatic train stop. In this the practice of the District was followed.

With a requirement for nearly 500 tube stock cars in the space of a couple of years, many manufacturers were involved, though there was little enough British input. The major orders were fulfilled by the American Car & Foundry Co of Pennsylvania, Les Ateliers de Construction du Nord de la France, and the Hungarian Carriage & Wagon Works. Considerable attention was paid to fire-proofing the system in general and the cars in particular, which had steel body shells.

The spring loaded 'dead man's handle' was fitted, thus enabling the trains to be worked by a motorman only and without an assistant. The 'gate stock' as it was called required staffing by a man between each pair of cars to open the twin saloon doors

Left:
The Yerkes Group Tube Lines with original station names, as in 1907.

Below:
The London and North Western Company's New Line to Watford was opened in 1916, and Bakerloo Line trains were extended north from Queen's Park. As the new jointly owned stock was not yet ready, some Central London Railway trains which were surplus because of the suspension of work on the Ealing extension were borrowed. Such a train is seen here between Harrow and Kenton. Differences in platform heights meant that passengers in the end cars had to negotiate a 10 inch step north of Queen's Park. ***Locomotive Publishing Co***

and the gates onto the platforms. A single stroke bell was provided on each car platform, operated from the platform at the other end of the car. When the train was ready to start, the guard at the rear passed a signal to the motorman via each of the gatemen en route.

The cars were all compatible with each other, although this was of limited importance as there was no physical connection between any of the lines. Cars were 50ft long, but an 8ft or 12ft section of the body of the motor cars was taken up with a control compartment. Doors were provided at the ends of the cars only, leading to the platforms, but the interiors were already adopting the 'transverse seats in the centre with longitudinal seats over the bogies in the ends' approach, which would be familiar to succeeding generations. Depots were provided at London Road for the Bakerloo, the only part of that line which was above ground in the beginning, Lillie Bridge for the Piccadilly, which needed to run over District tracks to gain access, and at Golders Green for the Hampstead tube. This rural crossroads made an ideal site, and thus the story that Yerkes made a spot decision to extend his line beyond Hampstead on the basis of a chance trip with his coachman is perhaps an exaggeration. Whatever the reason, the judgement was not flawed, and 10 million passengers a year (from 5,000 new homes) were using the associated station by the outbreak of World War 1.

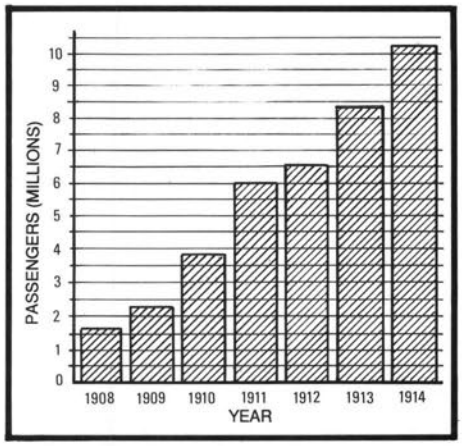
The onset of competition from the electric tramways and motor buses in the latter part of the decade depressed the fortunes of all the underground railways. Further American involvement came with the appointment of Albert Stanley, a young tramway expert from New Jersey to support Gibb and who ultimately succeeded him. Later Lord Ashfield, he was to be the future driving force.

Financially, the situation was slowly restored, helped on its way by the establishment of the London Traffic Conference (or operator cartel). Fares were gradually forced up to avoid the ruinous competition which was taking place, and the companies agreed to a joint marketing policy with the use of the word 'Underground'. Thus Frank Pick entered the scene; from that time on, the contribution of good design was to be exploited wherever possible.

In 1910 the Yerkes' tubes were formally merged to become the London Electric Railway Company; now under the guidance of Stanley, the UERL began to swallow up buses and tramway companies. The UERL became known as the 'Combine', and coordination with the development of through fares became the order of the day. Of the underground railways, only the Metropolitan with its newly acquired Great Northern & City stood apart.

An early result was the promotion of a terminal loop for the Hampstead tube. Projection beyond (present names) Charing Cross in a terminal loop running under the Thames and calling at what is now the northbound Northern Line platform at Embankment offered interchange with both the District and Bakerloo. It was opened in 1914 as part of a rebuilding scheme for the station. It followed a projection of the Bakerloo to Paddington in 1913, after the Great Western with some agonising had brought itself to make a contribution towards the cost. The London & North Western Railway followed suit and provided the capital needed for a further extension to Queen's Park. This was to provide an integrated service with its own electric trains using the 'New Line' built to tap the suburban potential of local services out as far as Watford. Bakerloo trains were extended as electrification permitted, reaching Watford Junction in 1917. This was the first time that a tube line had come into direct contact with a main line railway, and this raised some height compatibility problems. Due to the war, cars from the unfinished Central London extension were used initially, together with gate stock. These cars were provided with a sort of footstep at the guards' and conductors' positions, which enabled them to help passengers mount the large difference in platform heights. The Joint Stock compromised and the floor level of the new trains, which were finished in L&NWR livery, was 4½in higher. Incidentally, when the same problem arose later on District and Piccadilly joint running, the track was raised so that the difference was spread between the two floor heights.

A number of other schemes were started before the onset of hostilities, but completion had to wait for a while. War brought with it traffic growth and staff loss to the forces; female labour was employed for the first time, but strictly for the duration only. Damage to the system was negligible. The use of the tube stations as shelters during Zeppelin raids caused minor chaos, but this was nothing to what was to be experienced in the next conflict.



Above:
Number of passengers using Golders Green Station, 1908 to 1914.

Below:
Hampstead station on the Charing Cross, Euston and Hampstead Railway is a true Green design of 1907, and makes an interesting contrast to Maida Vale. ***John Glover***

Chapter 3

The System Reaches Maturity

So far, this book has examined the origins of the steam railways and the electric tube lines which supplemented them in the central area. The latter put the offerings of the surface railways to shame, and it was at the turn of the century that serious talk began of converting the Metropolitan and its District counterpart to the joys of electric traction. It was almost a case of electrification or die, for with steam power their position was deteriorating rapidly in the face of competition from the tubes and rapidly evolving road transport. But what system of electrification should they choose? Logic dictated compatibility, and it was agreed to conduct an experiment.

The two lines decided to electrify both tracks between Earl's Court and High Street Kensington. This joint decision was taken in 1898, and conductor rails were laid each side of the running rails and electrified at 600V dc. It was decided to purchase a new six-coach train rather than convert existing stock, and this consisted of two motor coaches and four intermediate trailers. Through control lines were not installed, and thus only the leading motor coach provided power. The experimental service commenced at the close of 1899, and a premium fare of one shilling (5p) was charged as against 2d to 4d (0.8p to 1.7p) by steam train. It was thought that people would pay extra for the privilege of riding in an electric train, but in fact the novelty had already worn off since the City & South London had by now been running for a decade.

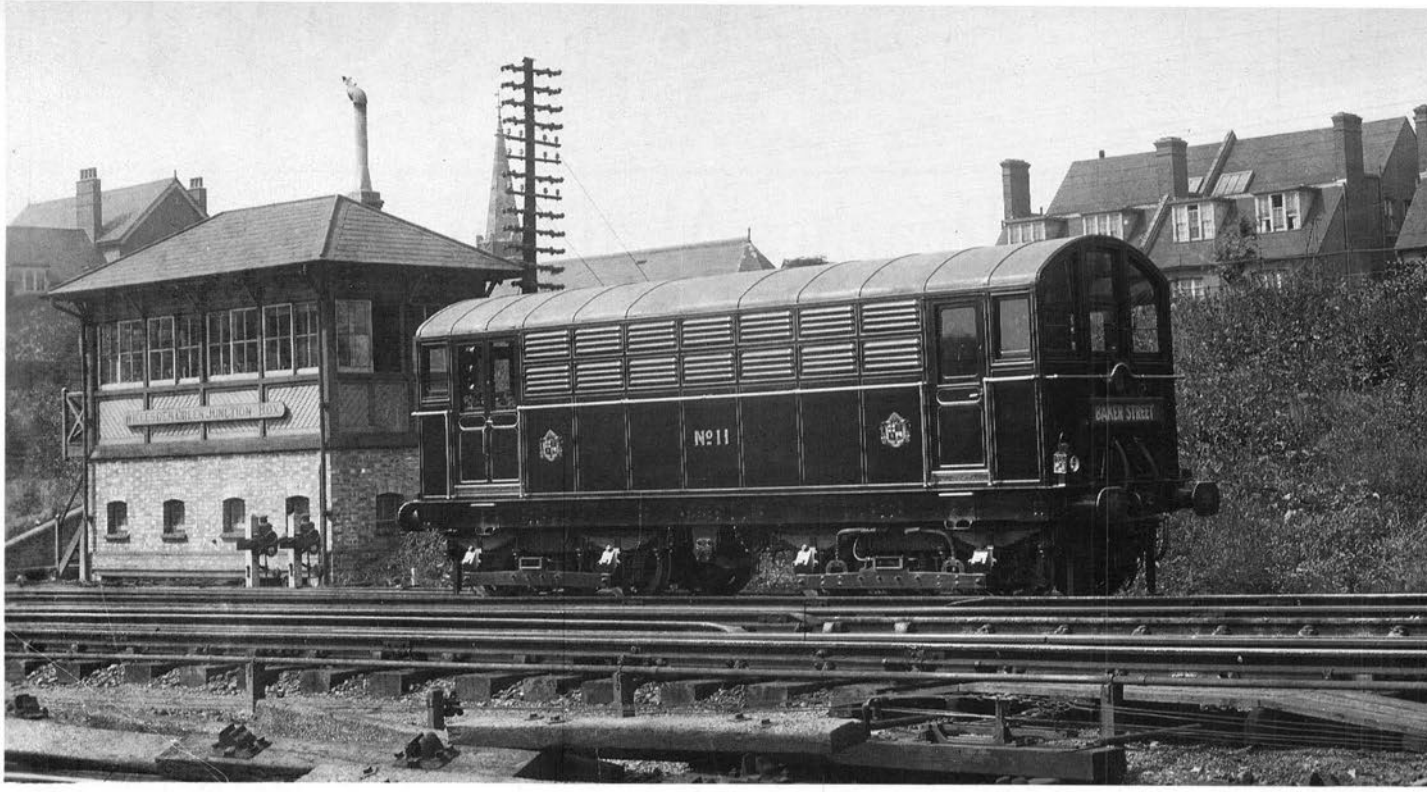
The train was retired a year later, with (inevitably!) three cars reverting to each company. It had fulfilled its purpose by proving the case for low voltage dc traction – or so it seemed. Yet when the tenders came in, the one which most impressed the adjudicators of the committee of the two companies was that submitted by Ganz of Budapest. This system used three phase alternating current at 3,000V, supplied by a pair of overhead copper wires insulated from each other and with separate collection devices for each, with the third phase provided by the running rails. It was however untried in any conditions remotely like those of London, and when the Board of Trade demanded a demonstration, the companies were unwilling to finance it.

The Metropolitan remained firmly behind the Ganz option on the grounds of economy, since it would require only simple substations and no heavy conductor rail. It did, however, require a pair of overhead wires instead. Another claimed advantage was that the static transformers would not need attendants and could be left to look after themselves. The District, on the other hand, favoured the British Thomson-Houston Company's dc system. There was however an element of unreality in the argument for, truth to tell, the District was all but bankrupt. The Metropolitan offered terms for acquisition, but was rebuffed.

In the end, a growing American influence was consolidated by the arrival of Yerkes and his acquisition of the ailing District. With electrification as a top priority, Yerkes rejected the 'expert' advice he was offered, and sent his engineers to visit Budapest and find out for themselves. Here they were able to inspect the 67-mile Valtellina line from Lecco to Sondrio, then all but complete. However, Yerkes remained unconvinced of the merits of untried ac systems, having seen what dc traction could achieve in his native USA. The Metropolitan fought a rearguard action on the merits of the Ganz system, pursuing it even to arbitration. The Board of Trade gave judgement for the dc system, albeit with some hard words to say on how the District had conducted itself in the process. The tremendous jobs of building the power stations at Lots Road and Neasden, many substations, and laying miles of cable, were at last put in hand.

Some 26 route miles of the Metropolitan were electrified in three years, a very creditable performance considering the line was clear for work to take place in only about six hours out of every 24. The length of the District to be electrified was even more. At first an experimental electrified line between

Below:
Early District electric stock arrives at Ealing Broadway, c1912. The non-stop cachet was applied to workings from Mansion House, but only a few stations were omitted. In reality, the trains tended to stop in tunnels outside the stations anyway, but it was not until 1964 when such workings were abolished entirely. *Bucknall Collection/IAL*



Above:
The Metropolitan's second batch of electric locomotives was built in 1906, with BTH equipment. A polished No 11 is seen alongside Willesden Green Junction signal box. ***Bucknall Collection/IAL***

Right:
The substantial Metropolitan Railway station at Ruislip was a fitting gateway to 'London's Healthiest Suburb', and dates from 1904. This 1982 picture shows a Baker Street-bound A stock train approaching, as announced by the very manual 'next train' indicator. ***John Glover***

Acton Town and South Harrow was laid down and used both for testing the installation and training crews to operate the new electric trains. Two seven-car trains of the open saloon type, seating an average of 46 passengers a car, were run on the 5½-mile length of District track to South Harrow. Larger and heavier than any tube stock, and with three 175hp motor cars in each train, a top speed of 60 mile/h was claimed for them. They were fitted with hand-operated sliding doors in the middle, and gates at each end platform. Both electrical and braking equipment came from different sources to compare the results. These District cars, with their angular appearance and open platforms, bore unmistakable signs of their American origins. This influence remained in future building, and henceforth carriages became cars, and bogies became trucks.

Once these cars had proved themselves, mass production was undertaken, although two-thirds of the 420 cars ordered were constructed in France. Sliding doors were provided throughout, and pneumatic cylinders were installed to allow their operation by the gateman. However, this turned out to be over-ambitious for the technology of the era, and the apparatus was removed.

Whilst this was going on, the work of electrification was proceeding steadily, and eventually, on 22 September 1905, the last steam train puffed around the Inner Circle. Not many months after its exit, the major programme of electrification of both railways was completed. Henceforth there were long, well lit saloon coaches for the delectation of passengers, and the stuffy compartment coaches were withdrawn. It was as if the authorities wished to wipe the memories of steam trains from the minds of their passengers, for stations and tunnels were thoroughly cleaned of accumulated layers of soot and grime, and there was much repainting and general brightening up. Such, some would observe, is the value of competition.

The District committed itself to total electrification, and purchased ten electric locomotives which normally worked in pairs. In appearance, these were among the nearest to boxes on wheels ever to run in Britain. Built to haul L&NWR trains on the Outer Circle service between Mansion House and Earl's Court where engines were changed, the locomotives found new employment in 1910 in conjunction with the Tilbury line. The basic services out to Barking were provided by jointly owned trains of a similar type to those already owned by the District. For the new services, the London, Tilbury & Southend company constructed two rather splendid trains of gangwayed stock with sliding doors and, be it noted, retention toilets; these were put into service between Ealing Broadway and Southend. The District locomotives hauled these trains as far as Barking, the then limit of electrification. The new coaches entered service in 1912, and the operation continued until 1939.

The Metropolitan had other preoccupations. Its various lines differed greatly in type and requirements, and the blanket solution applied by the District was inappro-

Above:
North from Golders Green, the Underground extension had to cut through some recently erected housing at viaduct level. The scars are still visible, as can be seen in the half house on the left of the picture. The road in which it stands now comes to a full stop at the railway wall, though it continues on the other side of the line. A southbound 1959 stock train approaches. ***John Glover***

Left:
101 of the handsome K class motor cars were built in 1927 by the Birmingham Railway Carriage & Wagon Co for the District Line, as part of the stock updating programme. ***F Moore/IAL***

priate. Steam traction would continue, albeit on a much curtailed basis. Although the 'A' class 4-4-0Ts had provided the brunt of the steam services, there were other small classes of locomotives which saw most use on the main line. Of these, the five 0-4-4Ts of the 'E' class built from 1896 were notably successful, as were the four similar 'F' class 0-6-2T locomotives for freight working which followed them. The third of the 'E' class, No 1, was built at Neasden and has survived into preservation in working order.

Further steam locomotive building saw four massive 'G' class 0-6-4Ts in 1915 for freight, and which the Metropolitan took the unusual step of naming. Eight graceful 'H' class 4-4-4Ts for express passenger work were built in 1920/21, and finally six locomotives were constructed from the parts manufactured at Woolwich Arsenal to a South Eastern and Chatham design after World War 1. Bearing a strong resemblance to Maunsell's 'K' and 'N' classes (which they in effect were), their main purpose was freight work. These 18 locomotives all went to the London & North Eastern Railway in 1937, when that company assumed responsibility for all non-electric passenger haulage on what was by then London Transport.

The Metropolitan's main interest now was in electric traction. Deliveries of multiple units were in batches from a variety of British manufacturers; however they differed fundamentally from the District stock in that the latter opted for a single motor bogie and associated equipment, whereas the Metropolitan's motor cars had two motor bogies and thus no trailing bogie. Like the District, though, the Metropolitan quickly found BTH equipment to be much more reliable than that offered by the Westinghouse company. Unfortunately, by the time this became apparent, the Metropolitan were lumbered with a substantial order for Westinghouse traction controls which they were unable to cancel. These cars were later converted to trailers to operate with new motor cars.

The Metropolitan provided all the outer rail trains on the Circle and some of the inner rail ones as well, since it owned the greater part of the mileage. From 1907, it took over the whole service provision, and this hastened the conversion of some of the steam stock, built only a few years previously, to electric operation. These later vehicles had been constructed with bogies, as opposed to the rigid eight wheeler designs previously used.

A further 20, later increased to 24, trains were built for the joint Metropolitan & GWR Hammersmith and City electrification, completed in 1906; this included the branch to

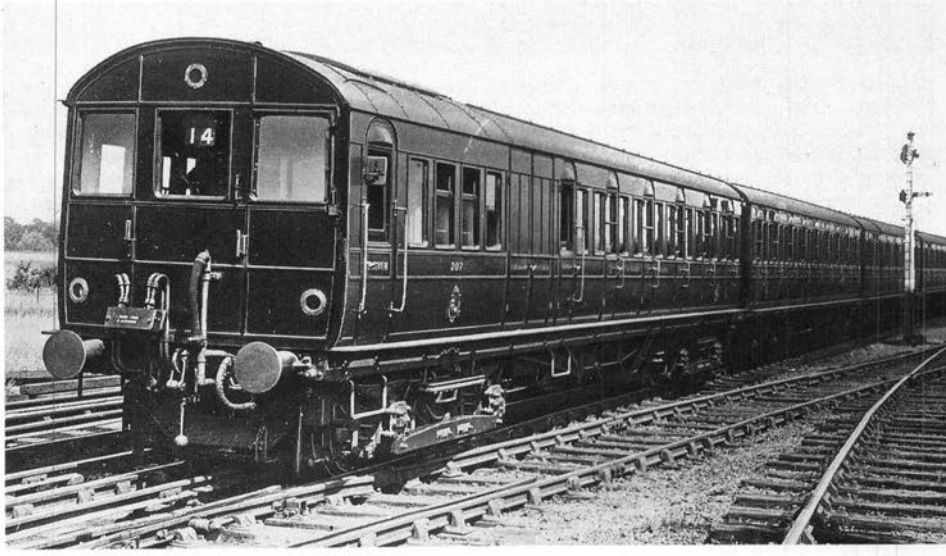
Addison Road. For this the GWR built its own power station at Park Royal, and became the owner of some of the trains although all were maintained by the Metropolitan.

The first electric locomotives for the Metropolitan were of Bo-Bo centre cab type and built between 1904 and 1906. They were intended for hauling through Great Western main line trains from origins such as Windsor on the Bishop's Road and Aldgate section. A second type, for domestic Metropolitan use, resembled those supplied to the District. Neither design lasted long, all 20 being replaced by new machines built by Metropolitan Vickers at Barrow in 1922 to handle the increasingly heavy trains on the main line out to Harrow and, from 1925 when electrification was extended, to Rickmansworth.

These celebrated locomotives were equipped with 300hp motors, one geared to each of the four axles, with electro-magnetic control to provide special slow speed control for shunting purposes. Besides the 12 current collector shoes on the locomotives, other shoes were fitted to the Guards' vehicles at the extreme ends of the rakes and connected by power cable, to ensure that the whole was not brought to an unseemly halt by the locomotive becoming 'gapped' at a break in the conductor rail at junctions. In such subtle ways had the excellent steam 'Dreadnought' compartment stock to be modified for electric traction! The other change was the fitting of electric heating.

The overall length of the locomotives was 39½ft, and their weight 61½ tons. Double-ended, they were fitted with dual Westinghouse compressed air and vacuum brakes, also trip cocks for train control (a separate one for each brake type). 20 mile/h was attainable in 25 seconds, with 180 tons in tow, and a maximum speed of 65 mile/h on the level. No 15 was exhibited, with some rolling stock, at the Wembley Empire Exhibition in 1925 (an event of considerable commercial significance for the company), and carried a commemorative nameplate. The whole class received names, the others all being of people (some fictional) associated in some way with the area served. When the locomotives were retired, the nameplates of No 2 *Thomas Lord* (its second name), No 6 *William Penn*, No 8 *Sherlock Holmes* and No18 *Michael Faraday* were presented to, respectively. the Marylebone Cricket Club, the Pennsylvania Museum in Harrisburg USA, the Sherlock Holmes Society and the Institution of Electrical Engineers. Loco-

Above:
The K class of 2-6-4T steam tank locomotives were the Metropolitan's most powerful class, and the last to be delivered in 1925 by Armstrong Whitworth. They came from the government surplus 'kits of parts' at Woolwich. This is No 114, at Neasden.
F. Moore/IAL



Right:
A train of MV, later T stock, pictured when new. The motor cars were built for the Rickmansworth and Watford extensions of the Metropolitan Line, and were used to sandwich five steam hauled coaches built a few years earlier to make up seven car trains. Two of the intermediate coaches was converted to control trailers to allow the trains to be split into three and four car sets. These trains entered service in 1929.
F. Moore/IAL

motive No 12 *Sarah Siddons* remains in the service stock fleet today, while No 5 *John Hampden* is at Covent Garden.

The addition of the Uxbridge branch to the Metropolitan at Harrow had proved successful in generating traffic, to the extent that quadrupling of the double track north of Finchley Road was undertaken as far as Wembley Park by 1915. Similar capacity constraints had affected the District, and west of Hammersmith the sharing of the L&SWR's tracks was producing unacceptable delays. Consequently, the District quadrupled this section in 1911, only to find the L&SWR withdrawing its service five years later. As matters turned out, this was to much simplify the subsequent westward extension of the Piccadilly, so the work was not wasted. What this activity did achieve was to establish the need for additional trains, and both the surface railways had new stock delivered in this period.

Although the small bore tube railways had never contemplated more than one class of travel, the Metropolitan and District continued to provide selectively for First Class passengers until 1942. The Metropolitan indeed were prepared to go to considerable lengths for their important customers. The Rothschild saloon was a 1905 reconstruction of two luxury six-wheeled vehicles built 10 years earlier for the use of Ferdinand de Rothschild, who lived at Wendover. It became the company's Directors' Saloon, its last official duty being to form an inspection special over the Brill branch before services were withdrawn in 1935.

Of greater fame were the legendary Pullman Cars constructed by the Birmingham RCW Co for Pullman, but fitted out to Metropolitan specifications. Built to Circle Line gauge, they entered service in 1910 and were retained until 1939. *Mayflower* and *Galatea* were the Metropolitan's response to Great Central competition, and although initially they ran in ordinary trains throughout the day, including a late night theatre train arriving back at Aylesbury at 0055, lack of patronage soon restricted their use to the principal business services. Their value was in the publicity they gave the company, seen as a matter of increasing importance, rather than the revenue they generated.

By the 1920s, the Underground map was beginning to look familiar to modern eyes, though as yet the extensive incursions into what became vast swathes of suburbs had hardly begun. The experience of Golders Green in the Edwardian era had however shown the potential for suburban development, and this decade witnessed further extensions. The first to get under way were projects which had been deferred by the war.

The Central London had been determined to press on westwards, and agreement was secured with the Great Western that it would construct the Ealing & Shepherd's Bush Railway. Reconstruction of the terminal loop was called for, especially in view of the opening of White City Stadium. The platform on the outside of the sharp curve was causing delays to trains, as there was a very substantial gap between the doors newly installed in the centre of the cars (replacing those at the ends), and the platform edge. The platform on the inside of the curve could take only six cars, due to the positioning of the depot entrance and exit roads, and was not used in consequence. The solution adopted was to construct a movable 35ft extension to the short platform, which was capable of being swivelled through a 4ft arc away from the tracks when use of the depot roads was required. Movement was electro-pneumatic, controlled from the signalbox and interlocked in the normal way. This ingenious contraption lasted from 1920 when the Ealing extension was brought into use, until 1947.

The two tracks which continued west from Wood Lane were arranged for right hand running, so a flyover was constructed to restore the normal rule of the road before the next station at East Acton was reached. Electric power came from the GWR's plant at Park Royal.

Legal powers to project the Hampstead tube northwards had been obtained as early as 1902, but it was late in 1923 that the extension to Hendon Central was opened, and August 1924 by the time the tube reached Edgware. The tardiness had cost the Combine dear, as land values had risen (due, one imagines, almost entirely to its own efforts), and some demolition was needed before the railway could proceed on brick arches and viaduct north from Golders Green. These gave way to cutting as the line reached Brent (now Brent Cross), and the formation widened. Later, passing loops to be used for express working would be provided each side of the tracks serving the island platform. Crossing the North Circular Road on viaduct again, the line reached Hendon Central. As with other stations on the extension, it was finished in a Georgian style to complement the suburban housing developments.

The twin tunnels at The Burroughs, Hendon, took the new railway under the Midland main line and today's M1. Above the northern end of the tunnel was sited a semaphore signal, but not for train control purposes. It offered a range of positions, most of which were unknown in the railway rule book. Viewed from Colindale station 1,000yds distant, this was an eyesight test for train drivers. Not being allowed to wear spectacles, failing an eyesight medical was a

Below:
The Watford branch was a joint venture between the Metropolitan and the LNER, and opened in 1925. The centre of Watford was never reached. This view shows the line under construction.
Modern Transport/IAL

Above:
Bounds Green (1932) shows one of the varieties of treatment by Charles Holden of stations on the Cockfosters extension of the Piccadilly Line. ***John Glover***

serious matter for the individual, who was entitled to demand this practical test if he did not pass.

Continuing to Edgware, the line passed through the embankment of the Great Northern Railway, to make its own island platform terminus with an overall roof which covered also a pair of adjoining sidings. Additional sidings and a car shed were also provided. A frequent snappy Underground service was to galvanise Edgware's growth in a way that the modest offerings by the GNR could never have done; in 1919, ordinary bookings from Edgware GNR were as low as 20 per day.

Bolstered by the allocation of cheap money from the Government, the much needed rehabilitation of the City & South London and its integration into the Hampstead tube began at last in 1922. Two distinct elements were involved: the enlargement of the old tunnels to standard bore, and the construction of the complex series of underground junctions at Camden Town. While work was in progress, further powers were obtained to extend south from Clapham to Morden, and to construct a new link from Embankment under the river to Waterloo and to junctions at Kennington. With the Edgware extension under way as well, the 'Edgware, Highgate and Morden Line', one of the names by which the combination was uneasily known, largely assumed its present Northern Line form.

The C&SLR's tunnels were built to a mixture of dimensions, successively 10ft 6in (Euston to Moorgate), 11ft 6in (Moorgate to Borough Junction), 10ft 2in (Borough Junction to Elephant), and 10ft 6in Elephant to Clapham Common. To enable the enlargement work to be carried out, the line north of Moorgate was closed completely, while trains continued to run on the southern section. This latter policy came to grief in November 1923 when a minor roof fall stopped a northbound train near Elephant & Castle. Fortunately the driver was able to remove the obstruction and reach Borough station before large quantities of earth cascaded into the tunnel and blocked it completely. After this episode, it was decided to close the line until work was finished. The substitute bus service was increased to a one minute headway as a result.

Where the tunnel diameter was 11ft 6in, hand enlargement and use of larger key pieces in the tunnel linings was sufficient, but elsewhere the existing lining rings were removed and shields used to bore out the tunnels to the standard 11ft 8¼in diameter. The ring-like shields were designed to allow the diminutive trains to continue to run; perhaps the odd C&SLR rule forbidding passengers to ride on the roof of trains had some relevance after all! Four new segment pieces replacing originals were enough for the 10ft 6in tunnels, even if the result was hardly circular, but the smallest tunnels had new linings throughout. There were some realignments to eliminate speed restrictions.

Modernisation also covered the installation of standard Underground automatic signalling and the conversion of the power supply to fourth rail. Station tunnels were lengthened to 350ft (a standard C&SLR three car train was only 110ft long). The stations themselves were suitably updated, many being provided with escalators. Alone, City Road station between Euston and Angel did not reopen. The reconstruction effected a major improvement, and with new rolling stock as well, the running time between Euston and Clapham Common was reduced by one quarter from 31½ to 23½ minutes.

At Camden Town the requirement was to insert junctions between the Hampstead tube's two diverging northern branches and the C&SLR's Euston terminus. Since the latter was aligned east–west and well below the newer tube, and there was less than a mile in which to effect a junction, steep gradients at a maximum of 1 in 40 uphill and 1 in 30 down were needed. The 'stomach diagram' of this complex of underground lines which enables parallel and non-conflicting movements to be made throughout was proudly publicised. Interestingly, this junction is nowadays claimed to be the major limitation to expanding train frequencies. The work was completed in April 1924, and a through service between Golders Green and Moorgate instituted.

The Morden extension was the result of horse trading with the Southern Railway interests, who drew a physical as well as a metaphorical line across the tube's path with the building of the Wimbledon & Sutton Railway. As so often in south London, tube construction was problematic due to waterlogged ground; nowhere was this more apparent than at Tooting Broadway. In the past, the village of Tooting had been noted for its plentiful water supply, and the tube station lay over what amounted to an underground lake. The station and its approaches had to be built under compressed air conditions, work being first conducted from beneath air locks in vertical working shafts, and then from behind horizontal air locks in the sections of tunnel completed. The tube came up to an open air cutting at Morden, where a three track/five platform face layout was used. The tracks continued beyond to extensive stabling facilities on the surface. A conscious effort was made to make the stations stand out, and the angular surface buildings made much use of Portland stone in their construction.

Calls from time to time to extend the Underground fell on deaf ears; in conse-

Above:
Piccadilly trains were extended west of Hammersmith in 1932, but before this could be accomplished the formation had to be widened. A complication was the Grove Road branch of the Southern Railway, from whose viaduct this March 1931 photograph of the construction works and an eastbound District Line train was taken. ***London Transport Museum***

Left:
Piccadilly Circus station was rebuilt in 1928, and the ornate subway entrances were provided courtesy the local authority. ***John Glover***

quence Morden station forecourt has remained a busy and important bus-rail interchange point.

Work on the last piece in the jigsaw began immediately after the Camden Town junctions were opened. South of Charing Cross (then Strand), the new southbound line forged straight ahead to Embankment (then Charing Cross), through the return part of the loop at a point below the river, and on to Waterloo and Kennington. Here, the new connection divided and rose each side of the City Line platforms, giving easy interchange. Connections enabled trains to continue south and a conventional turnback siding was provided between the running tunnels. However, a terminal loop was and is the principal means of reversing direction, and the author admits to having watched a train disappear into the tunnel at the end of Platform 2 and then nipping across to Platform 1 to see if the same train really would reappear! Terminal loops are not all they might be from the operator's point of view, and are discussed later.

Opening of the Kennington extension coincided with the completion to Morden, and on 13 September 1926 work was finished for the time being. (Balham station opening was delayed to December). These extensions created what was then the world's longest tunnel, from Golders Green to Morden via Bank, a distance of 16 miles, 1,100yd. This was subsequently exceeded by the High Barnet branch of the Northern Line, whose East Finchley to Morden via Bank distance is 17 miles 528yd.

The following year a single track link was made at King's Cross between the eastbound Piccadilly and the northbound City line, both in a trailing direction. This was purely for stock movements, and gave the Northern access to Acton Works.

Jointly with the Great Central Railway, the Metropolitan built a two-mile branch from Moor Park to Croxley Green and Watford. Or rather, the line was built to the edge of Cassiobury Park, through which the railway was not allowed to pass. This unsatisfactory terminal arrangement severely limited the practical usefulness of the line, which has always remained something of a backwater. Services commenced in 1925. A triangular junction was built to provide direct access to Rickmansworth, but full passenger operation over the north curve lasted only until

Left:
Chiltern Court flats, above Baker Street station, were the eventual outcome in 1929 of an ambitious pre-1914 scheme for a hotel. The distinctly Edwardian character of the building belies its relative youthfulness. ***John Glover***

Right:
Rebuilding west of Hammersmith, 1930.

1933. Since then it has seen occasional use, and the 1991 timetable advertised an 0557 Amersham-Watford service (only), and no return working!

Continued congestion on the Metropolitan main line resulted in the four tracking reaching out to Harrow by 1932, the same year in which the 4½-mile long Stanmore branch was completed. The latter was designed to tap the housing spreading out from Edgware, Canons Park station being only a mile's bus ride from Edgware tube. However, the Metropolitan's relatively high fares policy compared with the Underground group acted as a disincentive to traffic growth, and single car units transferred from the Rickmansworth-Watford service sufficed for the limited off peak traffic between Wembley Park and Stanmore. In view of the two track bottleneck between Finchley Road and Baker Street, growth was the last thing the Metropolitan really needed. Both schemes were financed by cheap Government money, provided for the relief of unemployment.

In the east, the District extended its interests another 7¾ miles from Barking to Upminster in 1932; this was to serve the vast Becontree housing estate. Two additional lines were laid in to the north of the Tilbury tracks (now owned by the London Midland & Scottish Railway) for the new service, with additional stations provided at Upney and Dagenham Heathway; also at Upminster Bridge (1934), and Elm Park (1935).

The Great Northern, Piccadilly & Brompton Railway, to give the line its earlier title, had provided a direct connection from its northern terminus at Finsbury Park with the West End from 1906. Finsbury Park was one massive, not to say notorious, interchange, with passengers in those days arriving by Great Northern suburban services from Edgware and High Barnet as well as today's Hatfield and Hertford lines. To this was added the traffic from the extensive tram and motor bus systems. The tube terminus was built on Great Northern property, and one of the consequences had been an undertaking given in 1902 that the Piccadilly would not be extended northwards without GNR consent.

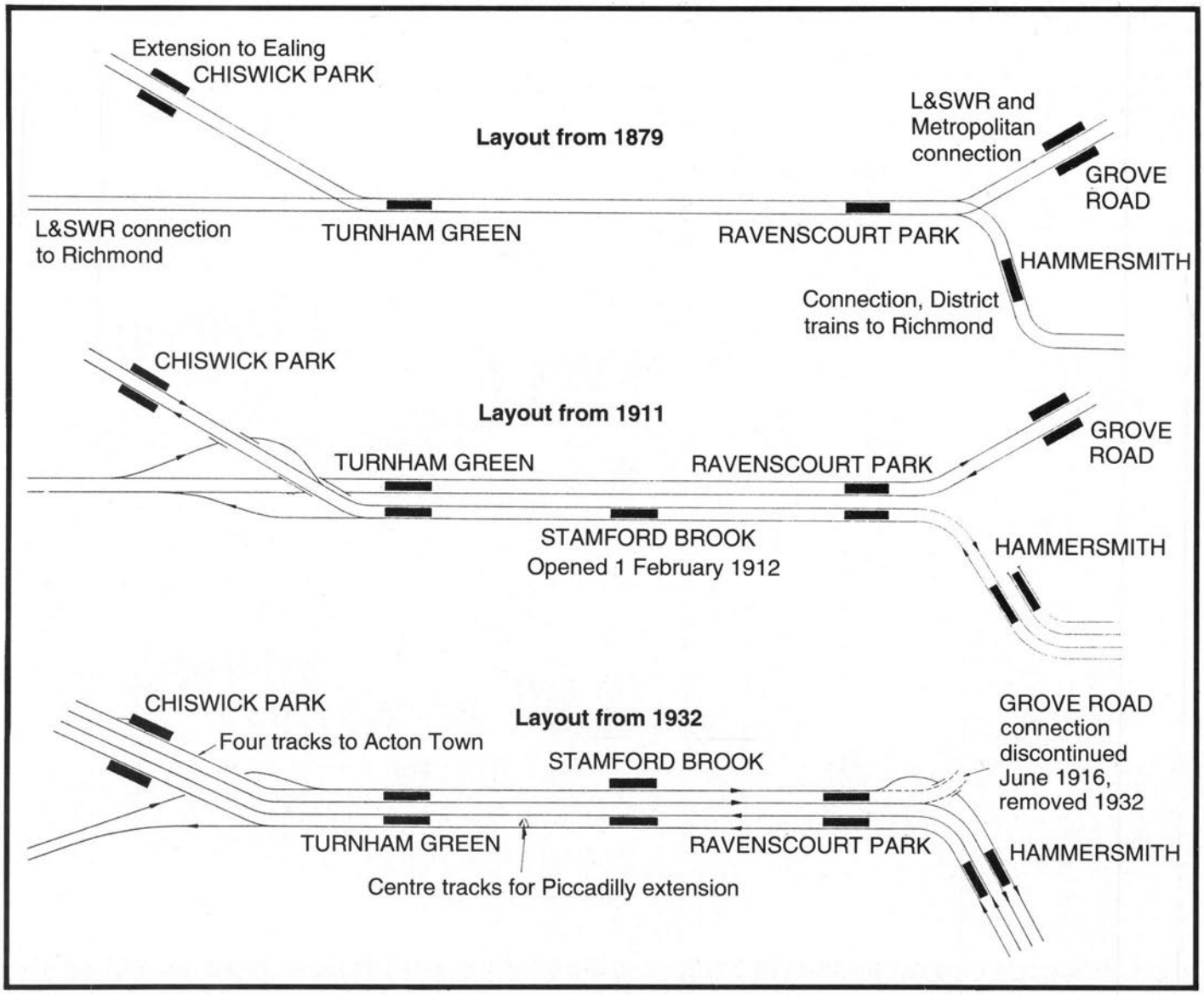
By 1925, with 30,000 passengers changing between different forms of transport daily, the public pressure to relieve the congestion was intense. 'There is enormous overcrowding on the trams and on the other vehicles during the peak hours of the day, and there is no possibility of inaugurating accommodation save by providing increased railway accommodation either by tube or electrification of existing lines or by introducing electric signalling', Sir Henry Maybury told the Royal Commission. Part of the problem was finance. The Underground Chairman, Lord Ashfield, noting the disparity of traffic between the peak and what was then often termed the 'valley hours' was blunt: 'It may be a great surprise to you to know that the Underground railways in London have never been, in their whole career, a financial success. In other words, they have failed to earn anything approaching a reasonable return on capital invested in them . . .' One result was the Act of 1927 under which the Underground Group was able to borrow capital at 3% to finance the Piccadilly improvements, which were started in 1930, following the waiving (under protest) of the L&NER veto five years earlier.

As might be expected of a line which runs partly in tube, and partly across undulating country, the Cockfosters extension has several interesting features. For four miles to a point between Bounds Green and Arnos Grove, it runs in twin tunnels driven beneath Seven Sisters Road to Manor House, where they swing north through a 15-chain radius curve (the sharpest on this line of otherwise easy curvature), and continue beneath Green Lanes to Bounds Green. The gradient falls all the way to Turnpike Lane, and then rises at an average slope of 1 in 60 to the summit at Enfield.

Where the tube emerges at Tewkesbury Road, the tunnel is enlarged to 16ft, and bell-mouthed to reduce the air pressure on trains entering at speed. Just after the line leaves the twin tunnel it is carried obliquely across the North Circular Road on a 175ft girder bridge, followed by a long viaduct to reach Arnos Grove station. It then enters a half-mile tunnel, towards the far end of which is Southgate station. Cutting followed by viaduct and embankment take the line to Oakwood and Cockfosters terminus, between which points the highest and coldest car sheds on the Underground system 275ft above sea level are passed on the west side of the line.

The tunnelling was through the yielding London clay, using a variety of shields and pneumatically operated shovels. One particularly delicate operation involved strengthening the brick tunnel through which the New River flowed at Bounds Green. Here it was necessary to insert an iron lining for a distance of 90ft, as the railway was to pass 25ft below the river bed.

The naming of the stations produced a flurry of local excitement. Perhaps unwisely, the Underground Group invited the public to respond to ideas put forward by the Group for the names of most of the stations. The new line extended well beyond the built up area, partly to reach a suitable depot site. The route was carefully chosen to split the distance between the two existing Great Northern Railway suburban branches, and as a result the stations initially served nowhere in particular. The most controversial choice proved to be the present Oakwood, for which the suggested alternatives were Merryhills (a nearby public



house) and East Barnet (then the name of the road alongside the station). However, the Group then determined to call the station Enfield West, which upset the sensibilities of the Southgate Urban District Council on the grounds that the station was nearly a quarter of a mile outside the Enfield UDC area and the name would confuse passengers. Alternatives of Southgate North and Oakwood Park were rejected by the Group, who stuck to their intentions and opened the station as Enfield West in 1933. But offence of this nature, once given, does not lie down, and a year later the station became Enfield West (Oakwood). It took the UDC until 1946 to secure the final adoption of plain Oakwood.

The housing boom of the 1930s transformed great expanses of open country around London into street upon street of detached and semi-detached houses. This growth of housing was not confined to any particular area, but went on at a rapid pace wherever there was easy access to London. As the country filled up in the northern districts of Southgate and beyond, so it did in places like Hounslow, Ealing and Harrow, and it was considered advisable to balance the working of the Piccadilly Line by extending it at the other end also.

The Piccadilly services were therefore projected concurrently to the west and north west, not so much by breaking fresh ground but by the adaptation of existing lines. In 1932, the Piccadilly was extended from Hammersmith to South Harrow, then to Northfields in 1933, and later the same year to Hounslow West. Finally, in October 1933, the Piccadilly was extended from South Harrow to Uxbridge, where it replaced the District shuttle from Acton Town, itself inaugurated in 1910.

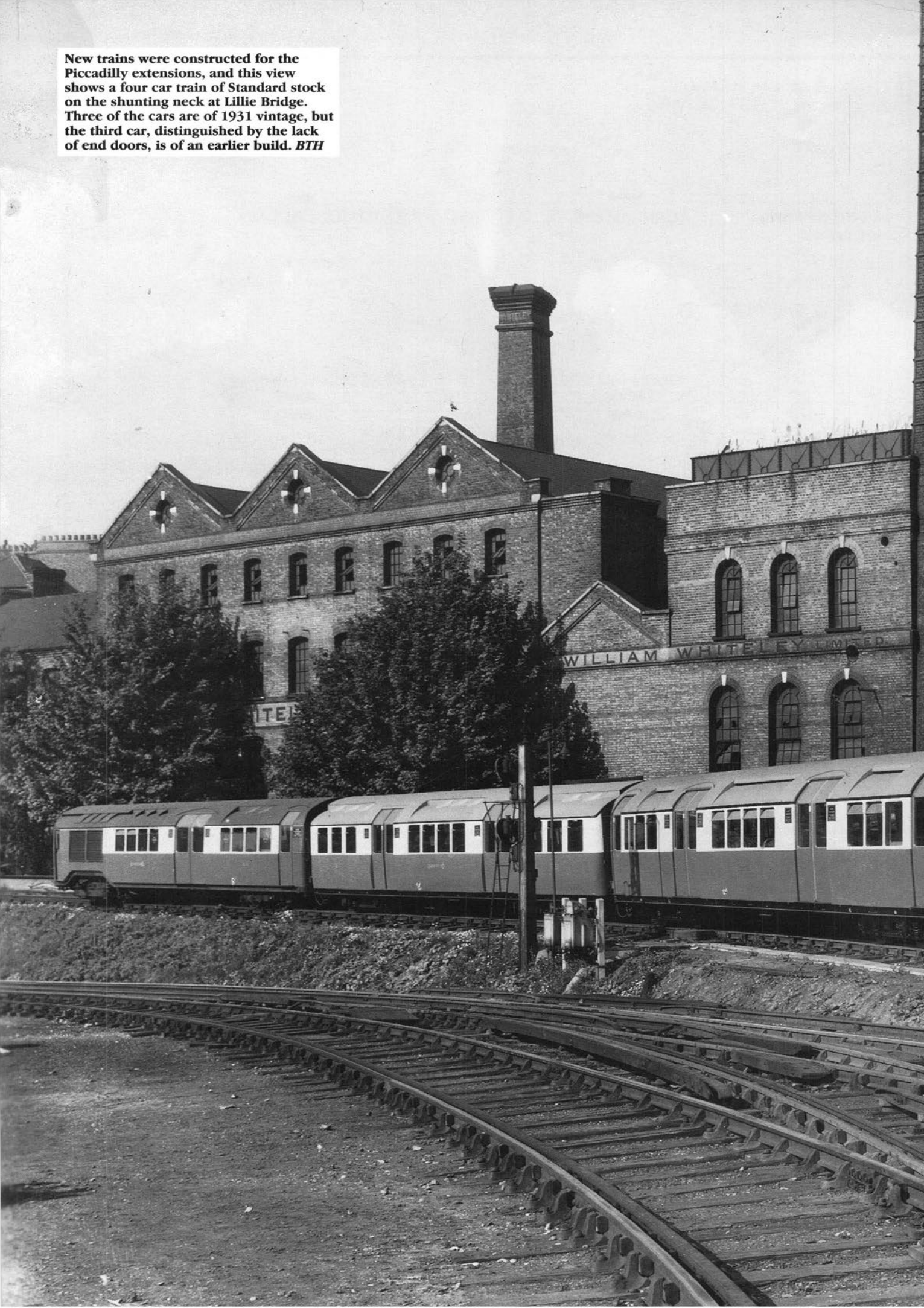
The District tracks already extended through Hammersmith to Hounslow, and from Northfields onwards it was simply a matter of Piccadilly trains using the District Line. But the District tracks as far as Turnham Green, on the way to Northfields, were far too busy to accommodate additional Piccadilly trains, plus a lesser number of Richmond trains, and some major work was called for. The problem was solved by constructing a new tunnel by cut and cover methods under Hammersmith Broadway for two new tracks, completely rebuilding the station as well for good measure, and then adapting the disused Southern Railway viaduct which had once given L&SWR trains from Richmond access to Kensington and included a connection to the Metropolitan's Hammersmith & City line.

The rebuilding was designed to offer complete physical separation between the Piccadilly trains which were to use the two centre tracks, and those of the District Line which flanked them. The latter had junctions to accommodate both the Ealing Broadway and Richmond services, and the diagram shows how the changes in the layout were made. This also illustrates how it came to be that Stamford Brook station, which was opened in 1912 and never had platforms on the L&SWR line, has no platform today on the eastbound Piccadilly Line.

West of Turnham Green junction, the tracks were quadrupled through Acton Town to Northfields by widening works; between Northfields and Boston Manor, a new car depot was built, with access from the running lines via a flyover junction. Services to Uxbridge from Acton Town used a grade separated junction, and followed the District and then the Metropolitan tracks to reach their objective. Thus the western extensions used existing lines almost throughout.

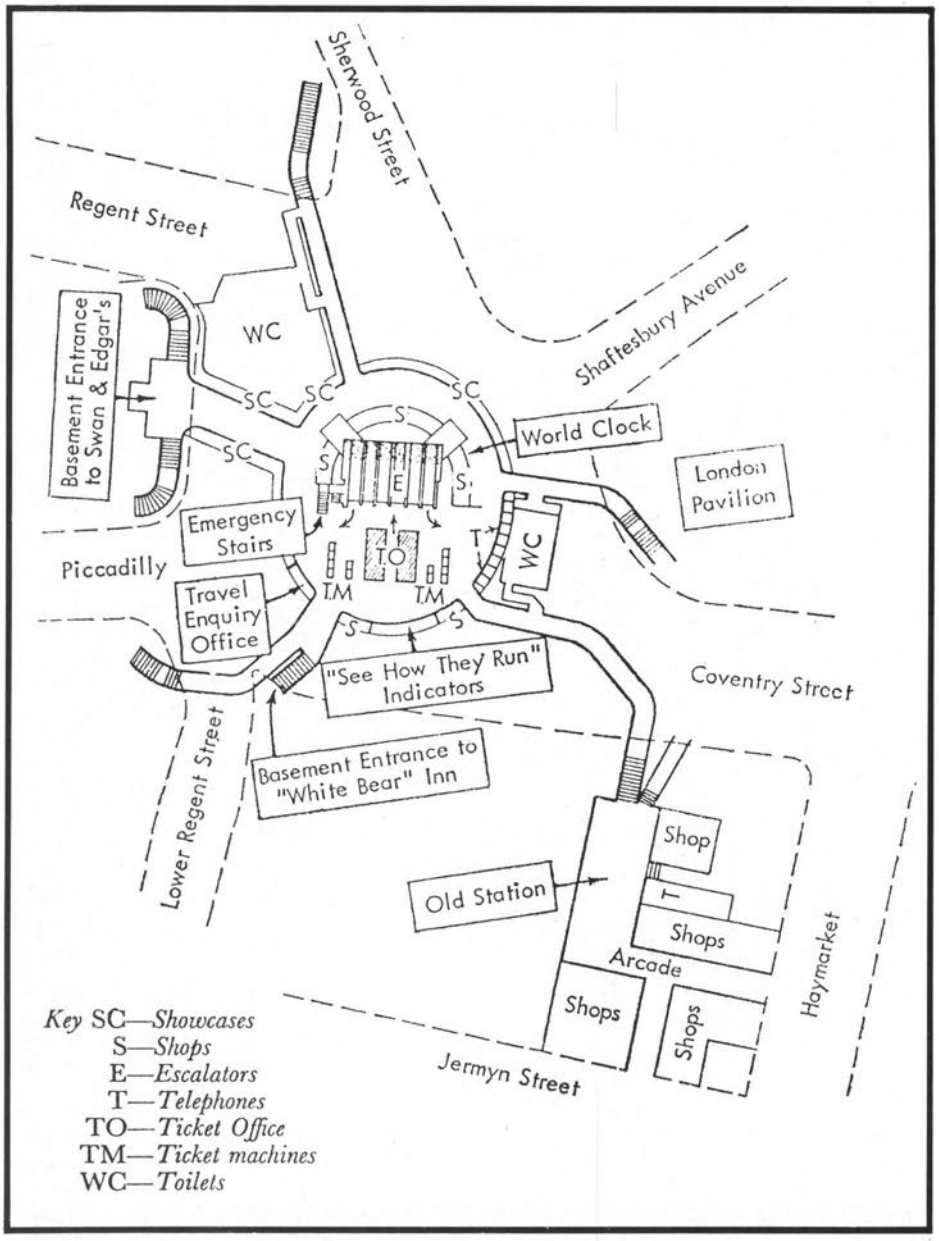
The layout between Hammersmith and Acton Town required a different stopping pattern for the two lines, the Piccadilly providing the non-stop service and gaining a modest couple of minutes in the process. The four tracks west of Acton Town have proved less useful, particularly since withdrawal of District Line services on this section in 1964. Nowadays, the former District eastbound track between South Ealing and Acton Town is devoted to testing purposes.

The extensions brought renewed pressure on the central London section of the Pic-



New trains were constructed for the Piccadilly extensions, and this view shows a four car train of Standard stock on the shunting neck at Lillie Bridge. Three of the cars are of 1931 vintage, but the third car, distinguished by the lack of end doors, is of an earlier build. ***BTH***

WILLIAM WHITELEY'S
B
00
NON STOP



Left:
Piccadilly Circus station as reconstructed, 1928.

cadilly, and extensive rebuilding of Leicester Square, Green Park (formerly Dover Street), Hyde Park Corner and Knightsbridge followed. The classic rebuilding was that of Piccadilly Circus, completed in anticipation in 1928. The old station which dealt with 1½ million passengers in 1907 could now look forward to a traffic of anything up to 50 million journeys annually, and total reconstruction was called for. The solution was to create a 15,000 sq ft booking hall 15ft below the surface of the Circus itself, surrounded by a circular area which was accessed from five subways leading to the street and directly into the basement of Swan & Edgar's store. 'Passimeter' offices with the clerks in the middle like goldfish in a bowl were installed, and no less than 26 self-service ticket machines. Five escalators in two shafts led down to a common landing 57ft below ground level, from which two sets of triple escalators led to the Piccadilly and Bakerloo Lines respectively. The booking hall was intended to recall Nash's Circus, obliterated by Edwardian rebuilding. Shops and showcases lined the perimeter, which was lit by lanterns on the red scagliola columns. Fitments were in bronze, and Travertine marble was used for surrounds. A 'world clock' built at Lillie Bridge workshops was installed, as were the 'see how they run' indicators from which service regularity could be observed by the public. It was a masterpiece of its time.

TABLE 1: The Underground in 1932.

Company	*No of Locomotives*	*Passenger Vehicles*	*No of Passengers (millions)*
Metropolitan	57	719	119.7
District	7	564	126.5
London Electric	—	1,295	149.8
City and South London	—	114	61.2
Central London	—	259	41.2
Total	64	2,951	498.4

Note: The Metropolitan totals include the GN&C; of the company's 57 locomotives, 36 were steam. The vehicle stock also included 18 parcels and 544 goods vehicles.

Also on the agenda was the closing of three of the lesser used stations, thus speeding up the services. Brompton Road, Down Street and York Road all ceased to trade between 1932 and 1934.

Rebuilding at Holborn, completed in 1933, was to make it an interchange station between the Central Line, which had previously served British Museum station, and the Piccadilly. The new platform tunnels were built around the running tunnels, so that until the old tunnels were dismantled trains were running in a tube within a tube. At the same time, escalator tunnels had to be built to connect the lines to each other and to the surface booking hall.

The Combine had always been keen on publicising its services; the following gem of logic came from the 1928 Diary:

> HOW MUCH DOES IT COST YOU TO WALK?
> The average man walks three miles a day or 1,095 miles a year.
> The average man buys two pairs of boots a year, say 30/- (£1.50) a year.
> Boots must be soled and heeled – 15/- (£0.75) a year is a reasonable allowance.
> On this basis the cost of footwear works out at 0.822d (0.343p) per mile.
> The cost of Underground travel averages 0.796d (0.332p) per mile.
> THEREFORE IT IS CHEAPER TO RIDE THAN WALK IN THE LONG RUN.

The general thrust of legislation in the 19th century had been to preserve as many small and competing industries as possible, with the ever present fears of monopoly power and consequent exploitation of the public being uppermost. However, views changed in the present century. 1915 saw the London Electric Railways Facilities Act; this allowed the CSLR, CLR, LER, MDR and also the LGOC to create a pooled revenue agreement into which all moneys collected would be paid, and each would draw upon in agreed proportions. The first steps by Government to coordinate London's transport were taken by the setting up of the Ministry of Transport in 1919, and the benefits of mass production and the planned approach became part of the general ethos. By 1931, it was possible for Herbert Morrison to say when introducing the second reading of the London Passenger Transport Bill into the House that 'Competition must go; it stultifies progress, endangers the standard of life of the workpeople in the industry, and is too expensive'. It is of interest that the Bill, first promoted by a Labour administration, was subsequently enacted by the new 'National' Government.

Before turning to the London Passenger Transport Board, the achievements of the Underground and the Metropolitan should be recorded. In 1932, the last full year of their separate existence, the trains of what was to become London Transport in popular parlance carried 498 million passengers using 2,951 passenger vehicles. Table 1 shows how passenger journeys were spread almost equally between the surface and the tube lines.

Chapter 4

The London Passenger Transport Board

The London Passenger Transport Board (LPTB) was dominated by Lord Ashfield as Chairman and Frank Pick as Vice Chairman and Chief Executive. With these two men in charge of what was now a public authority, rapid advance was only to be expected. The LPTB's role was set out in ringing terms: 'It shall be the duty of the Board so to exercise their powers under this (1933) Act as to secure the provision of an adequate and properly co-ordinated system of passenger transport for the London Passenger Transport Area, and for that purpose, while avoiding the provision of unnecessary and wasteful competitive services, to take from time to time such steps as they consider necessary for extending and improving the facilities for passenger transport in that area in such manner as to provide most effectively and conveniently for the needs thereof'. The Board was also under a duty to pay its way.

The London Underground Map of 1933 saw all pretence at geographical accuracy cease, when a stylised diagrammatic representation took its place. H. C. Beck's original depicted an Underground rather smaller than it is today, with the Central Line for instance stuck at its 1920 size. On the other hand, the eastern ambitions of the District were acknowledged by a box on the edge of the map listing the stations beyond Mile End to Upminster '& Southend'. The map was an important symbol of the unity of the undertaking which had been created by statute.

The Metropolitan had fought the formation of the LPTB, and it was here that the Board initially turned their attention. There was the small matter of the Brill branch. By now the train was sometimes quite empty, in which case the crew would often stop and go rabbiting in the woods. Another practice was the swapping of milk and eggs from nearby farms for lumps of coal from the engine! It was not unusual for the engine to derail on the deteriorating track, in which case the occasional passenger had no choice but to walk. So, with fewer than 50 passengers and 20 tons of freight a day, closure was inevitable and took place on 30 November 1935. Locomotive power in later years had been Metropolitan Railway Sharp, Stewart 2-4-0 tank locomotives, and then the familiar Beyer Peacock 4-4-0Ts were substituted until closure. However, the Aveling & Porter locomotive No 807 was rescued from dereliction by the Industrial Locomotive Society in 1950, and subsequently restored at Neasden. It passed to the National Collection in 1957, and is presently displayed at the Covent Garden museum. The Aylesbury-Verney Junction service followed the Brill branch into oblivion the following summer.

On a more positive note, King's Cross Metropolitan station fell well below the standards which were being achieved elsewhere. To reach it from the main line station or from the tube station meant a long walk; work spanning several years surrounded its closure and replacement by the present station in 1941. It is now adjacent to (but not integrated with) the deep level tube lines reached from a separate ticket hall.

At this point, Euston Road runs roughly east and west past the frontages of King's Cross and St Pancras main line stations; 35ft below lies the Metropolitan Line, following the course of the roadway. A tunnel curves out from St Pancras, carrying the tracks of the Widened Lines which meet the Metropolitan and run alongside it to Moorgate. The tunnels connecting with the London & North Eastern then formed a similar junction. West of the point where the tunnels converge, and running parallel to the Metropolitan, was a short length of abandoned tunnel, built in 1868 towards Euston Square but never completed.

To provide for the new Metropolitan station, the eastbound Metropolitan track was diverted into the abandoned tunnel, and a new tunnel was constructed on the south side of the main tunnel. This was to allow the newly redundant portion of the main tunnel to be used partly as an entrance and ticket hall, and partly as a reversing bay, although it was never electrified. Additional space was thus secured for passenger circulation because the main tunnel was generously proportioned to accommodate a double track of the old Great Western broad gauge. In the early 1960s, the reversing bay was filled in, and converted for use as an additional 250ft long concourse area. This allowed the resiting of the ticket office, and the separation of flows of passengers entering and leaving the station.

Construction exposed both the Underground and St Pancras tunnel lines below, which had to be bridged with girders while keeping the Euston Road traffic moving. Then the 70 year old abandoned tunnel, wet and layered with accumulated debris, had to be cleaned and waterproofed to fit it for its new use.

A major shortcoming was the capacity limitation represented by the two track section between Baker Street and Finchley Road. What was to prove an abortive scheme had in 1926 resulted in the Metropolitan's enlarging Edgware Road station to two island platforms with a view to constructing a relief line. With the addition of passengers from the 1932 Stanmore branch, the strains were becoming intolerable. The LPTB now determined to construct a new tube line from Baker Street to Finchley Road to enable the Bakerloo Line trains to run to Wembley Park and then over the Metropolitan's branch to Stanmore. The new scheme involved the construction of entirely new double tubes branching off the Bakerloo system at Baker Street, and proceeding along and beneath the line of the Metropolitan for 2½ miles to a point approaching Finchley Road, where they had to rise between the Metropolitan tracks. The layout thence to Wembley Park was rearranged to give the Bakerloo trains exclusive use of two of the former lines. As part of the plan, the Metropolitan services were to be speeded up by allowing the trains a clear run of several miles without any stops; tube stations at Swiss Cottage and St John's Wood replaced Lord's, Marlborough Road and Swiss Cot-

1936
TRAFFIC, THE LIFE'S BLOOD of a new London measuring 25 miles across, is aided by a bold programme of Underground extensions and arterial roads● Travel by road, quiescent almost a century, comes into its own again. London Transport, unifying at one stroke every branch of passenger transport in London, brings order and control to the daily travel of millions.
LONDON PASSENGER TRANSPORT BOARD

Left:
The newly created LPTB under its Chairman, Lord Ashfield, was full of confidence in what it could achieve. This gem is reproduced from the endpapers of the 1936 Annual Report. *Author's collection*

Above:
The Metropolitan's Stanmore station was similar in both style and design to Watford; both allowed for the tracks to continue beyond, and in both cases no more development took place. From 1939 it became part of the Bakerloo Line, and a train of 1938 stock with one of the pre-1938 trailers is seen in this photograph. ***London Transport Museum***

tage (Met). Similarly, Metropolitan Line trains were to run non-stop between Finchley Road and Wembley Park, with the intermediate stations served by the Bakerloo. New island platforms were provided where necessary to allow a fast-slow-slow-fast layout of tracks.

At Neasden, new depot facilities were built for both lines, as the workshops element of the Metropolitan's premises was relocated to Acton. This allowed the Bakerloo's constricted London Road depot site to be reduced in status to stabling sidings. A new diveunder connected Neasden depot to the running lines. The Wembley Park junction for the Stanmore branch had been constructed on the flat, and a burrowing junction north of the station removed the conflict with southbound Metropolitan trains. Further work rearranged the layout at Harrow-on-the-Hill. The Metropolitan crews referred disparagingly to the tube sized newcomers as toy trains.

At Baker Street the work required a new tube junction and a new southbound tube platform so that Bakerloo trains from both branches could enter the station together. Station rebuilding included the provision of escalators. Step plate junctions were built at the divergences, but Finchley Road provided the major tests of engineering ingenuity. To accommodate the Bakerloo, the northbound Metropolitan line had to be diverted further west and below the 'North Star' hotel, which had to be underpinned. Only two inches of concrete separated the hotel's cellars from the crown of the new tunnel when it had been finished. The northbound Bakerloo tube then broke surface via the abandoned Metropolitan tunnel. Also at Finchley Road, a 50ft girder supporting the buildings above the trains was found to be partly in the way of the new ticket hall. It had to have a top section cut away and a strengthening flange welded on while the station was in continuous use.

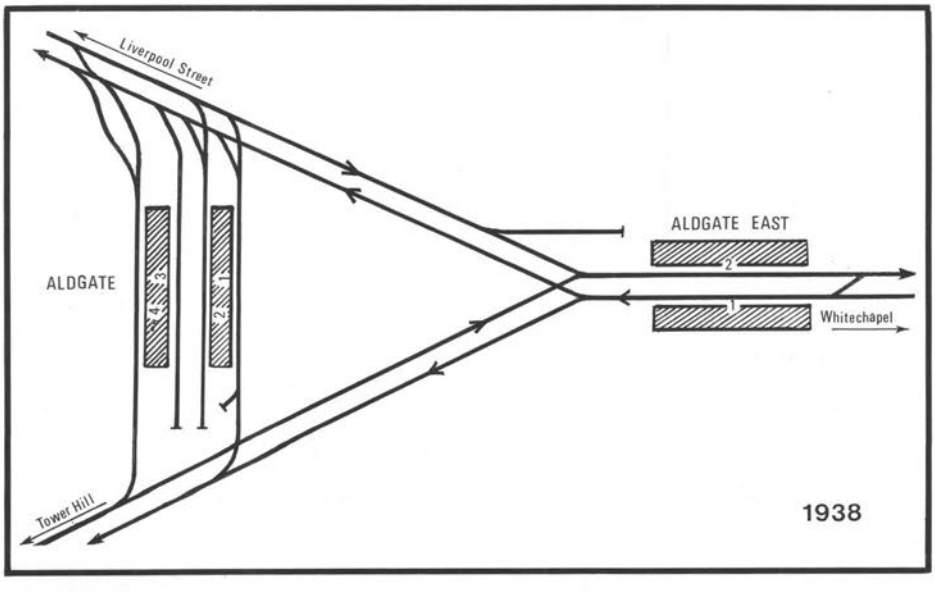
In the same programme, the rest of the Bakerloo station platforms were lengthened to 377ft to take seven cars instead of six, and at Elephant & Castle terminus a new length of double tube siding was constructed beyond the station to provide two tunnel sidings. They were pointed in the direction of Camberwell, but remain today as completed in 1939. Resignalling enabled extra trains to be run.

The District Line had been extended to Upminster in 1932, but the traffic thus generated only served to increase the passenger volumes to be carried. The major constraint was the series of junctions which form a triangle in the Aldgate area. Before reconstruction, delays occurred through trains already in Aldgate East station fouling the spur line on which Aldgate station stands, and the points controlling it. The other two sides of the triangle were only long enough to accommodate six-car trains. It was to lengthen these sides to take eight-car trains (by utilising the space occupied by the old platforms), as well as to provide better passenger facilities and a larger station, that the work of re-siting the station some 500yd further to the east was undertaken. To get the required headroom for two new ticket halls beneath Whitechapel Road, one at each end of the new station, the tracks had to be lowered by up to seven feet. The work of enlarging the tunnel, which included installing girders up to 68ft in length to support the roadway above, had to allow the continued passage of trains and road traffic, and required extreme care as many of the surface buildings were old and more liable to collapse.

The fishbelly girders spanning the line and part of the platforms were brought in by road, and lowered into the space where the tunnel crown had been demolished. The longer and heavier girders for the work further west, where they were to span the new four track layout on the old station site, were brought in at night by rail in two halves from opposite ends of the site. They were halted below their final positions, and swung round on ball races through 90 degrees to straddle both platform and track. Bolted together, the ensemble was then lifted to its resting place.

Above:
The old station at Aldgate East is shown during reconstruction. Temporary timber platforms have been completed, and the tracks lowered. New hoardings are in place ready for the demolition of the retaining walls behind them. In those days it was permissible to claim that 'Guinness is good for you'. ***London Transport Museum***

Below:
The junctions at Aldgate, 1938.



At the same time, work had been going on below building the new platforms, though the tracks were left more or less at their original level for the time being, supported increasingly on wooden trestles as construction progressed. From the trains, it was possible to peer down to the station taking shape below. Lowering was accomplished by suspending the track from the new roof, dismantling the trestles, and letting the 1,400ft of double track down using blocks and tackle by a maximum of seven feet. This work commenced at 0100 Sunday, and by 0500 Monday the first train ran through on the new alignment. 900 men were employed on the changeover, which also required the demolition of the old platforms, completion of the new ticket hall which had been left unfinished as it would have obstructed the old tracks, and the new signalling installation completed and tested. The new station was opened on 31 October 1938.

Another Metropolitan development was the rebuilding of Uxbridge station on a new site closer to the town centre, completed in 1938. It contains the only stained glass window on the Underground, featuring the coats of arms of the local authorities.

Before work started on these improvements though, the London Passenger Transport Board launched one of its major acts of policy in its five year plan - the New Works Programme, 1935/40. This programme, originally estimated to involve an expenditure of £40 million, and planned for completion by about 1940, was by far the biggest single programme of transport development ever undertaken in the London area.

The need for railway development in London, particularly in the eastern and north-eastern sectors where there had been long-standing complaints, had been recognised for many years. But it was only with the creation of the Board in 1933 and the institution of financial pooling agreements with the 'Big Four' main line railways, that it became practicable to consider the needs of London as a whole. The operators wasted no time, and the 1935/40 Programme had as a major feature the projection of tube lines

up to the surface and extended over newly electrified main line tracks. In this way, the outer suburbs were to be connected direct to both the West End and the City by tube. The main proposals as they directly affected the LPTB were as follows:

- Central Line. Extension east from Liverpool Street to Stratford and over L&NER tracks to Leytonstone, Woodford and Ongar. New tube constructed from Leytonstone to Newbury Park, then by L&NER route via Hainault to Woodford. Extension west from North Acton Junction to West Ruislip (later Denham) over additional tracks laid alongside GWR Birmingham main line.
- Northern Line. Highly complex extensions from Moorgate-Finsbury Park line over L&NER to both Alexandra Palace and East Finchley, meeting at the latter with a new projection of the Archway line. Both were to continue over the L&NER to Finchley Central, branching there both for High Barnet, and Edgware via Mill Hill East. New extension from enlarged Edgware Underground station to Bushey Heath.
- Metropolitan Line. Quadrupling of the section Harrow-on-the-Hill-Rickmansworth and extension of electrification from Rickmansworth to Amersham, including the Chesham branch.

While work was quickly put in hand, no extensions of the Central Line were ready for traffic before the war. However, improvement to the original central core, onto which the new tracks were to converge from east and west, was finished by 1938. To enable the standard tube stock to run, the track was renewed and laid on transverse sleepers, and the original third rail electrification converted to the fourth rail London Transport standard. In order to give the required clearances, it was necessary to install the positive conductor rail slightly higher than the standard position, necessitating a modification to the current collection shoes of the rolling stock. Finally, the old stations were lengthened to 427ft to take eight-car trains.

On a level line, these alterations could have been carried out by encircling the running tunnel with the larger sections of station tunnel. But as the tracks were originally constructed to enter and leave each station respectively on rising and falling gradients, some rebuilding of the station approaches was needed. The nearer portions of each gradient had to be brought more nearly level, which meant steepening the remainder of each slope by up to 3ft to gain the extended platforms. The results of this work remain plainly visible today.

With all work in Central London finished, the original Central London Railway was adapted to carry the traffic from the extensions, which was expected to total some 300 trains daily.

The most ambitious of the schemes was the northern extensions of the Northern Line. To begin with, all went well. Archway (formerly Highgate) is a deep level tube station, from which trains were required to rise to a distinctly higher level at East Finchley. Archway had been constructed as a terminus, and two dead-end siding tunnels projected north for a short distance. One was extended to form a reversing siding with crossover connections, and the other was continued as the new northbound line. This, with its twin tunnel, rises at 1 in 50 to Highgate, where it was still 80ft below the old L&NER station above. Long escalators were therefore needed to connect the new platforms (which were 480ft long to suit the proposed operation of nine car trains) with the ticket hall situated immediately below the L&NER platforms.

But the L&NER station was itself built in a cutting between two tunnels, and Archway Road which was the principal access was another 60ft above that. A further escalator was (later) built up the side of the embankment in the open air, to complete the access to the platforms a full 140ft below.

Beyond Highgate the tubes continue to rise, breaking surface one each side of the L&NER tracks at East Finchley, with all four

Left:
The original Uxbridge station in Belmont Road was demolished and a new building erected nearer the town centre. In this view of December 1937, F Class 0-6-2T No L52 and an unidentified battery locomotive are hauling permanent way trains. The labour intensive nature of such work is very noticeable. ***London Transport Museum***

Right:
The streamlined 1935 experimental tube stock had styling reminiscent of contemporary German developments. Who would have guessed that the timeless 1938 front end design could have emerged from such a period piece? ***Lens of Sutton***

Below:
The 1940 station at East Finchley. The 1959 stock train is leaving for Morden via Bank; it was the centre platforms on the left of the picture which were to be used for train to Finsbury Park over the former LNER tracks. ***John Glover***

tracks crossing the Great North Road together by bridge. At this point there was some difficulty with the levelling off of the tube, as the tunnel exit had to be high enough for the line to cross the main road, yet as far from Highgate as possible to flatten out the gradient. This brought the tunnel mouth very close to East Finchley station, and as a result the southbound track plunges rather abruptly at 1 in 40 into a tunnel mouth which is slightly lower than its counterpart. This drop was necessary as the southbound tunnel had to pass below the L&NER lines to Finsbury Park above.

There was insufficient width of land at this point to enlarge the tunnel entry into the usual bell-mouth, and other means had to be found to minimise the air pressure on trains entering the tunnel. It took the form of a number of pressure relief openings in the top of the tunnel and these were strung out for some distance, gradually spacing out as they went. The intention was to avoid unpleasant 'popping' of the ears by minimising the piston effect as a train dropped into the tunnel at about 35 mph; the air ahead of the train is allowed to escape rapidly

Left:
Girl cleaners were an innovation in 1941, when this photograph was taken of a G stock motor car being given the treatment. ***Fox Photos***

Above:
The eight deep level tube tunnel shelters were equipped 'with wire mesh bunks, snack bars, a sick bay, and all the comforts needed'. This photograph is dated 1942. ***Fox Photos***

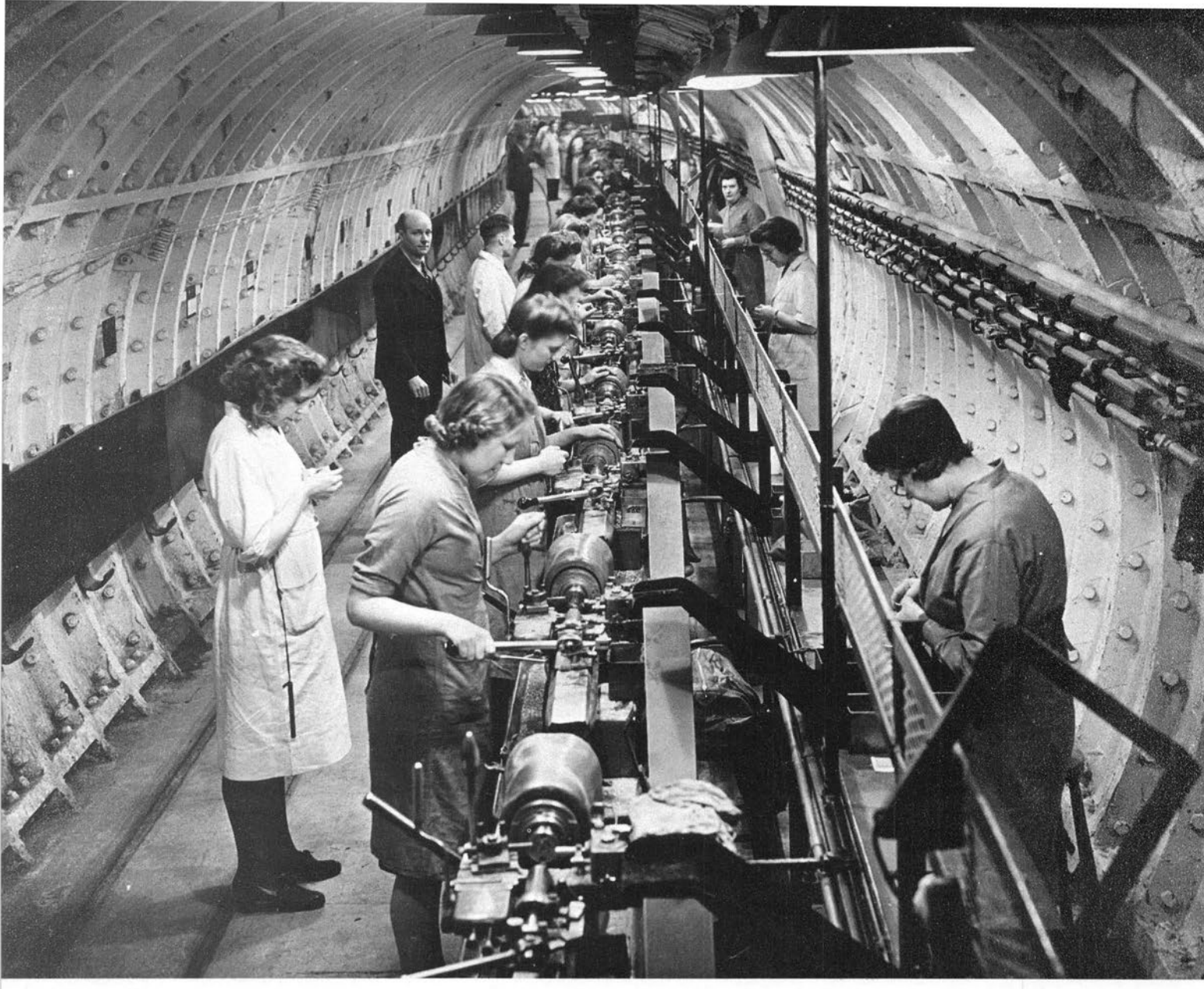
through the vents, and then less rapidly as the train passes deeper into the tunnel. The pressure thus builds up more gradually, but even so it can be an uncomfortable experience sitting in the front car of a train.

North of East Finchley, the lines converge on two tracks for the long straight run to Finchley Central; had the intended schemes been completed this section might have proved to be a major operational problem with two busy routes diverging at both ends of it. This station was to have been an imposing complex with a pair of island platforms serving four tracks, but no work other than platform lowering was ever carried out, and it remains today a pleasant typically Great Northern station. The (historically) later High Barnet line curves to the right through a cutting to the 'odds and ends' built station of 1933 at West Finchley and further GNR stations to the terminus. At all the intermediate branch stations, platform heights were left untouched when the Underground took over, and passengers thus step down into trains and up out of them.

From Finchley Central the Edgware tracks carried straight on, over the imposing Dollis Brook viaduct which carries the Underground (!) 60ft above ground level to Mill Hill East. Electrification was extended this far on a single line only on 14 March 1941 to serve the barracks – and there matters stuck fast. As for the Metropolitan electrification, only some minor preparatory work was undertaken.

The outbreak of the war brought great changes, not least in the control of the undertaking passing to the Minister of Transport on 1 September 1939. Control of London Transport, as of the main line railway companies, was exercised through the Railway Executive Committee. The Board's traffic, swollen at times by troop movements, was substantially reduced by evacuation, by the blackout, and later by the bombing of London. The population in the area served fell by 2,700,000 so that by late 1944 only 7,147,000 remained. The financial implications were not welcome.

Just as seriously, development work gradually ceased. Uncompleted parts of the New Works Programme were suspended, in some cases to be completed up to 20 years after the intention, in others to face eventual abandonment. The replacement of rolling stock came to an end, and a reduction in maintenance programmes, brought about by an acute shortage of labour and materials, had to be accepted. At the same time, with many staff away on active service in the Forces, there was a need to make a contri-



Above:
Work in progress in the uncompleted tube tunnels on the Central Line's eastern extension under Eastern Avenue. The number of workers gives some indication of the potential output of the factory. ***The Plessey Co***

bution to the national effort in aircraft manufacture and war supplies generally. Rolling stock and equipment for such a mundane purpose as providing transport facilities in London were thus maintained in service with great difficulty, while older stock needed a special rehabilitation overhaul after the end of hostilities.

The war formed a test of altogether unprecedented severity for the Underground and its parent organisation. The first concern was to take adequate air raid precautions. The most obvious threat to the Underground in central London was that of flooding. It was well known that if any of the tunnels carrying the tube railways under the Thames were breached, the whole of the tube system would be at risk. Similar consequences might result from a breach of the Embankment's wall paralleling the centre section of the District Line. Certain stations had also to be protected against the possibility of burst water mains, while a breach of Marc Brunel's Thames Tunnel, now carrying the East London Line, might lead to flooding over a wide area.

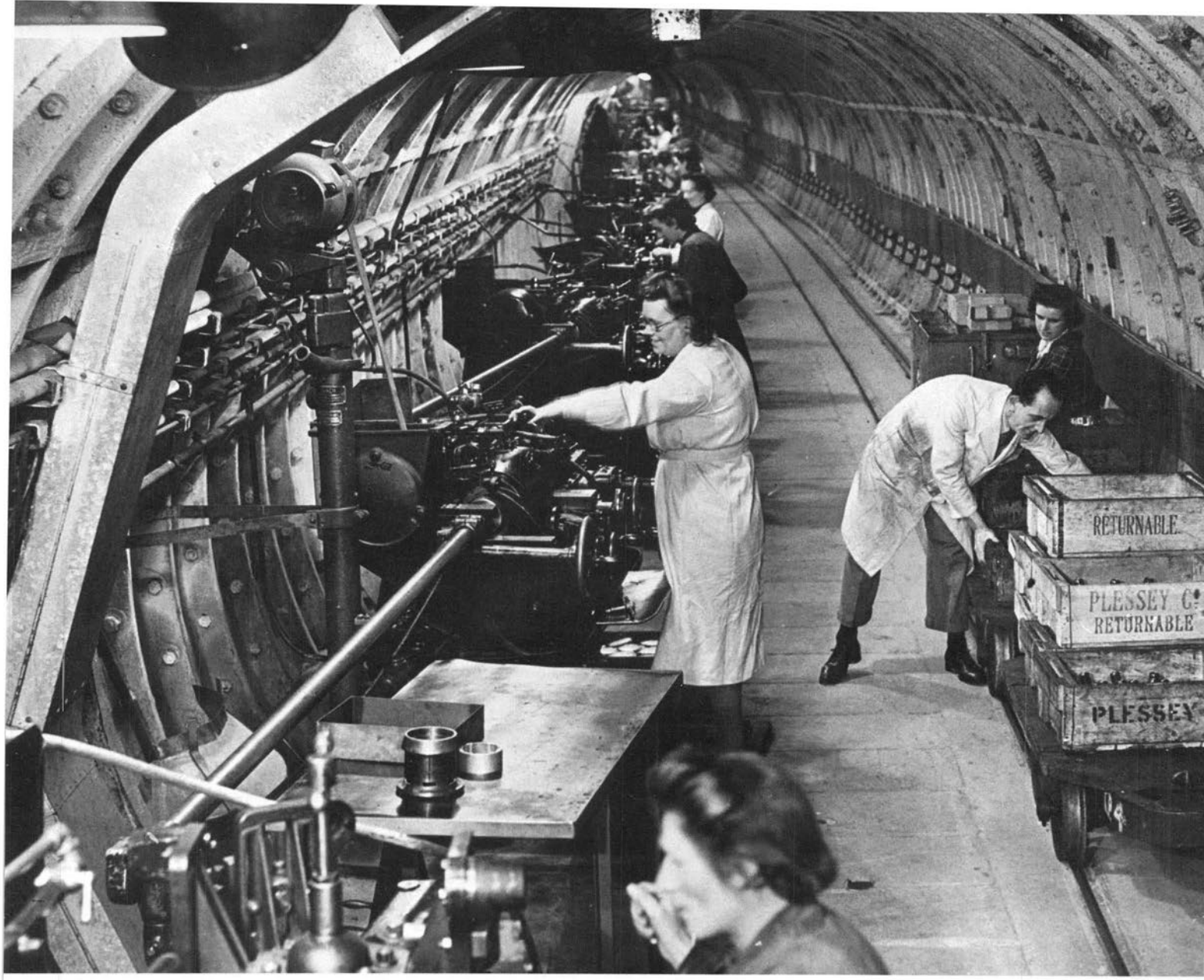
For traffic reasons, any permanent sealing of the underwater tunnels could not be entertained. At the time of the Munich crisis in 1938 both the Bakerloo and Northern tunnels were plugged with concrete, but this was an emergency expedient only. Plans were prepared early in 1939 to install a complete system of electrically operated floodgates on those lines each side of the Thames so that the underwater sections could be isolated from the remainder of the system. Time did not allow the completion of this work by the outbreak of war, and closure of the portions of line affected followed; the last section to be reopened between London Bridge and Moorgate did not do so until May 1940. These construction works represented the most major disruption of the system during the entire war period.

Use of the gates needed care to ensure both continuation of train services and the safety of passengers. Two independent sources of electricity supply were arranged, and hand operation could be resorted to. Manned continuously, closure of all 18 gates followed the receipt of air raid warnings by Leicester Square traffic control office. Track circuit diagrams indicated locally the positions of all trains, and the signalling was interlocked with the gate mechanisms; the gates themselves could be closed in less than a minute. Arrangements were put in hand to work the severed sections separately. As a second line of defence, steel diaphragms were placed nearby in case they were wanted.

The similar works on the District Line were not needed at low tide, and an automatic tide indicator was installed. Acoustic bombs posed another threat, and detection devices were placed on the river bed to record any which posed a threat to the Underground tunnels.

Other less extensive preparatory work included the duplication and paralleling of electricity supply cables, modifying ventilation arrangements to minimise the effects of a poison gas attack, strengthening the structures of essential buildings ranging from generating stations to traffic control offices, and use of disused tube stations as secure accommodation for government and other purposes. The Aldwych branch was closed for the duration and used to store items from the British Museum, including the Elgin Marbles.

The blackout regulations produced major difficulties. As well as all the stations, depots and workshops, every vehicle had to be



Above:
The Underground was not the first railway to use the new Central Line tunnels. A narrow gauge railway (on which workers were forbidden to ride) was used to bring materials to and remove the completed work from the work benches. ***The Plessey Co***

fitted with special lighting which was the minimum possible to enable the job to be done. Miles of cream netting (which not-so-gradually turned black) covered all but the centre of the windows on underground cars; it adhered so firmly that traces remained on many cars until their final scrapping. Passengers were much tempted to peel it off, and an obnoxious individual called Billy Brown was invented, who by means of car advertisements told the reader:

'I trust you'll pardon my correction
that stuff is there for your protection'.

This invited a reply, such as the addition of:

'We thank you for your information
but want to see the bloody station'!

Signals had to be hooded and dimmed, whilst all kinds of maintenance work became that much more awkward. The strain on passengers and staff alike was great, and many experiments were carried out to see what improvements could be made to illumination levels without incurring unnecessary risks. These met with a fair degree of success.

A major early test was the evacuation. Not only children, but also expectant mothers, mothers with children under five, the blind and the elderly were to be moved out. The plan was to evacuate 1.25 million persons in the space of four days. In the event, 600,000 were ferried out of inner London by the LPTB and the main line railways. Lack of bombing resulted in many returning, only to be sent on their way again in 1940 and subsequently. This was a team effort between public organisations, and the police, local authorities and the government departments concerned all had major contributions to make.

Bombing from August 1940 onwards inevitably brought disruption to services, although never to the extent of causing the shutdown of the system as a whole. Most incidents resulted in partial line closures for periods of 10 days or less; those that took longer to repair included the sad destruction at Balham on 14 October 1940 when a bomb pierced the station tunnel roof causing flooding from burst mains and an inrush of gravel and rubbish which half filled both tunnels. Four staff and 68 shelterers died, and the line was closed for three months. Again at Bank on 11 January 1941 the roadway was penetrated and collapsed, leaving a crater 150ft across. The escalators were wrecked and blast damage inflicted on trains in the platforms 62ft below street level. Two months elapsed before the station reopened, but four staff and 53 shelterers lost their lives. One of the longest breaks in service was the five month suspension between King's Cross and Euston Square after the massive air raid of 10 May 1941. Over 2,000 incidents relating to damage to railway buildings were recorded, and 1,050 cases of damage to rolling stock. Nineteen railway cars were totally destroyed.

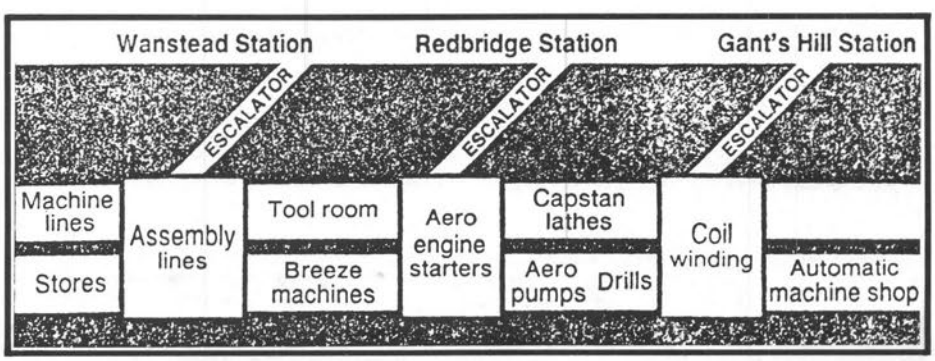
The tube stations made natural shelters from the bombing, and although at first resisted, there proved to be no practicable means of denying people refuge. Indeed, men used crowbars to force the locks on the station entrances, and the authorities quietly capitulated. The first use was on 7 September 1940. Sanitary arrangements were hastily installed, with a drainage system at 81 stations eventually allowing sewage to be pumped to the surface. A refreshment service provided by train or otherwise was feeding 120,000 nightly in late 1940. Most slept on the platforms, although bunks for 22,800 were built. Later, bunk allocations were provided by ticket, and medical posts, washing facilities, storage for bedding and

even small libraries eventually made an appearance. The peak night was 27 September 1940 when 177,000 spent the night as guests of the London Underground; thereafter the numbers gradually declined. An oddity was Highgate, still unopened in 1940 because the escalator installation had not been finished, but otherwise complete. The Inner London stations became so crowded as shelters that special trains for shelterers were run to Highgate and unloaded there. The rest of the train service ran non-stop through a brightly lit station full of sleeping people! Some of the uncompleted sections of the Central Line east of Liverpool Street were also used for this purpose, but under the aegis of the local authorities.

Once the principle of using the Underground as shelter accommodation had been accepted, it was natural to consider what else could be done. This resulted in the limited construction of deep level station platforms below some existing Northern (and Central) Line platforms, in the fond hope that under peacetime conditions they could be utilised as part of an express tube network. Eight shelters were built (out of 10 proposed) at an average depth of 80ft below ground level underneath existing stations. Each shelter had a shaft head at each end with a lift for five persons and a double spiral staircase. Each of the pair of 'station' tunnels was to be 1,400 ft long. Their 16ft 6in diameter was divided into two levels with a floor installed at the mid way point; at each location around 8,000 bunk beds were installed. There were first aid facilities, kitchens and sanitation, and also connections to the LT station. Although completed from 1942 onwards, the shelters were not used by the public until mid-1944. Their locations were at Belsize Park, Camden Town, Goodge Street, Stockwell, Clapham North, Clapham Common and Clapham South – and at Chancery Lane. Three (Goodge Street, Clapham Common and Chancery Lane) were retained for Government use.

After the war, Jamaican immigrants had the misfortune to be housed in Clapham South, which also accommodated troops during the 1953 Coronation. Their last employment as living quarters was at Goodge Street where an Army Transit Camp had been established, but following a fire there in 1956 such use was abandoned.

The section of tunnel between Leytonstone and Gants Hill was turned into an aircraft component factory. The Plessey Company installed the factory in 1942, converting the 2½ mile stretch into a wartime production line employing more than 2,000 workers.



Above:
Out of hours transport through tube tunnels, 1940s style! The intrepid cyclist at an unknown location wears a fixed expression for the camera. ***London Transport Museum***

Right:
Wartime use by Plessey of uncompleted Central Line tunnels, 1942.

In 1940, Lord Beaverbrook as Minister of Aircraft Production had approached the LPTB about the possibility of using the Underground for the protection of vital production machinery. Construction of the Central Line extension was nearly complete when it was agreed to turn the 300,000sq ft of floor space into a factory, used to make items such as fuel pumps and aero engine starters. The diagram shows the general layout of the site. Interviewed by *The Times* in 1985, Mr Dennis Barron who was then 16 and paid a mere £1 per week, described working there:

'It was strange, really, like working in a mine, only you could hear the bombing overhead - a terrific bang, and all the lights would shake. Men and women worked side by side; we all liked it because there was such a good group of people working together. We took our work seriously, arrived at 7.30 in the morning and worked until past dinner time and on Saturdays with no overtime pay'.

The tunnels were equipped to handle raw materials inwards and finished parts outwards on a narrow gauge railway, which was also used for taking visiting VIPs on tours of inspection. Other adaptations to the tunnels were the provision of entrances so that no worker had to walk more than ¼ mile, extra ventilation shafts, cloakrooms and sanitation; a canteen for 600 was erected at Redbridge.

Less well known is the use made of the 'Exhibition Subway' at Earl's Court station, where a factory manned by voluntary part time workers for making aircraft components was established.

The volume of traffic carried reflected the course of the war. Evacuation and the subsequent bombing depressed traffic levels in 1940 and 1941, after which they slowly recovered with the intensification of the war effort and greater movement of HM Forces. Services were also restricted due to coal shortages limiting electricity generation. Although initially the number of passengers carried fell faster than the drop in car miles operated, leading on the whole to easier travelling conditions, the later expansion of demand was met by further restrictions on the service provided. In 1945, 543 million passenger journeys were catered for by 162 million car miles, a ratio representing 23% more crowding than in 1938/39, and over 60% worse than in 1941. The figures mask any differences in average journey lengths which may have taken place, and do not take account of the way that distribution of traffic over the working day may have changed. Yet here was the genesis of a problem which was to dog the Underground for the next twenty years, when system capacity consistently failed to meet the demands placed upon it.

What sort of a world did the Underground emerge into in 1945 with the cessation of hostilities? Short term, the ending of the strain of wartime operation could not be matched by easier travelling conditions. In the words of the 1945 Annual Report, 'Shortages of staff and fuel remained and no immediate increases in services were possible. Rather did victory bring some embarrassment to the Board, for the general reaction after six years of war manifested itself in a desire for enjoyment and celebration, and heavier loadings were the result'. The focus of all the effort had gone, the staff were exhausted, and the system was run down and lacking in new equipment.

The longer term scene was influenced by the planners. In 1943, Patrick Abercrombie finished his huge survey of the planning needs of London: it was full of visions of an orderly, beautiful city with fresh air and lively tranquility to take over after the war. There were to be substantial implications for the railway system. One result was plans to build new underground railways all over the central area, coordinating the efforts of the main line railways and the Underground. Another was to confirm the creation of a 'Green Belt' to surround the capital and limit urban sprawl, which was now seen to be growing at an alarming rate and something to be discouraged. The catch was the complete lack of public money to make any advance towards the goals.

These are matters considered further in the next chapter, as are the pressures which determined the fate of the uncompleted parts of the New Works Programme. In fact, the resumption of the Central Line work brought Greenford, Newbury Park and Woodford into the tube network by the end of 1947, and thus within the LPTB era. The development of the trains and the huge influx of new rolling stock during the Board's existence is described in Chapter 6.

Writing their own epitaph in the 1947 Annual Report, the Board recorded that they had 'sought to provide a passenger transport service, by rail and road, worthy of London as a great metropolitan city; at the same time, they have pursued a long-term policy of financial soundness, supported by an appropriate fares structure which could also be justified both by the adequacy of the services and the efficiency of their operation'.

Below:
Crowds decamp at Kensington (Olympia), nee Addison Road. The District Line shuttle from High Street, Kensington was restored in 1946, but for the next 40 years ran during exhibitions only. Today, Underground trains have access only to the bay platform on the left. ***Lens of Sutton***

Chapter 5

The Postwar Years

Nationalisation placed a newly formed London Transport Executive under the British Transport Commission from 1 January 1948. The latter had enough to do in agonising over the affairs of the infant British Railways, and the LTE was deliberately left mainly to its own devices. A minor rash of boundary changes in the Metropolitan Line's area put LT in charge of the section from Harrow-on-the-Hill to south of Aylesbury, the Chesham and Watford branches. Likewise, the Western Region lost most of the western end of the Central Line, including the uncompleted works on the West Ruislip branch, and the Eastern Region the chunks of Great Northern and Great Eastern suburban lines which were in the course of conversion to Underground operation as part of the 1935/40 programme. Other LT acquisitions of the East London Line and east of Whitechapel really only reflected reality in that the providers of the services should be responsible also for the infrastructure. However, these were hardly matters which were fundamental to the running of the Underground; indeed, change was noticeable by its absence. But public expectations were rising, and it was perhaps in these years that London Transport, as the 1948 nationalisation renamed the undertaking, lost the respect of the public which had been so ably harnessed and demonstrated a long decade ago.

It had been bad luck for the would-be commuters on the Central Line. The New Works Programme had promised them great things both east and west of the capital, and a large proportion of the work had been carried out before the war stopped work. Instead, the hapless passengers along the Eastern Avenue watched the completed tunnels being turned over to war work, and then fitted out with five mile long concrete floors – which took a correspondingly long time to remove afterwards. The extension works turned a short inner suburban railway line between Ealing Broadway and Liverpool Street into a veritable railway system of its own, extending miles into the country.

There were two main reasons for the western projection: to balance the workings in the west with those into the Essex borders, and to provide direct West End and City access for the developing areas of Greenford and Ruislip. They also offered a modest measure of relief for the Piccadilly Line.

The first obstacle to be tackled was the total rebuilding of the inconvenient arrangements at Wood Lane, where the original platform on the sharply-curved terminating loop had been supplemented by the through platforms of the Ealing & Shepherd's Bush Railway in 1920. The present westbound Central Line takes a wide sweep around the old site on its way to the replacement station of White City opened in 1947, in the open and just to the west. Built

Below:
A recent photograph of the exterior of White City station (1947), considerably more prepossessing at street than at platform level. ***John Glover***

Above:
Hanger Lane station was designed personally by the Great Western Railway architect, but was not completed until 1948. Today it sits in the middle of a traffic gyratory, and is reached by a selection of subways. Compared with the streets above, the platforms below are an oasis of calm. ***John Glover***

in brick and concrete and in unprepossessing style, it nevertheless gained a Festival of Britain Architectural award. The twin island platforms retained the right hand running inherited from the old layout, giving a curious back-to-front feeling to the station. The central track, normally used for terminating trains, was flanked by platforms at both sides; access to the depot was retained. Eastbound trains still pass one of the old platform sites in tunnel.

Between Wood Lane and North Acton there were, until 1938, only two Great Western owned tracks, used by Ealing bound tube trains and steam hauled services; quadrupling was undertaken to separate the GW and LT trains. At North Acton, a new burrowing junction was built so that westbound West Ruislip trains could diverge from the Ealing line without crossing its metals.

There was a considerable amount of construction work needed for the new tube to parallel the (now) former Birmingham main line, though none was in tunnel. Much of it was carried on a long succession of bridges and viaducts over roads, railways and waterways. Thus there is a brick viaduct over the River Brent between Hanger Lane and Perivale, followed by three long viaducts in concrete and several bridges or girder spans to carry the line over the east and west forks of the BR line from West Ealing. Beyond Greenford, distinguished by its central bay which accommodates all that remains of BR local services in the area, the tracks multiply at Northolt Junction where the line from Marylebone joins that from Paddington. The result is a great area of land dedicated to railway purposes, but with little traffic other than the tube trains running every 10-15 minutes.

At Ruislip Gardens the line passes over West End Lane on a plate girder bridge set very much on the skew, to the extent that the girders have a maximum span of 99ft. On the south side of the line is the extensive Ruislip Depot. This has 16 tracks, each with its own inspection pit 440ft long; together with the carriage sidings there are altogether 22 parallel lines of track here besides the running lines. West Ruislip is the terminus, the proposed further extension to Denham never having been pursued. From here to Epping is 34½ miles and 90 minutes of running time, the longest continuous journey which can be undertaken on the Underground. All the extension works including the modernistic stations were built by the Great Western, with London Transport being granted running powers. After nationalisation, management and ownership were transferred in stages to London Transport, a process completed in 1963.

Opening of the western extensions in 1947/48 saw the replacement of a modest steam-worked suburban operation, many of the stations served being no more than halts; traffic growth engendered by the new tube railway although substantial has never perhaps quite matched expectations. It was a very different matter in the east, where the London & North Eastern Railway was under severe pressure. Southwest Essex, without a tube railway before, had a splendidly long one when work was completed.

The grand scheme for the area included electrification (at 1,500V dc) of the L&NER suburban service between Liverpool Street and Shenfield, and the extension of the Central Line from Liverpool Street to connect with the L&NER Loughton-Epping-Ongar branch and the Grange Hill loop, which were to be electrified and resignalled.

The extended tube ran from the Central Line platforms at Liverpool Street to a deep level station at Bethnal Green, afterwards rising to the sub-surface level of the District Line at Mile End through water-bearing ground. The compressed air method of boring could not be employed here because the depth of covering earth was insufficient, and the ground too porous to prevent air leakage. The problem was met by chemically treating the earth, both to consolidate it and hold back the water so that tunnelling could proceed. Some complicated work was also needed at the station, for the tube emerges on either side of the District Line tracks, and the old station had to be transformed into a new one with a double island platform layout. Mile End is unusual as a tube station in that it is partly open to daylight on the westbound platform, and the access is by stairs only.

For the 1¾ miles between Mile End and Stratford the line had to run beneath several streams that form part of the River Lea system. It was imperative to use compressed air under the east London marshes, and to provide sufficient ground cover the twin tubes were located beneath the L&NER embankments. At river crossings however those embankments ceased, and the tubes were deprived of cover. Beneath the City Mill River only a few feet of waterlogged ballast lay between the tunnel shield and the bed of the river. A 'blow' here would have resulted in disaster, so the ground had again to be artificially consolidated, the injection pipes

A stock trains meet at Chalfont & Latimer: in the bay is the Chesham shuttle, with an Amersham–Baker Street train approaching on the main line. *John Glover*

3

for forcing the chemical into the ground being driven from pontoons anchored in the river.

Beneath the Carpenter's Road L&NER bridge, west of Stratford station, it was impossible to use compressed air, because at this point the tubes were rising to the level of the main line and lie only a little way below the road surface. Here it was necessary to sink two cofferdams (a kind of watertight enclosure), and partly build the tubes within them. A portion of the tunnel under the roadway had to be made only 7ft in diameter to start with, owing to the presence of a large sewer; after the diversion of the sewer the tunnel was enlarged to 12ft.

At Stratford itself, the tube shared the L&NER station, making cross-platform connections in both directions with the electric suburban services provided from 1949, and then dived back into tube tunnel until it was clear of the extensive railway complex. It rose to the surface in an open cutting to (originally) a junction with the L&NER west of Leyton station. The eastbound tunnel was positioned directly below the Loughton branch signalbox with minimal clearance beneath the ballast; the consolidating chemical treatment was administered from inside the cabin amongst all the levers and locking mechanisms, without interrupting traffic. British Rail continued to run freight services for a time, and staff trains to Epping ran in the early mornings using diesel multiple units until 1980. After this, the connection was severed.

At Leytonstone the route forked; some trains continued on former L&NER metals via Woodford, while others entered the new tube, no longer used as a factory, to come to the surface again at Newbury Park. Redbridge station on the extension was built by cut and cover methods, being only 15ft below ground level, but Gant's Hill was given a unique treatment. Situated below a roundabout and thus with an underground ticket hall, escalators led down to a concourse between the platforms 150ft long and 20ft high. The domed roof was supported by rows of columns. Some kindly folk compared it with the monumental stations on the Moscow underground, but while the approach was the same, the execution was mundane.

At Newbury Park, the tube joined the L&NER tracks from Ilford (later abandoned). Alterations at this station and others on former L&NER lines were carried out by that company; here a huge copper covered concrete arch shaped like an aircraft hangar and just as draughty was erected alongside to serve as a bus station. Hainault station became a terminus for trains from the south, and extensive depot facilities with car washing plant and housing up to 344 cars were built beyond the station.

On the former main line, the LPTB managed to close the level crossings as part of the electrification package. Mostly, alternative facilities were provided, but the severing of Snakes Lane at Woodford station, which required traffic to make a diversion of the best part of a mile, provoked much indignation in local motorists. Loughton station underwent rebuilding, but elsewhere structures were largely preserved then and indeed so remain today. The lines were opened in sections from 1946; it was unfortunate that the L&NER's domestic electrification to Shenfield was delayed, since the tube service immediately attracted more traffic than it could cope with, resulting in questions in the House as early as 1948.

The completion of electrification to Epping on 25 September 1949 would no doubt have been the end of the matter had not there been two further sections of line to be considered. The loop from Hainault to Woodford passed through the countryside and was incorporated in the electrification programme from the outset. Justified or not, the work was completed in 1948 and the line worked as a shuttle. Howson described the scene north of Grange Hill then, as 'a tunnel mouth surmounted by a haystack, and a trial train disappearing with much sparking from the newly electrified track, that pleasantly contrasted with cattle munching in the fields'. Little has changed.

The other section was the wholly rural single track route for the six miles from Epping on to Ongar. The Great Eastern Rail-

way may or may not have had Chelmsford in their sights when pressing out to Ongar, but the line was so patently of a different nature to the Underground system in general that several years elapsed before London Transport could decide what to do about it. In the meantime, BR's Eastern Region provided the traditional steam service, but in 1957 electrification was completed and a shuttle service using two electric trains was introduced. These would cross each other in the passing loop at North Weald, and it was said that if each started simultaneously from Epping and Ongar after dark, the lights on the intermediate stations would dim to a dull glow! Thus was the Central Line work completed.

Left:
The Minister of Transport, Albert Barnes MP, inserts a golden key into a signal (a somewhat unorthodox method of signalling!) at Liverpool Street Central Line on 2 December 1946. The occasion was the inauguration of services to Stratford. ***Central Press***

Below:
Redbridge station has only stairs linking it with the platforms in the shallow tunnels beneath; the station was constructed by the cut and cover method. This was one of the last stations associated with the architect Charles Holden. ***John Glover***

It was even harder luck for the inhabitants of Brockley Hill, Mill Hill and Alexandra Palace. Good progress had been made before work had ceased, yet slowly it all slipped away. Preparations for the extensions beyond Edgware which included the commencement of the boring of Elstree tunnel, and the building of substations and Aldenham depot were all to no avail. Aldenham later became the bus overhaul workshops of London Transport, but the rest of the work went to waste.

Further south, the half completed bridge across Seven Sisters Road at Finsbury Park was abandoned. At Drayton Park, where the Great Northern & City line between Moorgate and Finsbury Park was in the open but at a depth of about 40ft, new running lines were constructed, leaving the old just north of the station in a cut and cover tunnel. They then emerged through trough shaped cuttings to the surface, and the intention was that they should continue to rise to a new high level island platform at Finsbury Park. Thence the former flyover curve crossing the L&NER main line tracks was to have been adapted to carry the tube trains on their way to the dizzy heights of Alexandra Palace station, and to East Finchley for onward projection. Work got as far as erecting the London Transport roundels at Highgate High Level, but again no further work was carried out once it had been stopped in 1941. The only part retained of the new work was the access to the depot at Highgate from East Finchley's centre platforms.

Over the years, the Northern Line extensions have continued to excite the imagination of what might have been, even as the half completed works subsided gently into the undergrowth and were obscured by subsequent building. The following description is of a journey on a non-wartime winter evening.

'The mist was rising, rain was falling, and the wind was blowing cold across Brockley Hill. In the distance I heard a faint "Peep! Peep!" of a 1938 tube stock car; to my right was a wire fence and beyond it I could see lights and LT "Bullseyes" bearing the name Elstree South. I noticed the familiar five-light headcode pattern approaching behind the fence, and the train was bearing the destination "Kennington via East Finchley and City". I fumbled for my Staff Pass and hurried through the barrier to board the train.

'The train quickly accelerated out of the station, diving almost immediately into a tunnel, but after a few seconds we began to climb onto an embankment and were soon dazzled by the bright lights of an open air station – Brockley Hill. Here, we paused for a few seconds. The station was on a viaduct straddling Watford Way. Below was a trolleybus, its long arms stretching up to collect current from wires suspended from the viaduct. Adjacent to the station entrance was a turning circle for route 666, Brockley Hill to Hammersmith, extended from Stanmore Circus to serve the new station.

'On the train went, over house tops high above the suburbs of Edgware, before diving into a cutting and emerging into a five platform Edgware station. In another platform, a second 1938 tube stock train waited. The train describer revealed its destination as Moorgate via Finsbury Park, and I changed onto it. We continued our journey, veering to the left after leaving Edgware. Our next stop was Mill Hill (The Hale), and as we waited there, a Midland Compound roared

PLATFORM 1
WESTBOUND
BANK
HOLBORN
OXFORD CIRCUS
MARBLE ARCH
EALING
RUISLIP
PLATFORM 2
EASTBOUND
NEWBURY PARK
BARKINGSIDE
FAIRLOP
HAINAULT

overhead making for St Pancras. On through the cosy suburbs of Mill Hill and Finchley, into the centre platforms at East Finchley. When the train reached the splendid new station at Highgate I alighted. The platform was very icy and I slipped . . . The next thing I knew I was in Whittington Hospital, and my wife was at my bedside. "I told you that you would come to grief one day, climbing over the wall into that old station" she said. So I had dreamed it . . . or had I? When I boarded the train at Elstree South, someone had left a ticket on the seat, and I thought I would keep it for my collection. I still have that old ticket which reads Crouch End to any one station on the LT system at a fare of 6d, and dated 23 December 1942. It all goes to show that there are certain things which happen for which no rational explanation can be given.'

One can hardly blame the planners for their refusal to contemplate further continuous development. The Underground companies had quite unashamedly capitalised on the drawing power of their services and the consequent suburbanisation of London. Indeed, the Group were proud of their achievements; the Underground's Operating Manager, writing in 1928, had this to say of the extension to Morden, completed two years earlier:

'The surrounding countryside is probably the most undulating and pleasant of any on the outskirts of London, and it is likely that the growth which has taken place at Golders Green, Hendon, and Edgware will be repeated here . . . The railway, which enables the dweller in this district to reach the City or West End within half an hour, will convert the countryside into a modern suburb and will provide one more incentive to the Londoner to forsake the congested areas for the healthier localities on the outer fringe.'

Expectations were fulfilled, and more. Suburbia was extended by the buses which brought in the passengers from further afield, and who were to be encouraged by the issue of combined bus and Underground tickets. The identical result was achieved elsewhere, whether at Barking, Ealing, Harrow, Putney or Wembley.

Yet it was all far from plain sailing for the railway companies, and Lord Ashfield's admission that the Underground had never been a profitable enterprise has already been noted. In the 1930s, Frank Pick as Managing Director of the Underground acknowledged gloomily that his problem had no solution: to make the Underground pay he had to stimulate suburban traffic which, when poured into the centre, overloaded the buses and congested the roads.

Part of the problem lay in the nature of passenger transport itself, where the costs and benefits which resulted were distributed on a much wider canvas than the company and its customers. The issues raised by the suburbanisation of Morden et al could not be dismissed as a merely private matter between two parties to a commercial transaction, especially in an age which believed in the efficacy of the planned approach.

From the earliest days, entrepreneurs realised that whilst transport facilities might be profitably provided to meet a demand which was already there, the provision of such facilities in themselves could stimulate traffic and increase the values of the surrounding properties. The problem has always been that while the railway interests would benefit from the generated traffic revenues, this was not enough to finance extensions and regeneration of the systems. The gains represented by rises in property values went into the hands of private individual property owners.

Perhaps the most interesting attempt from the past to overcome this problem was the building of Metro-Land. This well known development reached its peak in the inter-war period, during which 4,000 homes were built in Middlesex and Buckinghamshire on the back of the Metropolitan Railway Co, with the concurrent expansion of the railway facilities. That this was possible was in large measure due to the Metropolitan's ability to exploit its excessive land holdings in the area to the benefit of the railway's finances. This was achieved through the associated Metropolitan Railway Country Estates Ltd. British railway companies were generally discouraged or forbidden from ownership of land which they did not require for carrying on their main business.

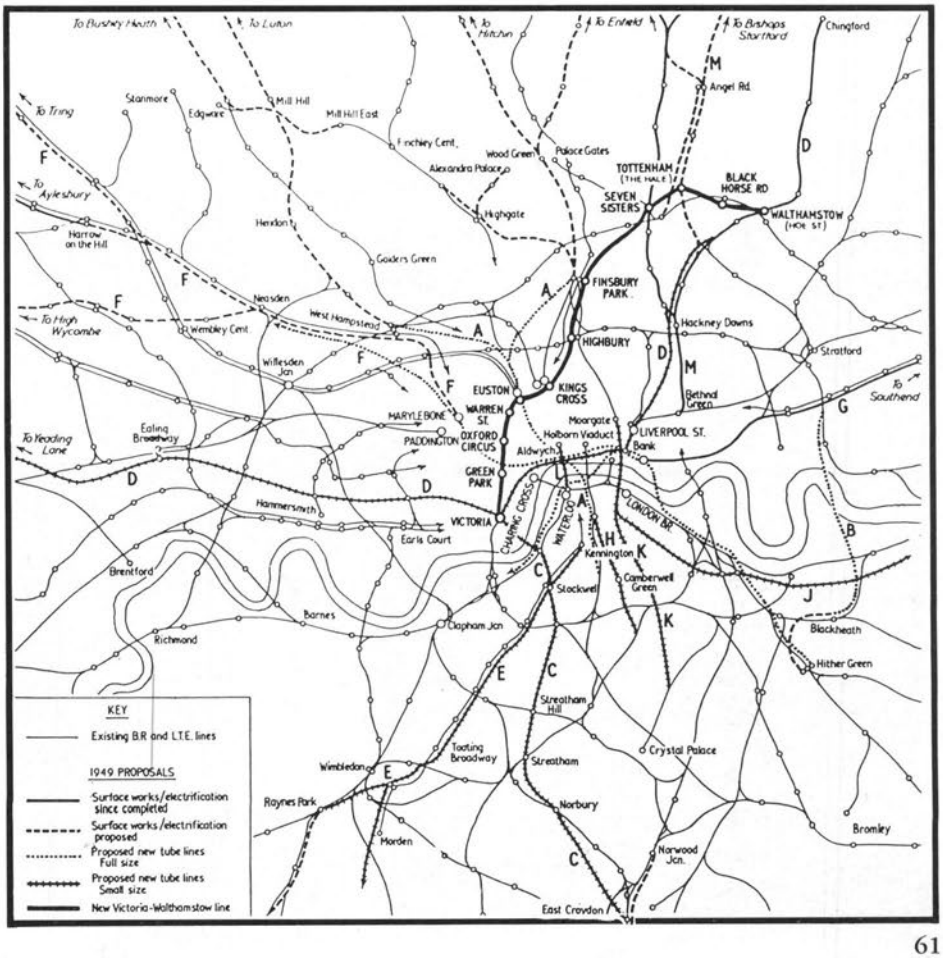
One might compare the extensions of the Underground under the New Works Programme 1935/40, which became possible only because of the availability of cheap Government loan capital.

Cheap finance, or grants, tended to set the scene; if it was investment in urban railways which was wanted, funding of capital costs would have to be mainly a matter for either central or local Government. But what *was* wanted in the postwar era?

The County of London Plan had spawned various subsidiary work. Even after the more exotic ideas of the Railway (London Plan) Committee of 1944 had been watered down, the British Transport Commission's 1949 Working Party proposals were vast in conception. They proposed a quite remarkable network of new routes lettered from A through to M, crossing London in tunnel. Everything would be electrified.

The Report distinguished between urban tube railways with intensive services and frequent but short stops, and outer suburban railways running in 17ft diameter tunnels taking main line rolling stock but with lower service frequencies and fewer stops. The suggestion was that the needs were not the same, and that the types of rolling stock provided should have different design characteristics in terms of seating capacity and standing room.

The proposed works may be summarised as follows. It should be noted that the Working Party accepted the need to demolish



Above left:
Moscow comes to East London: the concourse between the platforms at Gant's Hill was modelled on the Moscow Metro stations. ***John Glover***

Left:
The modernised but abandoned station at Highgate High Level on the Northern Line extensions was situated between two tunnels. The present tube station is directly below, and steps connect with its ticket office. ***John Glover***

Right:
Railway Expansion Plans: the 1949 BTC Working Party Report.

Blackfriars Bridge, but not Charing Cross or Cannon Street bridges, on planning grounds. (Environment was not a word in general use then!) The new Routes A and B were to have been respectively passenger and freight lines linking main line services north and south of the river, then using Blackfriars Bridge. Route C was to be a new tube from the Tottenham/Edmonton area via Finsbury Park, King's Cross, Euston, Oxford Circus, Green Park, Victoria, Vauxhall, Stockwell, Brixton, Streatham to East Croydon. Branch lines on the alignment of the Cambridge Road and from Seven Sisters to Walthamstow were 'possibly desirable'.

Route D was the Chingford/Enfield electrification, then via new tube from Hackney Downs to Liverpool Street, Bank, Ludgate Circus, Aldwych and Trafalgar Square to Victoria. A westward extension of this line had lower priority. A low priority Route E would have duplicated the Northern Line south of Kennington with extensions onto the Southern. Route F was the electrification of Marylebone services; again tube projection southwards was of lesser importance. Yet again, Route G, the electrification of Fenchurch Street services, could have eventually resulted in a new westerly tube emerging at Raynes Park.

Route H, the extension of Bakerloo Line to Camberwell, was authorised but later abandoned; Routes J and K were low priority alternatives taking the Finsbury Park-Moorgate trains into south London. Route L would have taken the Holborn-Aldwych line onto Waterloo, again without priority. The remaining Route M was the electrification of the Liverpool Street-Cambridge main line.

Completion of New Works Programme and certain Southern Region improvements were also marked out for early attention.

The priority tasks identified required 49¼ miles of new tube construction, a total which would have been doubled with the lower priority works added in. With masterly understatement, the Report anticipated that the work would take 20 to 30 years to implement.

Of all the new items in the list, the one which clearly had the most claim to an early start was Route C. The comments of the 1949 Working Party are of some interest:

'This route covers one of the most important in-town sections for local traffic between Victoria and King's Cross. It is considered that the alignment should be via Green Park and Oxford Circus stations rather than via Hyde Park Corner and Bond Street, since this route is likely to carry a heavier traffic, especially outside the peak hours. Satisfactory cross-platform interchange at Oxford Circus with the Bakerloo Line can be provided, but only if the new route is worked with standard size tube stock, since available space at Oxford Circus is restricted. Besides offering an important new in-town connection, the route will provide additional distribution facilities over the central area from the terminal stations at King's Cross, Euston and Victoria.

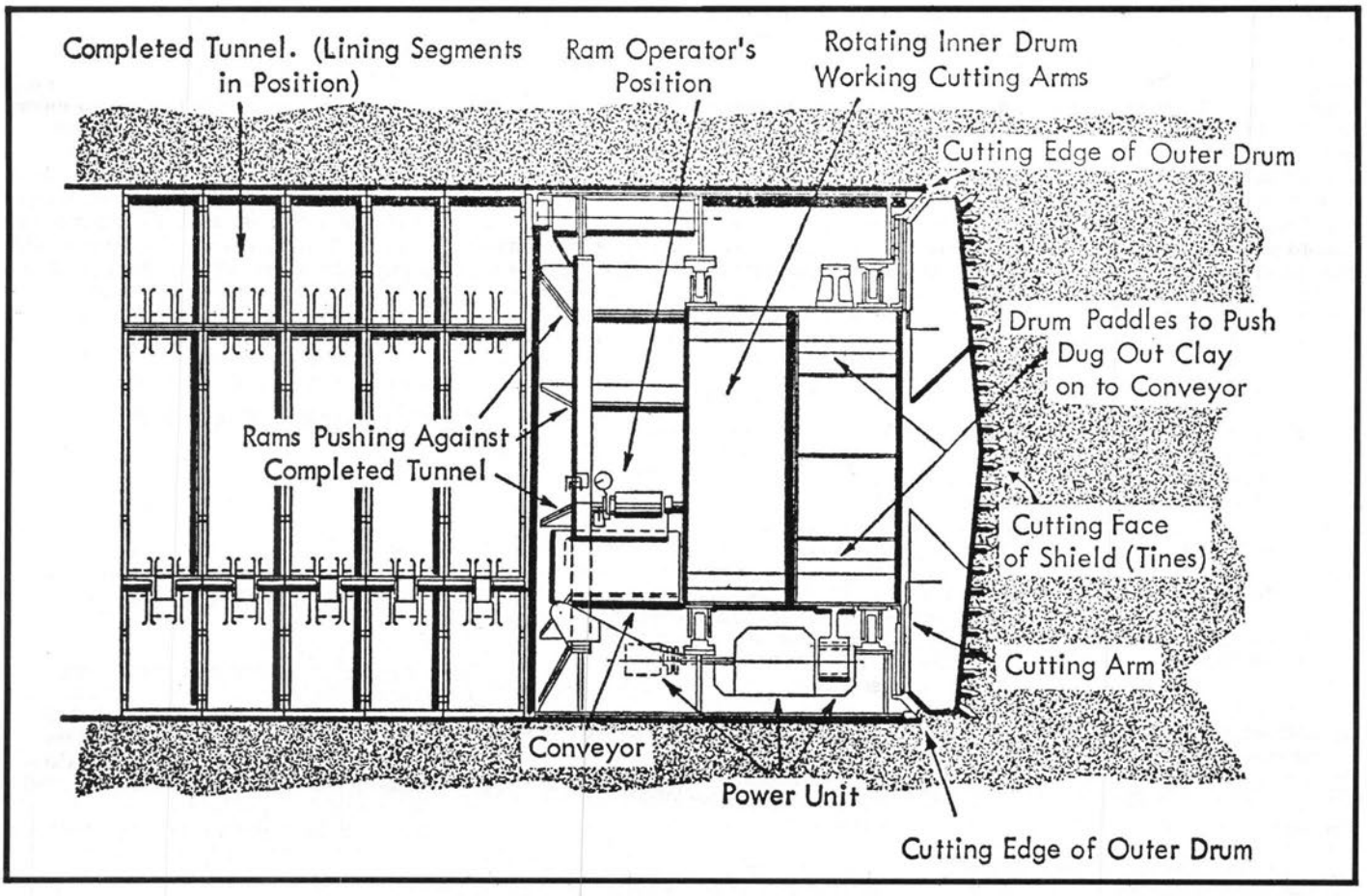
'At its northern end, the route can best be used to give the much needed direct facilities between the Tottenham/Edmonton area and the West End, and will give relief to the overcrowded section of the Piccadilly Line north of King's Cross. It is suggested that the northern terminal must be such that convenient interchange can be provided with the (former Great Eastern) Cambridge main line, which will be electrified. There might possibly be branches on the alignment of the Cambridge Road and from Seven Sisters to Walthamstow. At its southern end, the route proposed via the Brixton Road to Croydon is accepted . . . No difficulty is anticipated in finding a depot site at the northern end.'

There, in all essence was the Victoria Line as constructed 20 years later. Why did it take so long?

The major problem turned out to be in persuading Government that it was indeed in their best interest to fund its construction. The attitude in the postwar era to public transport tended to the hostile; capital was scarce to the point of near invisibility for public transport projects. If a commercial rate of return was being sought, then there were other more attractive investments to make. In vain was it argued that it was London (rather than London Transport) which stood to gain. Various learned bodies looked at the project, among them the Chambers Committee of 1955. This was the year in which statutory powers of construc-

Right:
Tube tunnel construction for the Victoria Line: a drum digger shield, 1960.

Below:
The driver of an arriving Northern Line train of 1938 stock at Mill Hill East vacates his cab. Beyond is an ex-LNER Class N2 0-6-2T, used on the residual freight workings to Edgware until their withdrawal in 1964. Electrification of the line beyond this point was suspended after electric trains reached Mill Hill East in 1941 to serve the Inglis Barracks. *Ian Allan Library*


Completed Tunnel. (Lining Segments in Position)
Ram Operator's Position
Rotating Inner Drum Working Cutting Arms
Cutting Edge of Outer Drum
Drum Paddles to Push Dug Out Clay on to Conveyor
Rams Pushing Against Completed Tunnel
Cutting Face of Shield (Tines)
Cutting Arm
Conveyor
Power Unit
Cutting Edge of Outer Drum

tion were obtained. By then the argument was bound up with the peak problem generally. Chambers noted the dilemma posed by the imbalance of peak and off-peak traffic:

'We have every sympathy with the view of London Transport that only as a last resort should they be required to incur very heavy expenditure if it is needed only to provide additional comfort during short periods of peak traffic. The alternative of staggering of working hours would be altogether more acceptable . . .'

So off everybody went in what ultimately turned out to be a wild goose chase, since staggering of hours had little public appeal.

London Transport thus had a hard time in this period. In his autobiography, Sir John Elliot as the then Chairman of London Transport recalled how he broke down 'a wall of no'. First, the plan was put up for approval in principle but without a firm date for construction, and having received it work was slowly carried out at points along the line of route as part of the annual renewals programme! In this way, aerial surveys were completed, 70 exploratory boreholes were sunk, and a mile of experimental tunnelling north of Finsbury Park was excavated and lined by new methods in 1960 'to gain practical experience'. Elliot's other gift to Route C was the bestowing of the name Victoria Line.

In the soft clay soil of the experimental section from Finsbury Park to Tottenham, rotating drum diggers were employed. One was of 14ft external diameter for concrete lined tunnels, and the other 13ft 1in for tunnels lined with cast iron segments. Essentially, the diggers consisted of two drums, one within another. The outer 14ft drum had a bevelled cutting edge and was driven into the tunnel face as with the Greathead shield. The inner drum of 7ft 6in diameter was rotated on roller races by hydraulic motors. It had cutting teeth mounted on arms on its outer edge, and cut the area in front of the space between inner and outer drums. The area in front of the inner drum was cut by teeth mounted on an arm across the drum's diameter.

The ram operator was provided with siting guides to enable him to adjust the pressure on the rams to correct any tendency to deviate right or left or up or down from the prescribed direction or gradient. The clay excavated was guided by scoops or paddles to a belt conveyor and subsequently the clay was discharged into skips on rails for eventual hoisting up the working shafts.

When the outer shield reached the end of its thrust, a new ring of tunnel lining was added, the rams pushed against the newly installed ring, and the whole cycle recommenced. The process for the cast iron lined tunnels was similar, and with both types of lining a far greater speed of excavation was obtained. Some of this was due to the use of cast iron segments with flexible joints, the new method allowing for each completed ring of segments to be expanded by jacks against the clay outside, and finally wedged firmly in place when the pressure on the jacks was released. The concrete linings were cast with convex and concave edges to form knuckle joints, and the rings were finally expanded by wedges, the last being ram-driven home at pressure. The methods of lining, which owed their origin to a water tunnel built for the Central Electricity Generating Board, obviated the need for cement grouting, and were adopted for the construction of the Victoria Line proper.

Drum diggers cannot be used where rocky or otherwise obstructive soil formations are encountered, where the only means of winning a passage is the non-rotating shield, mechanical shovel, or even manual excavation. Larger shields have to be constructed for boring the station tunnels, while pedestrian tunnels within station complexes are excavated with hand tools and pneumatic spades. These tunnels are of short length, and shields to excavate them would be uneconomical, as a chamber larger than the shield must necessarily be built in which to erect it. Escalator tunnels are also excavated by hand, as it would be very difficult to control a shield on such a slope as that on which an escalator is built.

The long drawn out struggle to achieve authorisation of the Victoria Line throughout the 1950s, eventually turned to the newly developed science of social cost-benefit analysis. Through this it was demonstrated rather than asserted that most of the benefits fell elsewhere, and that road users rather than rail passengers would be the principal beneficiaries. The sum looked something like this:

TABLE 2: Benefits from the Victoria Line

Groups of Beneficiaries		*% of benefit derived*
Traffic diverted to the Victoria Line		34%
Traffic not diverted: Road users	35%	52%
Others	17%	
Generated traffic		14%
		100%

Therefore, the argument went, the gains to the wider community were a sufficient and an acceptable justification for building the line, even though it would be a commercial disaster for London Transport should they have to fulfil a commercial rate of return on their investment. Hence, the go-ahead that was finally forthcoming in 1962 accepted the likely financial consequences for the Government.

Although the Victoria Line saga must have sapped the energies of the Executive, as London Transport had become under the BTC, there were other schemes of great importance being undertaken. The District Line services were indirect beneficiaries of the BR Modernisation Plan, which presaged electrification of the London, Tilbury & Southend lines. Hitherto, Underground trains had been part of the general maelstrom of services, each vying for priority. Of the flat junctions for three routes east of Barking station used by 700 trains daily, it was admitted candidly that they caused many delays. So, in the expansive manner of the times, a complex series of flyovers and diveunders was constructed to provide physical separation of conflicting movements. The plan entailed the complete segregation of services at all points; thus the crossover from the Tilbury Line to the District at Campbell Road Junction, Bow, and the North London Junction at Bromley were also removed.

Down the line at Upminster a new Underground depot was constructed with all mod cons. District Line facilities had never been entirely satisfactory, and the new 34 train capacity depot replaced the inadequate installation at East Ham. Two of the reception roads were given washing machines so that all trains could be washed as they came out of service. All nine roads in the car examination shed were given pits. Overhead conductors, carrying small trolleys with jumper cables to provide power to trains, ran the full length of the pits, as no conductor rails can be installed in such areas. The conductors on the jumper cables are inserted into receptacle boxes on the cars when power is required; this is standard

London Transport practice. There was also a small lifting shop.

At that time, it was usual for shunters to hand-operate points and hand signal the trains from the ground. A new method adopted at Upminster provided for all points to be power operated and controlled from the tower. One shunter in the tower would give instructions to drivers via loudspeakers by the trackside, the position of the trains being determined by reference to a track circuit diagram.

Drivers were given the right to reply with a 'talk back' facility. After giving an instruction to a driver, the loudspeaker automatically switched functions to become a microphone so that the driver could lean out of his cab and respond. All speaker/microphones could be controlled individually by the shunter on duty, but in case of total confusion a panic button was installed to display a red light and, hopefully, to stop everything.

The erection of the West London Air Terminal gave London Transport the excuse they needed to sort out the confusion abounding in the Earl's Court-High Street Kensington-South Kensington triangle. The layout, which stemmed from the separate ownership and operation of the previous century, had the fundamental disadvantage of a conflict between eastbound District Line and westbound Circle Line trains at the flat junction east of South Kensington station where four tracks merged into two. By removing the crossing to a new site west of Gloucester Road and reversing the running direction of the two inner tracks, it became possible to hold an westbound Circle Line train without it delaying District Line services behind it. Furthermore, eastbound passengers who had a choice of two platforms at which to wait would only have one, the most northerly. At that time, non-stopping of trains was still in vogue, and these used the inner of the two eastbound tracks. The revised layout was brought into use in 1957.

It did not, however, last. The abandonment of non-stopping meant that there was little purpose served by maintaining two eastbound tracks, while the westbound junction could be moved further west with no adverse effects. In 1969, eight platform faces were reduced to five, and South Kensington became one ultra-wide island platform. A new connection west of Gloucester Road allowed all westbound trains to use the former Circle Line platform during less busy periods.

In 1959, a practically new station was brought into use at Notting Hill Gate. Previously there were two stations, one each side of the busy highway. These served the Central and the District/Circle Lines respectively, and some 2,000,000 passengers changed between them each year. A sub-surface ticket hall provided access to the two lines, with interchange available by subways at a low level. The eastbound Central Line platform here is 100ft below surface, the westbound partly above it and to one side, while the Circle Line platforms are some distance away but only 27ft below ground level. The work was therefore somewhat complex! The old shafts for lifts and stairs were used subsequently for ventilation purposes.

The District Line suffered from some platforms being of sub-standard length, and the end cars could be reached only by narrow catwalks. Work at Blackfriars involved lengthening the platforms by 74ft; the task included the demolition of the existing running tunnel and the construction of a wider covered way for the platforms. It also involved the bridging of the Fleet River, reduced many years previously from the status of a navigable tidal waterway to an underground sewer, but still carrying a considerable volume of water, and the section by section replacement of the roadway above.

The soil along the Thames Embankment is very largely made up ground and mud. When the line was built, as much as 24ft of ruins dating back 2,000 years or so had to be cut through, and the original foundations carried down to 13ft below rail level. The general construction then was of brick walls and an arch with a concrete invert, made wider at the stations with girders to support buildings. The rebuilding method used was to excavate trenches outside the existing tunnel walls from street level, and sink piles through the trenches to support concrete bases for the new structure. These bases in turn formed the support for new pre-cast concrete columns, the spaces between which were filled with wall slabs and concrete. Opening the roadway then allowed a pair of cranes to lower the nine new roof beams onto the columns; the placing of each beam was an entire night's work. A concrete slab subsequently formed the base of the new roadway.

Over the Fleet sewer the vertical columns were carried on two reinforced concrete beams. A further complication was the pres-

Above left:
The sad remains of the Northern Line extensions included this part completed viaduct alongside Watford Way and upon which was to be sited the station of Brockley Hill. Preserved thus for many years, today only the foundations remain. *Ian Allan Library*

Below left:
The first train to Uxbridge was hauled by E Class 0-4-4T No 1 (later L44). The locomotive is seen here in 1954 with a special train to mark 50 years from the opening of the branch from Harrow-on-the-Hill.
E. R. Wethersett/IAL

Below:
The Piccadilly Line's short branch to Aldwych has never required the use of a full length train. A pair of Standard stock cars with their cheerful crew forms the shuttle at Aldwych in the 1950s. *Ian Allan Library*

ence of both a pedestrian and a pipe subway in the area.

With the new walls and roof completed, the old tunnel inside was demolished except for the lower sections of the brick walls, which were then used to form the base of the platform extensions. The work was completed in 1962; similar platform extensions were also undertaken at Westminster.

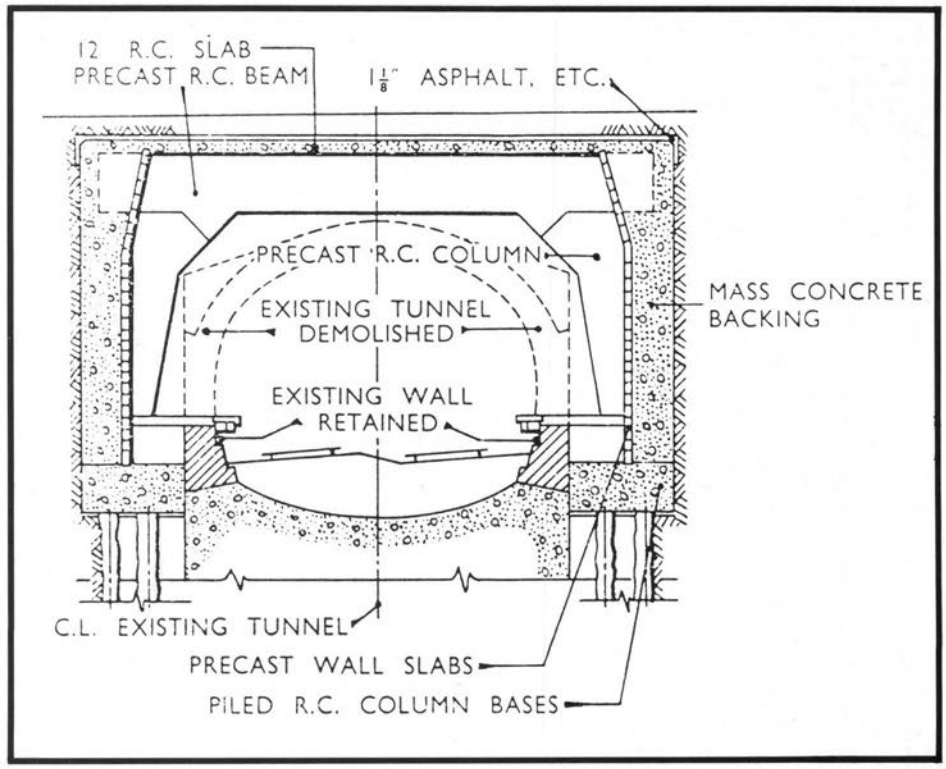
The last of the 1935/40 projects was the Metropolitan Line's main line rebuilding. Whereas the prewar scheme had envisaged the conversion of 'steam' stock to multiple-unit use, the galloping dilapidation coupled with the growing demand which was apparent by the mid-1950s secured authorisation using new stock in 1956. Work was thus started on the four tracking and electrification of the Metropolitan Line north of Harrow. The scheme was allowed to proceed, as it extended way beyond the Green Belt to areas where development was to be encouraged.

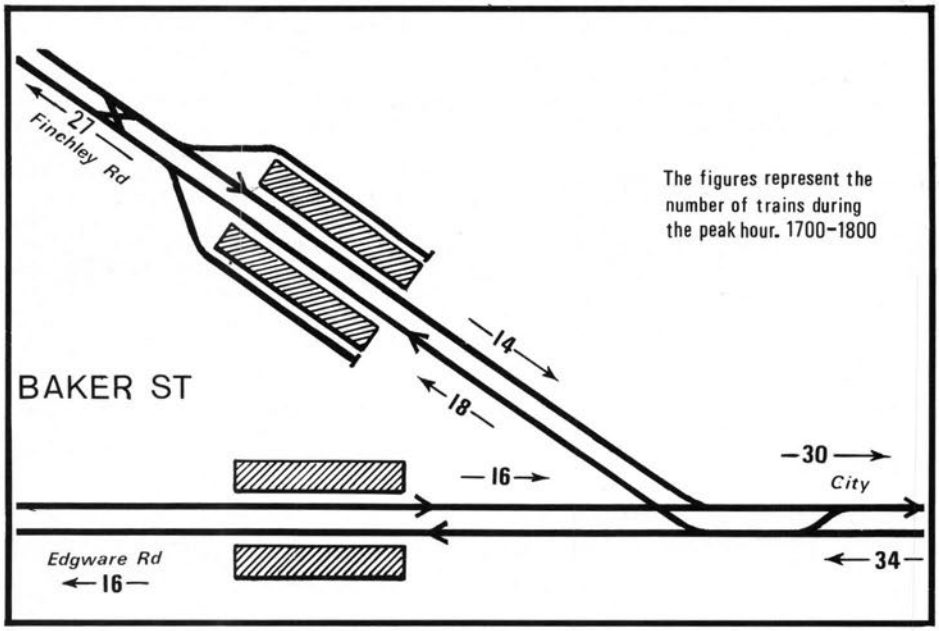
The postwar Metropolitan system was badly in need of relief. By 1955, peak problems were acute; on the main line services from the City through Baker Street and Finchley Road, 18 train sets and three electric locomotives only were required in the

Above:
The shunter's console in the control tower at the new Upminster depot shows the track diagram with geographically mounted thumb switches for point operation. The buttons are for the individual switching-in of the talk-back loudspeakers; the tower microphone is on the left. ***London Transport Museum***

Left:
Conversion of some Standard stock control trailers in 1955 allowed the creation of more passenger accommodation in the former cab areas, and this photograph shows the secluded seating area for four which resulted. These were known to the staff as 'lover's seats'. ***London Transport Museum***

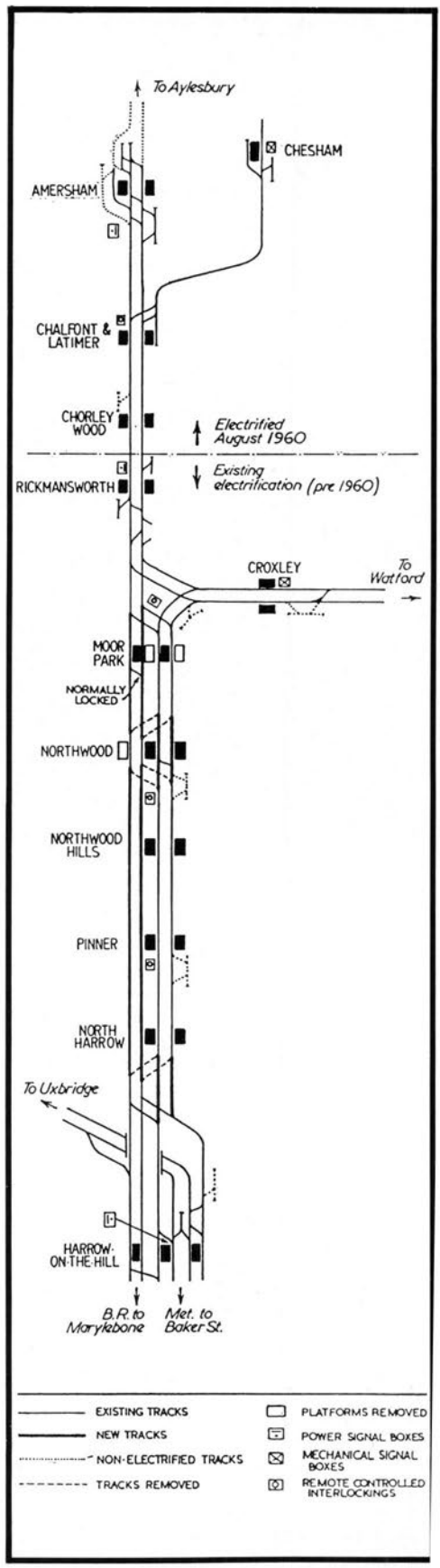
Right:
Platform rebuilding work at Blackfriars, 1962.





Left:
Peak services on the Metropolitan at Baker Street, 1955

Below:
The Amersham electrification: track plan 1962.



off-peak, but this rose to 50 train sets and nine locomotives at peak. Peak operation provided many difficult problems; between 1700 and 1800, 27 trains carrying 15,000 passengers needed to be despatched from Baker Street. During this hour, 34 trains approached Baker Street from the Aldgate direction. Of these, 18 were for the main line, and had to cross the paths of 16 eastbound trains from Edgware Road at the flat junction. In addition, 14 trains left the main line platforms for the City, making 30 eastbound in total. Parallel working over the junction was thus used whenever possible. The remaining nine trains on the main line northwards originated at Baker Street, for Harrow, Watford or Uxbridge.

Station allowances were varied according to train and station. On the Circle the time was generally 20 seconds, but at Baker Street this was increased to anything between 30 seconds and two minutes to suit the crowded conditions east of the junction. Further complications arose at the City termini, with the Moorgate and Liverpool Street terminating workings all having to cross the westbound tracks. At the latter station, terminus of the locomotive hauled trains from Aylesbury and Chesham, a spare locomotive was needed to haul the trains out again.

The original modernisation proposals had envisaged the four tracks extending through to the far side of Rickmansworth, but reappraisal cut this back to the junction for the Watford branch, a little to the north of Moor Park station. Similarly, it was decided that platforms need not be provided at intermediate stations on what became the new fast lines. The existing locomotive hauled stock and the venerable multiple units would all be replaced with a brand new design which was to provide for all service requirements on the Metropolitan main line. Physical site work started in 1958, and the changeover to total multiple unit working was on 11 September 1961. The widening scheme was not completed until mid-1962.

The traditional pattern of working was of six-car trains of 'steam' stock hauled by one of the Metropolitan Railway's Metrovick Bo-Bos to Rickmansworth, where locomotives would be changed. A British Railways ex-LMS Class 4 2-6-4T then took over for the run on to Aylesbury. At Chalfont & Latimer, the branch connection to Chesham in the bay platform would be formed of an Ivatt 2-6-2T, propelling one of the ancient three car push-pull sets created out of the 'Ashbury' stock built in Manchester between 1898 and 1900. Other services to Watford and Rickmansworth were formed of the T stock multiple units. All of these trains were traditional compartment stock, and the transition to saloons with air operated doors and loss of seating capacity raised howls of protest in Metro-Land. In reality, saloon vehicles were inevitable, as the Railway Inspectorate was not prepared to sanction new stock without emergency exits through the ends of the cars; the constraint was the single line tunnels between Baker Street and Finchley Road. Nor were slam doors to be permitted. Experimental rebuilding on two T stock trailer underframes took place in 1946/47, in what turned out to be very preliminary work!

The familiar A stock is described elsewhere. It was not welcomed universally as indeed few compromises are, but especially in view of some of the products bought by British Railways in this period, the Metropolitan commuter did rather well. As London Transport said brightly, the A stock 'affords comfort for long distance passengers as all seating is transverse, but the wide vestibules with air-operated doors in which shorter distance passengers can stand in reasonable comfort give the best of both worlds in which this stock has to run'. In all fairness, the A stock was very well conceived.

The track widening scheme placed the fast tracks alongside the slow lines, rather than one each side as had been adopted earlier south of Harrow. At North Harrow, Pinner and Northwood Hills the additional tracks were built clear of the existing platforms, but at Northwood land was not available on the west side of the existing station so that total reconstruction here, and at Moor Park which became a four platformed station, was needed. Amersham gained an extra platform, since it was now to become the terminus of all London Transport operations. On the Chesham branch, a bay was let into the (lengthened) terminus platform and a siding was also electrified. The signalbox at Chesham was retained and although certain signals, particularly the down home and up starting signals were replaced by

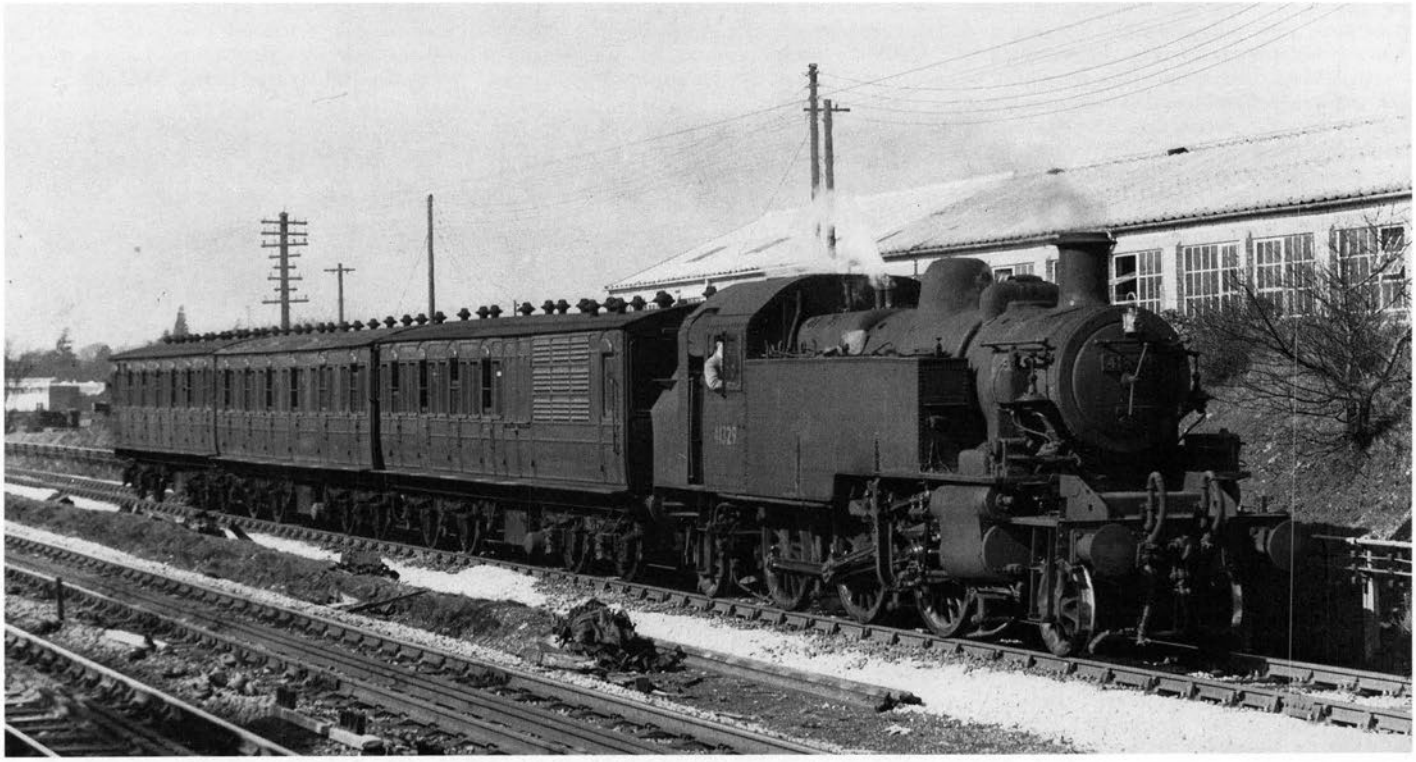
Below:
Before electrification in 1960, services on the Chesham branch were provided by the 'Ashbury' push-pull coaches and steam power from British Railways. Ivatt Class 2MT 2-6-2T approaches the Chesham bay at Chalfont & Latimer.
J. P. Mullett

Bottom:
Stalwarts of the Metropolitan main line: on the left Metrovick locomotive No 1 *John Lyon*; on the right a T stock compartment train. The scene is Neasden on 4 November 1961.
L. Sandler

colour lights, most of the semaphores and mechanical points remained in use.

There were numerous bridge rebuildings. Resignalling was carried out as part of the project, and this provided for standard BR four aspect signalling on the fast lines (where speeds of up to 70 mile/h were permitted) and through to Amersham, due to the dual use with BR trains to and from Marylebone. Standard LT two aspects sufficed elsewhere, although the occasional provision of repeater signals on the same post gave the appearance of four aspects. Following completion of the electrification, London Transport surrendered all interests beyond Amersham or, to be precise, north of a point close to milepost 25¼ and designated with a boundary marker.

The end of 1962 saw the demise of the London Transport Executive, and its replacement with the London Transport Board, which was a fully fledged nationalised industry in its own right and responsible direct to the Minister. The separation from British Railways was all but complete; there were now no revenue pooling arrangements between the two. The Act paid lip service to the need to continue co-ordination with British Railways, but the reality was that each would henceforth go its own way.



Chapter 6

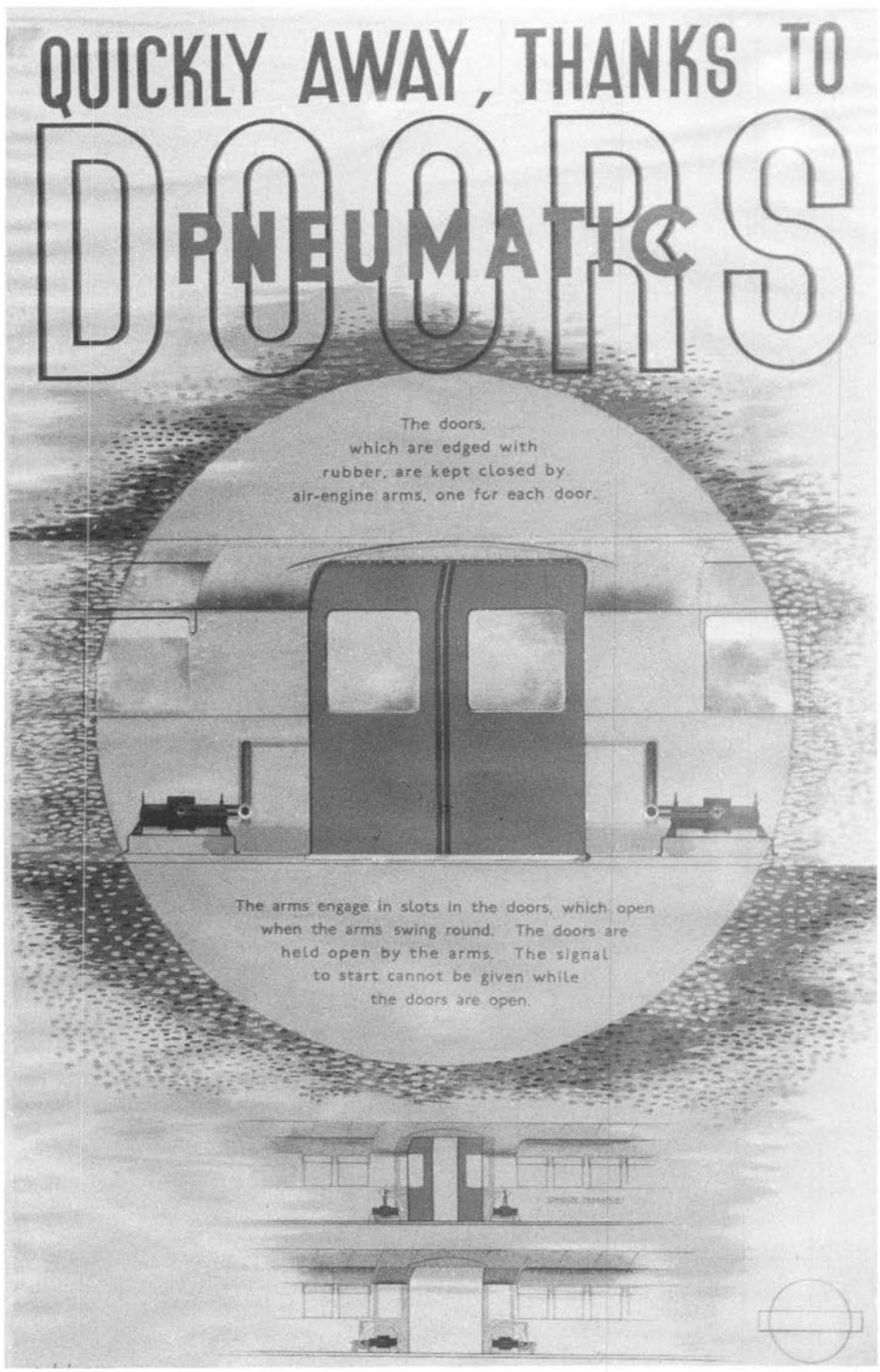
Development of the Underground Train

The electric motor as applied to trains for traction purposes has traditionally been of direct current series type, and commonly mounted on the axle. Stopping has been effected by the friction of the brake shoes on the wheel treads, operated by a compressed air supply. Collector shoes which rub on the conductor rails picked up the traction current, which was then fed to the motors and controlled on the multiple unit principle. All the systems had to be sufficiently developed for the whole to work, but once the nut of multiple unit control had been cracked, the electric train was able to come into its own. Thereafter, the locomotive had no place in purely urban transit systems. Sprague's invention had enabled two or more motor cars in a train to be controlled from a small master controller with only a small current passing through it and along the train. Each power car picked up its own current from the live rail, and fire and insulation hazards were avoided. The tube railways used electro-magnetic contactor (switch) control energised by control wires utilising the 600V dc supply on the British Thomson-Houston system; the Metropolitan used the electro-pneumatic form developed by Westinghouse, with low voltage electro-magnetic valves controlling air pressure to cylinders, and the pistons working the main switches.

In operation, the driver is not faced with a mass of relays, cut-outs or resistances. Just as the driver of a steam locomotive had an ultimate control in the regulator, so the driver of an electric train is concerned only with a single master controller. When he operates the handle or 'winds it up', the following sequence in a traditional installation takes place.

The contactors connect the motors to the current supply, at first in series through starting resistances, where surplus electrical energy which the motors are unable to assimilate is dissipated as heat. As the train gathers speed, an accelerating relay cuts out the starting resistance in a number of steps by the automatic closing of contactors. When all the resistance has been cut, each motor is working on only half the voltage of the power supply, but is sufficiently accelerated to start absorbing the full line voltage. The next phase is therefore the regrouping of the motor circuits in parallel, with the starting resistances again in operation. They are cut out in steps as before, until finally the motors are in full parallel; that is, they are receiving the full voltage, being connected directly across the power supply. In the improved type of Pneumatic Camshaft Motor (PCM) control, introduced in 1936, the more sensitive pneumatic accelerator, basically a small air-oil engine operating contacts, replaced the old individual contactors. The stages are as before, but at the intermediate stage a valve operating on the engine forces air against the oil, which in turn moves a piston and camshaft and cuts out resistances. The third, parallel, stage is reached with resistance automatically restored, but at this point the engine operates in reverse and allows the motors full voltage by cutting out resistances. It should be appreciated that these movements, although appearing lengthy and involved, take place in the few seconds in which the train is getting under way.

When the driver cuts the power and the train coasts, a 'no-volt' relay in the circuit comes into operation. Its purpose is to prevent the full voltage being suddenly fed to


QUICKLY AWAY, THANKS TO
PNEUMATIC
DOORS
The doors, which are edged with rubber, are kept closed by air-engine arms, one for each door.
The arms engage in slots in the doors, which open when the arms swing round. The doors are held open by the arms. The signal to start cannot be given while the doors are open.

Right:
The introduction of pneumatic doors speeded up the process of loading and unloading the trains, and also enabled the tube stock gatemen to be retired.
Author's Collection

Above:
Some vehicles from the Standard stock fleet were sold to British Rail for Isle of Wight service in 1967, and survived until 1990. No 485.045 arrives at Ryde St John's Road in Network SouthEast livery bound for Shanklin in 1988. ***John Glover***

the motors after power is restored, by ensuring that the equipment is returned to its original starting condition and with the complete sequence of operations to follow. The driver may move his controller freely through several accelerating positions or notches, but the accelerating relay ensures that the proper sequence is traversed. Should he lift his hand off the controller handle, the main supply to the controller is broken, current is cut off, and the brakes are applied. This is the safety device introduced in 1906/07 and fitted to all rolling stock to guard against a driver's personal mishap, be it illness or collapse. The colloquial name for this part of the master controller is the 'dead man's handle'.

Braking of trains followed the Westinghouse developments, whereby movement of the operating handle to induce a fall in pressure in the system would result in the brakes being applied. Full exhaustion as a result of the release of the dead man's handle, the operation of the passenger emergency alarms or the activation of the tripcock all resulted in a full emergency brake application. The problem with the Westinghouse brake was the time delay inherent in it and the sequential operation along the length of the train as the brake pipe pressure fell. The electro-pneumatic (EP) brake installed from 1930 used electrically operated valves to apply the brake in each car simultaneously; the valves allowed compressed air from the main air pipe to enter and leave the brake cylinders. This was henceforth used for service operation, but the Westinghouse brake was retained for safety purposes. The 'Standard' or 'pre-1938' tube stock was all fitted with the EP brake, but only later builds had it supplied as from new.

The use of gatemen to control entry and exit from the trains was very labour intensive, and this hastened the search for some method of door provision and operation which could be controlled remotely. This was found in the sliding door which, when open, was recessed into a pocket in the body side. Operation was either by hand (as for many years on the surface lines) or by compressed air engine, one to each door leaf, controlled through electro-pneumatic valves. Opening and closing was overseen by the guard, and a mechanical interlock detected whether the door was properly closed. Later interlocks consisted of a glass bottle, part filled with mercury, and containing a pair of electrical contacts. Every sliding door on a train operates one of these devices, tilting the glass bottle when all the doors are closed, so that the mercury bridges the contacts and the door closed circuit is complete, and which then lights the guard's pilot light. The interlocks are extremely reliable, which is just as well seeing that there are more than three million interlock operations every day on the Underground. Only when the doors were all proved shut could the starting signal be given to the driver by means of a bell.

Various additional safety devices have been tried. The original air operated doors had a pressure sensitive edge, which if obstructed caused the door to reopen. This negated the secondary objective, which was to reduce station stop times. The 'sensitive' aspect was quickly abandoned, although a determined foot can still hold a door open indefinitely. To release an item of clothing or a case, one door of a pair when shut can be forced back about four inches. A further innovation was passenger door control, which conserved heat in the open air sections that were rapidly increasing as the Underground spread out to the suburbs. Initially, this was not sufficiently reliable, and was dropped until recent years. Indicators which alerted staff to the location of door problems proved difficult to achieve, a problem later solved by the placing of fault detection lights on the roof of each car.

The robustness of some of the early cars was well illustrated by the two cars from the original fleet of 1906 delivered to the Great Northern, Piccadilly and Brompton Railway. This pair of cars was in use for no less than 50 years, finishing their passenger carrying careers on the not-too-demanding Holborn-Aldwych shuttle. Converted to air door operation in the 1920s, they were further modified in 1930 to work as single units. They were allowed a five year break during World War 2 when the branch was closed, to be resuscitated afterwards and fitted with electro-pneumatic brakes. They left the Aldwych branch in 1948 to be used as pilot cars, their last duty being with a flat wagon as a stores train between Acton Works and Northfields depot. Final withdrawal was in 1956.

This though was exceptional, and when the initial batches of electric multiple unit stock needed replacement or supplementation, it was possible to incorporate a number of improvements. The all steel clerestory roofed 'pre-1938' stock for the tube lines was built in several batches from 1922 to 1934 to a grand total of 1,466 cars, and was the work of half a dozen different builders. Batches built up to 1930 were replacements for the original stock on the Yerkes tubes; the rest for the Piccadilly extensions. Despite the name 'Standard', it was not all operationally compatible for some years. Three basic types were produced, consisting of (driving) motors (M), trailers (T), and control trailers (CT). Trailer cars lacked traction motors and compressors, but seated 48 passengers or so, unlike the driving motors which lost one third of their seating potential in the equipment compartment behind the cab. However, it did make life much easier for the fitter, who could carry out an inspection from both inside and outside, the latter by raising louvred panels in the coachwork. The frames of these motor cars were upswept at the driving end to give clearance for the motor bogie with its 3ft diameter wheels (all the rest were 2ft 8in in diameter). The control trailers were provided with cabs and driving gear but were underused, and several were converted to ordinary trailers.

The final orders for the Piccadilly incorporated several improvements. Faster trains

The London Road depot of the Bakerloo is nowadays a stabling point, with all maintenance work undertaken at Stonebridge Park. A 1938 stock train threads its way into the depot in 1983; most of the remaining buildings have since been demolished. On the left can just be seen a sleet locomotive. *John Glover*

A
213
BAKERLOO LINE

Above:
One of the three 1956 prototypes, this version was built by the Birmingham Railway Carriage & Wagon Co. The train is arriving at Morden, recently brightened up by the addition of some flower beds. The other trains are 1959 stock awaiting departure. ***John Glover***

were needed, and weak field control was used. This allowed higher speeds of 50mph or so on the long open stretches of line, albeit at the expense of additional current consumption. Seven-car trains with three motor cars replaced six car trains with two. Weight was kept to a minimum by the use of aluminium alloy wherever possible, and by building the steel superstructure of light pressings. External surfaces of the coachwork were rounded off to permit a smoother passage through the car washing apparatus. Inside rearrangement resulted in the guard's control panels in motor cars being built into the end walls, and the addition of power operated single leaf doors at each end.

Formations of seven cars became general, made up M-T-T-M and used thus off-peak, with an additional CT-T-M added at peak. Pairs of four-car sets were used on the Central Line to which these trains gravitated later, but their last outpost on the Northern City Line saw a slack hour formation of M-CT, supplemented with CT-T-T-M at peak. The best known variation was the nine car experiment on the Northern Line from February 1938. As a response to complaints of severe overcrowding on the Edgware branch, some platform lengthening was carried out and in the peaks trains were made up M-T-M+T-T-T+M-T-M. The guard rode in the seventh vehicle. Elaborate arrangements were made, with the two rear cars on southbound journeys stopping in tunnel and hence not available for entry or exit between Golders Green and Tottenham Court Road. At the latter station the first two cars stopped in tunnel. The guard had to isolate the door mechanisms as necessary. Perhaps surprisingly, the scheme worked well, but it was discontinued at the outbreak of war and was not revived. However, the new fleet of 1938 stock was ordered in the expectation that it would continue, which led to major reshuffling of the fleet later.

The pre-1938 stock survived in London Transport revenue earning service until 1966, but a number of cars saw further use with British Rail on the Isle of Wight until 1989; a lone motor car graces the Science Museum at South Kensington.

The 1935 experimental stock, some of which was delivered with streamlined front ends, was a precursor to the huge 1938 stock fleet. Including the conversions of the 1935 prototypes, and the similar 1949 additions, the fleet totalled eventually 1,230 cars. As in the experimental sets, all control and traction equipment was removed from its traditional home to new positions beneath the floor, thus providing extra passenger space. These were also the first production tube trains to use low voltage electrical supplies for lighting and other equipment instead of the earlier system of direct supply from the current rails. Motor cars now seated 42 passengers, and additional doors were provided. Introduced for the first time was the non-driving motor car (NDM). The seven-car formations were made up in two semi-permanent sets of M-NDM-T-M+M-T-M.

The presence of five motored cars out of seven was a recognition that multiple-unit working could also give superior performance characteristics if motors could be distributed intermediately along the length of the train to increase speed and acceleration. Such stock also had the same power/weight ratio irrespective of train length, which could thus be varied to suit the traffic offering without altering the performance.

Braking performance was improved. To prevent rates of braking which might produce wheel lock and skidding (and hence wear 'flats' on the wheels), a retardation controller was added. Two tubular rings of glass containing mercury were so mounted that when a certain braking rate had been reached the mercury flowed up one of the tubes and indirectly cut off further supplies of air to the brake cylinder. Should the braking approach a severity sufficient to lock the wheels, the forward surge of the train caused a similar displacement of mercury in the second tube, which released air from the brake cylinder and eased the brakes. The result was that a train could be brought smoothly to a standstill. This was a relatively crude but effective means of compensating for the different weights of empty and heavily loaded trains.

Compared with the pre-1938 stock, the body design had all external corners rounded off, and it was given a semi-streamlined appearance. 168hp nose-suspended motors were fitted to each bogie of the motor cars, giving a creditable 1,680hp over the whole train. Automatic coupling between sets made possible the instantaneous connection of the mechanical, electrical and pneumatic equipment. A new car type appeared after the war, the Uncoupling Non-Driving Motor (UNDM). This took the place of the normal motor car at the 'coupling up' end of a three-car set and was fitted with simplified driving equipment in a cabinet behind the panelling at the car end. For shunting purposes, the end window in the communicating door was adequate for the use of the driver. 70 UNDMs were built new in 1951, with a further 22 conversions following the scrapping of the nine-car train experiment. Given the large size of the fleet, variations were remarkably few. They included a car with glass extended into the upper portion of the doors and which allowed better vision for standing passengers. At one time the 1938 stock formed all trains on the Northern and Bakerloo Lines (supplemented with 58 1927 stock trailers in the case of the latter), and provided a few trains for the Piccadilly. With its life prolonged by traffic growth, the final trains ran in Underground service in 1988. Probably

Above:
A station which owes its appearance almost entirely to its former Great Eastern Railway parentage is Chigwell, seen here with the Woodford–Hainault shuttle. The train is composed of a pair of the 1960 Cravens driving motors, with an intermediate 1938 stock car repainted to match. The Automatic Train Operation equipment had been taken out of use by the time that this 1990 picture was taken, and the front end of car No 3909 carries a liberal dose of graffiti. ***John Glover***

the most comfortable of trains that have ever run on the Underground, a number are now in service on the Isle of Wight having displaced their pre-1938 cousins.

The 1938 stock was all built by Metropolitan-Cammell or Birmingham RCW, but with the tube stock which followed BR Derby took the place of Birmingham. Following construction of prototypes in 1956, the aluminium bodied car with rubber suspension and fluorescent lighting became standard. Underframes remained in steel, as aluminium versions would need to be designed too large to fit the restricted space if they were to have adequate strength. A prominent feature was the illuminated roller destination blind, high up on the front of the train so that passengers could see it above the heads of others as the train entered the station. Mass produced as seven car trains for (initially) the Piccadilly (1959 stock) and as eight car trains for the Central (1962 stock), these cars otherwise followed closely the 1938 design. It had been intended to equip the Central Line with new stock based on the 1960 Cravens design, but in the event only 12 motor cars were constructed. Some were used for the 1964 Automatic Train Operation (ATO) installation on the Woodford-Hainault line, converted again to conventional One Person Operation in 1986. These units were notable for a new type of Wedglock coupler. Unlike previous stock where an 'A' end motor could only be coupled to a 'D' end motor, these cars could be coupled either way. However, this was achieved at the expense of duplicating all the electrical connections.

The ATO equipment of the Victoria Line trains of 1967 stock is described later. The driver closes the doors, presses the twin start buttons and the train does the rest. The aluminium alloy car bodies have a distinctive wrap-round windscreen without corner pillars. The cars' primary springing is rubber, but the secondary suspension incorporates hydraulic units. Tractive power is provided by 80hp motors driving on all four axles of the driving motor cars. Rheostatic braking is incorporated; this uses the traction motors as generators, dissipating the energy in rheostats and thus exerting a retarding force. Braking combines two systems acting in three stages – rheostatic braking on motored wheels only, rheostatic braking on motored wheels and air braking on trailer wheels, and both rheostatic and air braking on motored wheels and air braking on trailer wheels, all operating in conjunction with mercury retardation control.

Fitted headlights illuminate the tunnel to give the operator some idea of the train's movement in the absence of colour light signals of which there are few. They were the first trains to be equipped with public address.

Also built by Metro-Cammell were the very similar 1972 Mk I and Mk II designs sent originally to the Northern Line, and designed for crew operation. The Mk II stock has red painted doors, a first attempt to brighten up the appearance of ageing and pitted aluminium then becoming apparent on the oldest cars. Cars of both types have been exhibited in the Lord Mayor's Show in 1981 and 1984, though only on the second occasion did the Mk I driving motor manage to get round the course! Other Mk I stock has been the subject of trials of 'steerable' bogies and of frame-mounted motors on rigid frame bogies.

The 87½ new trains of 1973 tube stock delivered for the Piccadilly Line made provision for extra floor space to accommodate passengers and their luggage travelling to Heathrow; this was achieved by setting back the screens at the doors to offer enlarged vestibules. Car length was also increased, with the six-car train at 350ft being about 17ft less than the seven-car 1959 stock trains replaced and which were a little too long for the underground platforms. This had the benefit of paving the way for One Person Operation, and saved the weight and expense of a seventh set of running gear. Fortunately the curves on the Piccadilly are not such as to make train to platform gaps unacceptable with longer cars. A selective close facility for the doors was provided, to enable most of the doors in each car to remain closed at terminals to keep the train warm in winter.

Technically, the Westinghouse air brake was finally omitted, and replaced by the Westcode electro pneumatic brake. The guard's controls were repositioned from the rear saloon to the rear cab. Fault finding was to be made easier by the installation of a Train Equipment Panel, but this was apparently more trouble than it was worth. Only 21 three car units with driving motor cars at each end were provided; the rest had UNDMs at one end. Since the completion of the Heathrow loop, trains are turned in service, and care has to be taken that 'A' ends are always coupled to 'D' ends.

Experiments were also carried out with thyristor control on the Experimental Tube Train (ETT) of 1973 stock. It is also known as 'chopper' control because its action in regulating current employs a chopper movement. Very basically, the thyristor can be likened to an electronic one-way valve providing an instantaneous current limiter. In this case the control smooths acceleration and reduces electrical losses through that function. Also, the kinetic energy of a train during braking is converted back into electric current, available for use by other trains during their acceleration. However, this

Above:
A Stanmore-bound train of 1983 stock arrives at Canons Park. The neat buildings date from the station's opening in 1932 as part of the Metropolitan Railway. ***John Glover***

only works when such trains are in the same electrical section as the train regenerating the current, since electricity cannot be stored.

The 1983 tube stock was ordered at a time when Underground fortunes were at a low ebb, to the extent that only 15 six car trains were to be purchased. Subsequent revival led to a decision to re-equip the whole of the Jubilee Line with these units, and builders Metro-Cammell built another 16½ trains to enter service in 1987-88.

In many ways, the 1983 stock is a diminutive version of the 'D' stock on the District Line, with passenger door control, single leaf doors (now acknowledged to have been a mistake) and cab arrangements to a similar specification. Interiors are finished in bright colours, contrasting with what are now seen as the dull greys and blues in the units of 20 years ago. This fleet of trains was the last to be ordered before the many technical advances of the 1986 prototype stock were put into production. Consideration of these experimental units and the new stock for the Central Line is deferred to Chapter 12; it is now time to examine the surface stock story from the early electric days.

In about 1923, the Metropolitan Railway converted some of their steam stock into motor coaches, and regrouped the trailers into multiple unit trains. The conversion was carried out by Metropolitan Vickers, and the motor cars were equipped with 200hp motors. Subsequently, two of the trains were fitted with larger experimental motors of 275hp, and the successful results led to the introduction of the new T stock.

The first batch appeared in 1927, and the 12 motor cars each had two 275hp motors in each of the two bogies. These cars were coupled to existing trailers and control trailers to form trains for service on the Watford line. The control equipment was situated in a separate compartment behind the cab and not placed underfloor. A second batch of 30 motor cars, 15 trailers and 10 control trailers was delivered in 1930, and a final delivery was made in 1933 of 18 motor cars, 33 trailers and 14 control trailers. They differed from earlier stock by virtue of their steel panelled bodies and roller bearing axleboxes. Latterly, the T stock also worked to Amersham, made up into six-car and eight-car trains, with two motor cars in each case.

A special three car formation was used for operating the Chesham branch shuttle after electrification but before delivery of the A stock.

A remarkable series of 100 all-steel cars was built for the District by the Metropolitan Carriage & Wagon Co in 1920/21. Known as the F stock but nicknamed 'Tanks', these high performance trains had three pairs of hand operated double doors on each bodyside, and were adept at clearing huge crowds. In appearance, the 'Tanks' differed from previous and subsequent offerings, for they were fitted with elliptical roofs capped with six large ventilators and two oval shaped windows placed at each end of all cars. At 9ft 7in, the bodies were 11in wider than previous trains, as a result of which there was an inward slope of the body above the waistline. Incompatibility with other stock kept the F class apart during its 40 years of service; in the 1950s the class found a new home on the Metropolitan services out to Uxbridge which were able to exploit their power. During their life, the 'Tanks' became a testbed for electro-pneumatic braking systems, and were fitted with air doors. Final withdrawal took place in 1963.

Apart from the F trains, the characteristic American appearance of District Line stock was perpetuated, particularly the clerestory and the straight sided bodies with large windows. Latterly running under the generic name of Q stock, this class was built as separate sub-groups lettered G, K, L, M and N between 1923 and 1935. 172 motor cars, each with two 240hp motors, and 77 trailers were built in all, although 36 motor cars were subsequently demoted to trailer status. The cars were built with sliding doors, originally hand operated on the earlier types, but all fitted for compressed air operation by 1939.

The G cars had a boxy look; this was replaced by a softer appearance with the longer K class cars which had the ends of the clerestory rounded off. A destination indicator was also built in. The L cars offered two class travel in the trailers, the First Class being separated by a glazed screen and a door from the Third; a further division within the First was the separation between smoking and non-smoking accommodation. The M class of 14 motors and 14 trailers were run initially as four six-car sets on the Hammersmith & City; they were the first surface trains to be delivered with air doors, and incorporated passenger door control for the first time on the Underground. They were kept in sets initially due to their incompatibility with other stock, which included their electro-pneumatic brakes. The N cars were all but identical, but came from another manufacturer.

Two G class cars, one to work and one as a spare, were converted to single cars to operate the Acton Town to South Acton shuttle from 1939 until the line closed in 1959. This was the first application of one person operation on the Underground, albeit in very specialist circumstances. Extra precautions were taken in that traction control could only be obtained after the driver had shut himself in the cab, and telephone wires were installed along the trackside as in tunnel sections so that the driver could cut off the current without leaving the train. Alterations to the control circuits limited the speeds which could be attained on the short run. The rest of the Q stock was withdrawn by the end of the 1960s, its final appearance being on the East London Line.

The 1935 re-equipment programme enabled the replacement of elderly surface as well as tube stock. Three classes of basically similar specification were purchased: O stock cars for the Hammersmith & City, P stock for the Metropolitan, and Q38 stock for the District. 573 cars were ordered from the Gloucester and Birmingham companies, of which 287 were motor cars. However, the trailers were built with conversion to motor cars in mind should the installation of extra power be considered worthwhile later.

The new stock again broke new ground. The elliptical roofs, flush fitting windows and flared body panels, the latter to prevent passengers leaping on the non existent footboards and attempting to open the air operated doors on departing trains, gave the cars an extremely sleek appearance. Fittings varied according to the line on which the stock

Left:
Hand worked door stock remained on the Circle Line until 1952. Variations on this stock were built by the Metropolitan Railway in 1913 and 1921. They ran in four car sets, later expanded to five cars as seen here at Moorgate. ***J. H. Aston***

Below:
A train of F stock leaves Aldgate for Uxbridge on 30 May 1962 with the 1714 departure. To the left is the curve to Aldgate East and Whitechapel. Land values in the area are such that the junction has now been covered over and built upon. ***L. Sandler***

Bottom:
A 1927 built K class trailer was photographed at the head of a Q stock train at Wimbledon in the 1950s. These trains were converted to Passenger Door Open, and the yellow surrounds to the black rubber buttons may be seen. ***Lens of Sutton***

was to be used, and were dictated mainly by compatibility considerations with existing stock.

All motor cars were equipped with two motors rated at 152hp each, one to each bogie. Car bodies were 51ft 1¼in long, and seated 40 passengers. The trailers followed the motor cars, but the O and P types were reclassified OP as being interchangeable. Trailers had a driving cab door fitted but locked out of use. Most of the conversion to motor cars that took place was in connection with the subsequent R stock, but three conversions of P trailers were undertaken as a result of war damage. Another intriguing reconstruction was of P stock motor car No 14233, which was spliced with Q38 stock

trailer No 03167 after both had suffered war damage, to be returned to service after rebuilding in 1941. This car has survived to be preserved.

Unit formations were M-T-M and M-M, and five, six- or eight-car trains were run.

Dealing first with the motor cars, the O and P stocks were fitted with Wedglock automatic couplers, incorporating mechanical, electrical and pneumatic supplies in one single connection; in cars of the O stock the guard's control panel was in the driver's cab, whereas in the P stock it was in the passenger saloon. Both types were fitted with Metadyne control machines, which used a rotary transformer. The Metadyne system offered smoother acceleration and regenerative braking – the feeding back of the energy dissipated in braking to the power supply system for other trains to use. It was not an unqualified success, and after one train had been fitted with spare PCM type equipments of the 1938 tube stock type in 1955, the whole fleet was converted. The cars were reclassified CO and CP, the trailers COP.

It would be tedious to relate the problems which resulted from a nearly-but-not-quite compatibility, the 'handing' of cars, and changing ideas on the length of trains and to which lines they might best be allocated. The CO/CP stock had a long life, the last examples being withdrawn in 1981.

The Q38 stock was built for use with the rest of the Q fleet on the District, and the 25 motor cars had resistance and contactor control similar to the existing District cars. Likewise, they were fitted with Ward couplers. However, the rest of the Q fleet needed replacement at the end of the war, and the new R stock was born. Similar in general appearance to the Q38 stock, the new cars were all powered with a single 110hp nose-suspended traction motor in each of their two bogies. There were thus no trailers.

Although there were four sub-classes within the R stock fleet, all cars had features in common. Fluorescent lighting was fitted throughout, the 110V ac supply coming from a motor generator fitted one to each pair of cars. A detector light was fitted to pinpoint door problems, while a roller blind indicator was displayed above the driver's cab window.

The R38 cars were all driving cars converted from 125 of the 183 Q38 trailers, as had been anticipated when they were built. The motors for the converted cars were installed in the original bogies, after modification at Acton Works; the car bodies were sent to Gloucester where the body conversion, which included the fitting of a driver's cab, was carried out. The bogies were refitted at Ealing Common depot. The first batch of 82 cars were converted in 1949/51 to run with the R47 stock; this was followed by a further conversion of 43 cars to run with the R49 stock. 79 were eastward facing cars with Wedglock couplers at the outer end and semi-permanent bar couplers at the inner end. The other 46 cars were westbound driving cars, not normally required to couple at their driving ends and thus only fitted at this end with a Ward coupler for emergency use.

The R47 cars comprised a batch of 143 non-driving motor cars of steel construction built by Birmingham (89 cars) and Gloucester (54 cars), delivered from 1949.

The 90 R49 vehicles were built by Metro-Cammell in 1952/3 and were lightweight aluminium cars, the first to be built in quantity in Britain. The weight saved was in the order of 5.9 tons per car, and comparative tests carried out between Acton Town and South Ealing confirmed that the increased capital cost was sufficiently offset by reduced current consumption, particularly during acceleration. Included in this batch were six driving cars, so that some all-aluminium formations could be made up. Fearful of public opposition, London Transport left only one car, and then one only of the lightweight trains unpainted, apart from a thin red band at waist level and with a speed whisker on the cab. However, financial considerations eventually won the day.

A further 20 cars were placed in service in 1959. These consisted of seven more Q38 trailer conversions and 13 new non-driving aluminium motors from Metro-Cammell. These last were styled R59 cars. The steel cars were painted silver to match the new cars, and gradually all R stock was turned out in silver, though without the red band.

One of the R59 cars, No 23584, was sent to an exhibition of aluminium stock in Strasbourg in 1960. This was the first time that an Underground car had travelled abroad on business, although many had been built on the Continent.

The R stock survived until 1983.

All the stock remaining to be considered is still in service, and has been made suitable for one person operation. The A stock was delivered in two batches from 1961, to provide a complete replacement for what was by then decidedly elderly rolling stock of multiple unit, electric and steam locomotive hauled types. This programme was carried out in conjunction with the electrification to Amersham and the cessation of London Transport interests beyond that point. Built by Cravens of Sheffield, the A60 order was for 248 cars in four car units, followed by an order for 216 identical A62 cars for the Uxbridge services. Two driving motor cars sandwiched two trailers, and the performance was specified to match that of

Below:
Flared sides distinguished the 'silver' District Line R stock; the outwardly similar CO/CP stock remained in red livery. The leading vehicle is a steel bodied R38 vehicle, repainted to match its later aluminium bodied post war sisters. The train is arriving at the BR station of Gunnersbury. ***John Glover***

the previous stock. This meant that the traction motors were controlled to either a high or low acceleration rate but with a low balancing speed and suitable for in-town station spacing of 0.5 mile or so, or a lower rate with a different motor field strength to take full advantage of the longer outer sections beyond Baker Street with 60 mile/h running.

The A stock was built to the maximum width possible of 9ft 8in (thus barring it from most of the Circle Line), and this made 3+2 seating each side of a central gangway possible. The width allowed for each seat was 17½in. The standard eight-car formation seated 464 plus 916 standing (total 1,380); eight cars of T stock seated 600 at five-a-side in 60 compartments. An extra five in each compartment was judged to be the limit, but highly uncomfortable for everybody. To overcome the loss of heat as the doors opened up in the Chilterns on a frosty morning, the saloons were provided with extra powerful heaters.

Bearing in mind the Rickmansworth curve which would turn trains round, automatic couplers were fitted providing full reversibility.

Conversion to one person operation was completed in 1986. This work comprised the relocation of the guard's panels in the driving cabs, the fitting of public address, train radio, new windscreen wipers and toughened glass in cabs, and twin headlights. As there is no call for four car trains other than on the Chesham shuttle and the East London Line, only 24 units have had both cabs converted. This has left the inner cabs on most of the eight car trains unusable, resulting in some loss of flexibility.

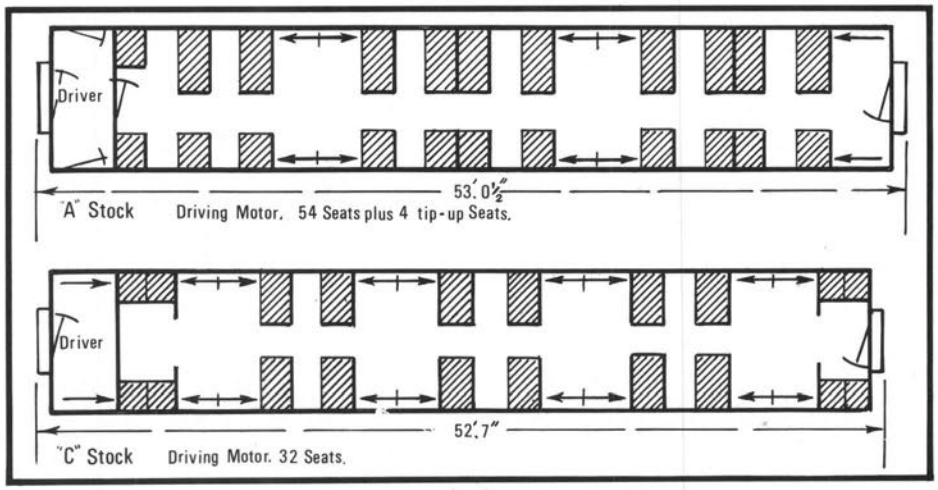
The C stock was again built in two batches. The C69 series of 35⅓ trains of six cars each was for the Hammersmith & City and Circle; ordered in 1968 from Metro-Cammell, it was delivered 1970/1. The second batch, designated C77 and consisting of 11 trains for the Edgware Road-Wimbledon service, appeared in 1977.

Designed for quick loading and unloading, these cars featured no less than four pairs of double doors along each side of a car body no more than 49ft long. This has meant that, as built, there are only 32 transverse seats, arranged 2+2 in each car. Unusually, all passenger accommodation is identical; the cab in the driving motor cars merely adds an extra 3ft 7in to their length. Bogie centres were adjusted to minimise overhang on curves for both car designs.

Evaluation of the options suggested that maximum flexibility would be achieved by constructing two car units (M+T) with one cab, three of which would form a service train. This gave the opportunity (never exploited) to run eight-car formations also, but in any case Hammersmith depot lifting shop could only hold two cars on a road. Automatic couplers are fitted at all unit outer ends. Among their new features was rheostatic braking as on the contemporary 1967 stock tube cars, a secondary suspension system of rubber-air springing units, and thermostat-controlled blower-heater fans mounted in the roof. A selective door close facility enables all but one pair of doors in each car to be kept closed at terminals in cold weather. These trains pioneered manual one person operation on the Underground in 1984/5.

Service experience has been very satisfactory, though the trains offer a low degree of passenger comfort for journeys of any length.

Only three main unit types now provide the whole of the surface stock requirements



Left:
Seating arrangements compared: The A and C stocks.

Below:
A D stock train leaves Richmond for Tower Hill. Nowadays, only a siding connection via Platform 3 allows trains to proceed to and from the Southern lines to the left of the picture. ***John Glover***

for the District and Metropolitan Lines. The 75 six car all aluminium D stock trains made their debut in 1980. As with the Piccadilly 1973 trains, six longer cars replaced seven shorter ones, greatly simplifying formation problems. 65 eastward facing and 65 westward facing three-car single cab units were built (DM-T-UNDM), together with 20 double cab units with automatic couplers at both ends (DM-T-DM).

Four doors on each car side were again provided, but this time of single leaf only and thus 3ft 6in wide as opposed to the 4ft 6in or so with double doors. Door opening is by passenger controls, released from the cab. Any door which fails to close properly can be reopened individually, and all doors can be remotely opened from the cab if necessary. Innovations included coil spring suspension supported by rubber cushions, and motor and wheelset interchangeability with the 1973 tube stock. Traction brake controls were also new, comprising a right hand 'fore and aft' vertical lever incorporating the dead man device, instead of the previous left hand rotary operated controller.

Seating is mainly longitudinal. In the ceilings are concealed fans. These were boosted by additional fans after experience, and this measure coupled with the installation of opening quarterlights cured the trouble of excessive heat in summer. Modifications have also included the fitting of additional grab handles. These small matters apart, Metro-Cammell's D stock has proved to be most successful.

The allocation of cars to lines is not constant. The East London Line has had more changes than most over the last 30 years; being self contained only a relatively small fleet of trains is needed, and the conditions are not such that any particular type of train is required for traffic reasons. Hence, the F stock which had enjoyed a 10-year reign gave way to Q stock in 1963, which lasted a year until it was displaced by by CP stock. In 1965 the Q stock was back again for six years, to be followed in 1971 by CO/CP stock. 1974 saw the surprise appearance of 1938 tube stock, which lasted until the summer of 1977, after which the A stock from the Metropolitan main line put in an appearance. D stock ran the service from 1985 until 1987, after which the A stock reappeared, this time in one person operation guise. These trains were subsequently sponsored by the London Docklands Development Corporation to be repainted with red front ends, blue doors and an LDDC logo. The painting of aluminium cars was also an attempt to rid the trains of the signs of graffiti damage, and a corporate painted livery is now being applied throughout the fleet.

TABLE 3: Allocations of car types to lines, 1990

Tube stock

1956	Northern
1959	Bakerloo, Northern
1960	Central Epping-Ongar
1962	Central, Northern
1967	Victoria
1972 Mk I	Northern, Victoria
1972 Mk II	Bakerloo
1973	Piccadilly
1983	Jubilee
1986	out of use
1990	Central (when delivered)

Surface stock

A	Metropolitan, East London
C	Circle, Hammersmith & City, District Edgware Road and Wimbledon
D	District (all other services)

Although not forming part of the system owned by London Underground, developments on the Waterloo & City Line of British Rail are recorded for the sake of completeness. When the original rolling stock became due for renewal in 1940, English Electric supplied 12 Motor Open Brake Thirds with 40 seats and 16 Trailer Open Thirds with 52 seats. These vehicles were only 47ft long and 8ft 7¾in wide. Maximum speed is 40 mile/h on the five minute journey between the two stations. Motor coaches were fitted with two 190hp totally enclosed traction motors and weighed 28 tons; the trailers weighed 19 tons. The normal formation is two motor cars sandwiching three trailers, but single car working was envisaged during off peak hours and the motor cars were accordingly provided with cabs at each end. Their drab appearance was markedly improved by the application of Network SouthEast livery.

Internally, the motor car floors were on two levels, to provide space below for the switchgear and larger diameter than normal motor bogie wheels. Seating was a mixture of uni-directional transverse in the centre and raised longitudinal at the ends of the cars. Current supplies were altered to the standard Southern Railway outside third, which enabled the cars to run unaided on Southern tracks to and from main depots or workshops, although day to day attention was carried out at the line's Waterloo depot. Car access from the surface was available only via the lift situated alongside the main line station, with access below gained from the up line (towards Bank) beyond the end of the platform. The dimensions of the lift precluded the use of any stock longer than that presently in use, though the tunnel dimensions at 12ft 1½in diameter are marginally greater than the standard tube tunnel. By a considerable margin these are now the oldest trains in the London area, and a version of the new trains for the Central Line has been ordered in replacement. As a result, the line is being converted to fourth rail electrification.

Although a propulsion system based on the use of bogie-mounted linear induction motors operating in conjunction with a reaction rail laid between the running rails was considered, this option was not pursued.

Below:

The BR Class 487 Waterloo and City Line stock was decked out in Network SouthEast livery at the expense of Allied Lyons; this train was photographed while stabled during the day at Bank. A supplementary build of LUL 1990 stock will form replacements for these trains built by English Electric for the Southern Railway in 1940. ***John Glover***

Chapter 7

The Underground Station

Above:
The 1869 station of Rotherhithe on the East London Line has scarcely changed since it was built, apart from the minimal addition of Underground insignia. ***John Glover***

For the passenger, the station ranks in importance along with the train in which he travels, since it is here that he gains access to and exits from the system, as well as changing trains. Possibly more so than any other railway in the world, the London Underground can demonstrate a range of styles of building and architectural treatment over its century and a quarter of history which is truly breathtaking in its diversity.

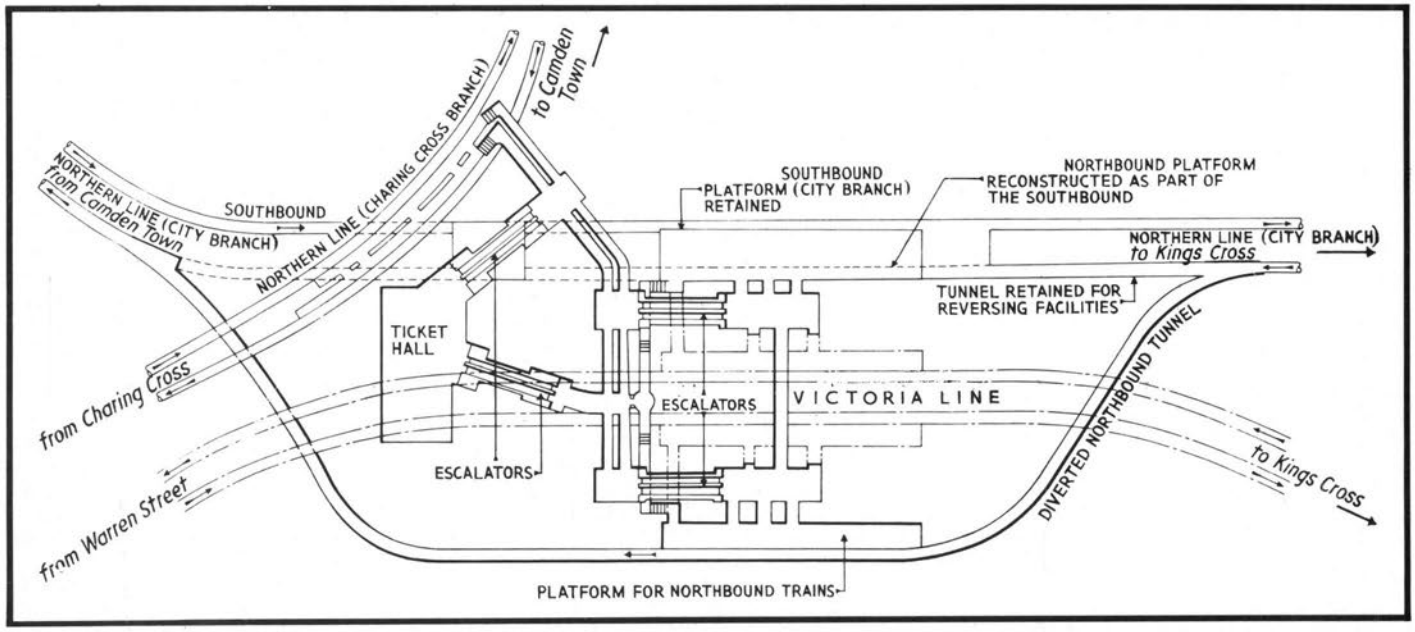
The first stations served by the Underground were those on the Metropolitan's initial system, of which none remain today in their original form. However, the chronology is not as straightforward as it might first appear. Many stations served today by the Underground were originally built by the main line railway companies with services that they themselves operated; among the more notable examples are the East London Line stations (first served by Underground trains in the 1880s), and those on the long extensions of what are now the Northern and Central Lines into the suburbs. Most of these stations are now in London Underground ownership, but there are exceptions. Upminster and New Cross are two of the 24 stations managed by British Rail out of a total of 272 served currently by the Underground; but perhaps the most curious case concerns the East Putney to Wimbledon section of the District Line which normally sees no British Rail trains in passenger service. The most reliable guide to ownership is the presence or otherwise of the familiar roundel design of station nameboards on the platforms.

Station design and construction and, frequently, subsequent modification has to accommodate the varying traffic needs of the individual locations. Whether the architecture is homely or functional, neo-Georgian or the Underground's own style evolved by Pick and his consultant architect Charles Holden, the station has a necessary operational function to perform. If it fails in this it fails completely. The simplest arrangement is a single platform, found in 10 locations: Aldwych, Chesham, Kensington (Olympia), Mill Hill East, New Cross, New Cross Gate, North Weald, Ongar, Shoreditch, and the 1986-built Heathrow Terminal 4. This last is placed on the newly created terminal loop of the Piccadilly Line, and is served by trains in the one (clockwise) direction only.

At the other end of the scale, the busiest stations are Victoria, King's Cross, Oxford Circus, Liverpool Street, Waterloo, and Piccadilly Circus, each of which sees up to 50 million passengers each year and makes them all busier than Heathrow Airport! These stations serve up to five lines, and with only four platforms in the case of Victoria. These are large premises; Oxford Circus has 14 escalators, 25 stairways, and 5½ miles of platforms and subways. As many as 10 platforms are in use at Baker Street, solely for Underground trains, but the total is inflated due to two platforms being used only for terminating the Metropolitan main line trains. Moorgate can also boast ten platforms, but here four are for the exclusive use of British Rail. Stations are big business, and they absorb a larger chunk of operating costs than either train operation or maintenance.

What are the operational elements in station design at a busy location? On the passenger side, conflicting flows of incoming, interchanging and outgoing passengers must be kept separated as far as possible, while it is desirable to maintain as many entrances and exits from the premises consistent with acceptable staffing levels. There must be space for people to buy tickets, and ticket queues in stations at main line termini where many have heavy luggage are noticeably slower moving than city stations where the majority have Travelcards. Barriers, passages, circulating areas and escalators must have roughly equivalent capacity if bottlenecks are not to form; the inability to clear an area into which an escalator disgorges is a particular danger. Similarly, there must be a means to shut off platforms if the train service is delayed and the platform becomes overcrowded. Closed circuit television controlled from an operations room can be useful for surveillance of what is happening, while public address is helpful. Station platforms on the Victoria Line were built straight or nearly so, to enable the driver to look back down the length of the train, and forwards from the back by the use of closed circuit television. Older stations have had to be adapted for one person operation, using mirrors and as many television monitors as necessary for the driver to be able to view the outside of the whole train properly.

Good clear directional information to passengers is most important, and coloured lights over the escalators (follow red for Paddington etc) have been a feature for many years. Underground platforms usually carry a comprehensive notice of stations served directly opposite where a passenger arrives on the platform, maps are everywhere, and illuminated signs referring to exits, as opposed to interchanges, are colour coded in yellow. Destination indicators which show the subsequent train or trains are of great value to passengers, especially on lines where there are a number of divergent routes. At Earl's Court Westbound District Line platforms for instance, trains may be bound for any one of four branches on the lines to Ealing Broadway, Richmond, Wimbledon or Kensington (Olympia), and it is imperative to know where the train is going. However, the only variation possible



for trains on the Eastbound Piccadilly Line at the same station is whether the train is going the whole length of the route, and the information is of much less value. Passengers do like to know how long they will have to wait, and the electronic dot-matrix indicators currently being installed show the next three trains and their estimated arrival times. These indicators consist of a matrix of light emitting diodes which are illuminated in any combination to show letters, figures or diagrams, so that a wide variety of information and messages can be displayed. Good information brings user confidence.

In a system as old as the Underground, there is rarely an opportunity to start from first principles. New lines have to be meshed in with the existing as best they can, and designed to facilitate arrangements for interchange between lines where this is expected to be heavy. Sometimes changing from one line to another is a minor marathon; one can walk a long way around Charing Cross (it was once two stations, Strand and Trafalgar Square), while Monument (District & Circle) and Bank (Central) are separated by the full length of the Northern Line platforms as well as stairs and escalators. Bank (Waterloo & City) platforms are then a Trav-o-lator ride away from the top of the Central Line escalators!

Many stations have been reconstructed or built anew on a different site. This work entails the most complicated of all Underground engineering when such things as subways, sewers, mains and even tunnels may have to be stopped up, diverted or otherwise accommodated. Engineers have not only these things to consider, but they must always make provision in their plans for the continuing daily traffic.

For the operators, time taken at station stops is non-productive time during which the train is cluttering up the system and not earning revenue; the shorter the stopping period the better. There is a caveat though, as ideally all station stops are of the same length. If trains consistently spend a longer than average time at only one station, this has the result of bunching up the service and ultimately restricting the frequency which can be operated. Speeds also depend on the number of station stops; it was to reduce overall journey times and make more productive use of trains and crews that the 'non-stopping' of trains was in vogue during the inter-war period.

A limiting factor in the early days was the method of telling the driver when it was safe to start. Before the ubiquitous door interlocks and bell signals were invented for use with the now universal sliding doors, a train starting device more elegant than a guard's whistle was introduced. A pair of bare wires insulated from each other was suspended from the roof at one end of each platform. By shorting these wires together with the metal handle of his flag, the guard caused a letter 'S' to appear in lights under the starting signal. A 'reminder' bell near the driver's cab was also set ringing. This arrangement was installed on the District and Metropolitan, and lasted on parts of the latter until the electrification of 1960 allowed the withdrawal of the slam door compartment stock.

The track layout at terminals is of especial significance, since trains spend longer than average at such locations. At an intermediate station, the provision of a central bay as at Tower Hill (with platform) or Hampstead (without) keeps the terminating train clear of the running lines, and it does not foul any other train movements when moving to or from that position. The disadvantage of the siding beyond the platform arrangement is that it takes time to detrain all passengers and close the doors before the train can proceed, by which time another train can be waiting behind.

At terminals, the usual choice in tunnel is an island with crossovers (Walthamstow Central), or on the surface a three track multiple platform arrangement (Uxbridge). Platforms both sides of a track can be useful in separating arriving and departing passengers. If it is necessary to speed up the turn round of trains, step-back crews can be employed. By having staff positioned ready to take the train out again after it has arrived, the minimum turnround is not affected by the time taken by the incoming crew to change ends. Terminal loops as at Kennington are not favoured; while there is no need to change ends, neither can layover be provided as the train cannot be sidetracked. The Heathrow loop is a little different, as there are two platforms available at Terminals 1, 2, 3. Loops also introduce the coupling problems of stock reversal which would otherwise be avoided on both the Northern and Piccadilly Lines.

Other determinants of the capacity of lines are the performance of trains, junction

Left:
Euston station, as rebuilt to incorporate Victoria Line and give cross-platform interchange to Northern City Line.

Below left:
Some stations of the original Yerkes style remain almost unchanged. This is the platform level at Holloway Road in 1989 with a westbound train of 1973 stock arriving; the extensive use of tiling will be noted. ***John Glover***

Below:
The new style for the eastbound Piccadilly Line platform at Finsbury Park uses hot air balloons as its theme. A 1973 stock train arrives. ***John Glover***

conflicts, signal spacing, and gradients and curves. On a railway, the capacity is determined by the most restrictive element; thus Bakerloo Line capacity was increased by removing the branch junction at Baker Street when the Jubilee Line was opened. The capacity was then constrained by the ability of the signalling system to cope with a frequency increase. Beyond that, it might be the speed restriction on the curve north of Charing Cross, which at less than five chains radius is one of the sharpest on the system.

A ticket represents the means by which an acknowledgment is given by the railway for a fare tendered, and confers on the passenger an authority to travel within the terms of the contract which has thus been made. It follows that the ticket and the means of obtaining it are all important parts of the organisation. Besides being a more-or-less foolproof way of collecting revenue, tickets provide a record of where a passenger entered the system. Without a ticket it is not possible to charge fares graduated by distance, which is a severe limitation. In London, the best known examples of flat fares were the L&SWR's Waterloo & City (which had only two stations anyway), and the Central London Railway which opened its doors in 1900 with the commercial policy which gave it the popular nickname of the 'Twopenny Tube'. However, most of the other tube lines also opened with a flat fare.

Until recent years, the issuing methods used were almost entirely traditional, save for a little relatively unsophisticated mechanisation (none the worse for that, one might add), and some ill fated experiments. Even the Underground Official Handbook of 1988 admitted that most of the previous attempts to improve the issue and control of tickets, coupled with an effort to reduce fraud and increase ticket office security, had been unsuccessful. Before examining current developments, though, it is useful to consider the history.

Thomas Edmondson invented his system of preprinted and numbered card tickets, dating press and storage rack in 1836, and this was universally adopted by British railway companies. When the Metropolitan Railway commenced operations in 1863 it saw no reason to differ, but the tube railways in this as in other matters had more allegiance to North American transit operations in their more individual approach. Besides flat fares collected at turnstiles, Bell Punch tickets were issued by conductors, and the use of roll tickets of various colours was commonplace. On the CLR, tickets bought at the office were surrendered on *entering* the system. Edmondson tickets were a rarity.

By 1907 however, competition from buses was beginning to bite, and this forced the Underground companies into ever more complex ticketing. Flat fares were too easily undercut; 2d (0.8p) was probably less than some were prepared to pay for the six miles from Shepherd's Bush to Bank, but it looked distinctly expensive for what the admen in a later generation called 'short hops'. And although the physical interchange between lines was far less satisfactory than it was later made, the lesson for the companies was clear: they had to make the system a lot more attractive to the user. This move was linked to the establishment of the London Passenger Traffic Conference, and the later coining of the word 'Underground' to market the companies. Graduated fares and through ticketing between the lines were introduced and, with them, Mr Edmondson's familiar product.

The City & South London Railway had tried to help its ticket collectors by matching the ticket colour to the destination station, of which it had 15 by 1907. That the company was hard pushed to find sufficient means of distinguishing the Edmondson cards is evident, with red, reddish-brown, pink, lilac and purple all being used. Return tickets were even more colourful, as each half was coloured according to its correct code! Others used various overprints, but the complexity was beginning to get out of hand.

What *did* distinguish the Underground from the main line railways was the sheer volume of journeys made. In 1875, with less than 10 route miles of track, the Metropolitan was calculated as issuing 20% more tickets than the whole of the Great Western Railway. With the proliferation of through booked tickets which ensued after 1907, the situation quickly became unsustainable, given also the number of stations on the network and the possibility of different classes of travel on the Metropolitan and District railways. This culminated in the gradual introduction of so-called 'scheme' tickets from 1911, when all stations available at a given fare were listed on the back of the ticket instead of requiring separate prints for each. This facility only applied to stations within the group, and through tickets to any railways not included in the Conference still retained separate issues. The reason was as much to do with the apportionment of receipts between companies as anything else, but the range of bookings which were

Left:
One of the few stations to have acquired new surface buildings in recent years is Shadwell (1983). Unfortunately, the corresponding station on the Docklands Light Railway is a short walk away, situated as it is on the viaduct in the background where a BR Fenchurch Street line train can just be seen. ***John Glover***

Above:
Passenger operated ticket machines are illustrated by this 1920s version. The theory was fine, but how well did it work? ***Author's Collection***

(and were not) available always contained many idiosyncracies, and has persisted thus ever since. Even then, there were a number of different ticket types to be contended with, and among the less obvious nowadays were Workmen's tickets, those for the Military and Police, to say nothing of 'Dogs and Folding Mailcarts'.

Mechanisation of ticket issue was of high priority, and by the time the 'Rapidprinter' machines which printed, dated, guillotined and ejected a ticket on the press of a button by the ticket clerk arrived in the late 1920s, the Underground Group was issuing something in the order of 270 million tickets a year. Other mechanical help took the form of change-giving machines, and various dispensing devices for office use containing preprinted tickets. However, most clerks became sufficiently skilled at their work that they could usually work quicker than the customer whom, it may be said, also benefited from research. A new design of brass plate with an upward curve was introduced, to make it easier for passengers to scoop up their tickets and change.

The earliest slot machines of the 'pull bar' variety appeared in 1904, dispensing preprinted tickets, but the free standing electric machines in general use until recently did not appear until 1937. By then the problems of change giving had been solved, and machines of the period also sorted mixed coinage placed in them by means of the 'bunch hopper'. They were installed at all the principal stations, and covered the main fare denominations. At the busiest locations, they accounted for up to 70% of ticket issues, or 30% systemwide since small stations had none. The fare for each machine was shown on an illuminated panel, which also contained the names of all the destination stations covered by that fare. Tickets were printed from a roll of blank card in similar fashion to the 'Rapidprinters' and the simpler 'Miniprinters' in the ticket offices. The machines had to be filled with ticket rolls and change, and emptied of cash, as well as having the date adjusted and the meters read each night. The sound of mountains of loose coin cascading into the collecting boxes wielded by the late shift clerks is one which now belongs to the past.

The 1950s saw the introduction of the 'Station of Origin' ticket, which conferred the right to travel for any journey from the originating station to any other where the fare was that shown on the face of the ticket. There matters stagnated until the automation phase of the 1960s as embodied by the Victoria Line. For there was a lot wrong with the ticketing system. Barrier checks were cursory, particularly for ingoing passengers, adequate staffing became ever more difficult, and it became clear that a large amount of revenue was being lost by fraud. What could be done to automate the process?

So began the installation of mechanical barriers, through which all passengers would have to pass both to gain entry to and exit from the system. Special yellow tickets with an oxide backing were issued to operate the barriers, and all machines had to be adapted to encode the tickets on issue. A contemporary account described how the Automatic Fare Collection (AFC) system was used:

'The four-door gate has two sets of twin doors. When the passenger inserts his ticket into a slot, the first pair of doors opens, allowing him to step through, and as he does so, the second pair of doors opens and the first pair closes behind him. The whole process can be carried out at normal walking speed, and if there is a continuous stream of passengers inserting valid tickets one after another, the door will remain open, giving an unimpeded flow. The (alternative) tripod gate has a three-armed turnstile which is released by the insertion of a valid ticket and allows one passenger at a time to pass through. At inwards barriers the ticket is returned to the passenger, but at outwards barriers, at the end of the journey, the ticket is retained in the gate. Both types of gate are operated by tickets with a magnetic oxide backing on which the journey details are electronically encoded. When passengers place their tickets in the slot, these details are read by electronic equipment in the gates, which open only if the ticket is valid'. *Annual Report, 1968.*

But it quickly became clear that the system aspects had not been thought through. If manual barriers were to be dispensed with, all passengers had to have encoded tickets, and this included the smallest stations on the Underground system as well as the large numbers of BR stations from which barrier-free transfer was available. What sort of costs

might be incurred in a comprehensive installation? In 1977, the cost of adapting and enlarging the ticket hall at Bank station for AFC was put at roundly £1 million, compared with £5-10,000 for a small suburban station. In the meantime, few of the public could be bothered to use the barriers, especially if they were carrying luggage. With technical problems to contend with as well as several changes of plan, the vision faded and the outward followed by the inward barriers fell into gradual disuse.

The adoption of decimal currency on 15 February 1971 posed a few problems for London Transport, which had favoured the £ Sterling being halved in value and divided into 100 pence – what today might be termed a '50p pound'. With their extensive use of coin operated machines, the Board took strong exception to the proposed introduction of ½p coins, the lack of any coin between 2p and 5p, and the lack of a close relationship of old values and coins with the new. It was all too difficult for them, and it was indeed at London Transport's behest that the 2½p (sixpence) was retained in the coinage for the time being.

Rebirth of automatic ticketing came in the 1980s, with the Underground Ticketing System (UTS). The objective had now expanded to improve the control and issue of tickets and security for the staff. It also represented a return to first principles; the previous systems had developed gradually from the early days, and modernisation had always been piecemeal. The main features of the new system were:

- Self service ticket machines which issue a wide range of daily tickets and give change.
- Automatic ticket checking on entry and exit at Central London (Zone 1) stations, in which 80% of all journeys start or finish.
- Creation of 'open' no-barrier suburban stations without regular ticket checks, but with more roving inspectors able to levy penalty fares.
- Secure 'wall' ticket offices for staff. All machines can be serviced without leaving the office.
- Data capture to provide centralised accounting reports and management information.

A credit-card sized ticket was adopted as standard, with a magnetic strip on the back for encoded data. Encoding takes place on issue, together with visual printing of station at which issued, fare paid and other details.

The design of the automatic gates installed in the central zone uses a 'paddle' system, in which the paddles are kept closed electro-pneumatically. Tickets have to be inserted and collected from another slot before the gates will open; photo-electric cells detect the presence of a passenger so that the gates remain open while the passenger passes through. The gates open automatically in the event of power failure, or by the operation of emergency buttons. The minimum number of gates at any one station is one inward, one outward and one reversible gate. At busy stations such as Oxford Circus as many as 26 gates have been installed, replacing a maximum of 10 manned booths.

Each station is controlled by its own computer, and linked to a mainframe installation at Baker Street. Stations are also daisy-chained together so that they are not cut off by a failure of the main link. Through this inter connection, the control centre can update the fares at individual stations. Data on fares and usage is extracted by the control centre.

Installation was completed in 1989, and linked to the compatible British Rail system. UTS features many enhancements over what had been intended previously, such are the advances in micro-electronics. Thus the new ticket readers are able to detect irregularities in ticket use through time, history, geography and price tests. After some initial resistance, the system seems to have settled down well.

Access to what became known as the surface Underground lines was by stairs, and since the platforms were no more than five metres or so below street level, this caused little difficulty. Even today, Sloane Square is distinctly unusual in having up escalators installed on both platforms. The building of the deep level tube lines however meant that some form of mechanically assisted access became essential. Initially this meant lifts.

The simplest means was used to build the shafts, by assembling the lining segment rings on the surface, undermining them, and letting the whole sink under its own weight. The City & South London Railway

Right:
A bank of three passenger-operated ticket machines at Paddington, Metropolitan Line, now all displaced by the introduction of the Underground Ticketing System. ***John Glover***

used Armstrong's hydraulic lifts, the power from the piston being translated into the movement of the cage by a system of ropes and pulleys. More common were electrically operated lifts, by the Sprague and Otis companies. Lift shafts were commonly built to accommodate two or more lifts, to allow for traffic growth. Lifts were thus not immediately installed in all of them, and some never received their full complement. By 1907 there were 249 lifts on the growing Underground system.

Initially, all lifts were manually controlled by staff, but the first semi-automatic lifts appeared at Warren Street in 1928. It was then but a short step to the fully automatic variety, first seen at Earl's Court four years later.

The capacity of a transport system can be increased by speeding up the vehicles, and this is just as applicable to vertical movement. Initially, lifts travelled at 100 to 120ft per minute, but speeds of 290ft per minute were reached at Angel and Leicester Square in 1924/25. 600ft per minute was attained at Goodge Street in 1937 while Hampstead, the deepest Underground station with a 181ft deep lift shaft, had 800ft per minute lifts installed in 1954. These took a mere 18 seconds for the journey. In these later instal-

Above:
Ticket offices were equipped for many years with the tried and tested Rapidprinter and Miniprinter machines. Also in this picture can be seen the traditional ticket rack and the change giving machine. ***Prestair***

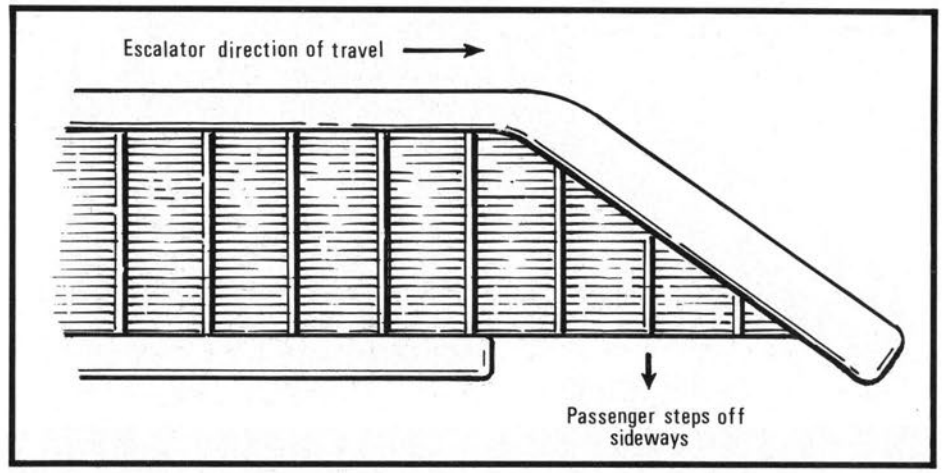
Below:
Despite the lack of queues at the UTS ticket machines, many still prefer to deal with a human face. Note that the sign above the window is intended to direct the traveller first to the machines. This is White City. ***John Glover***

NO EXI
1
PLEASE
STAND ON
THE RIGHT

The Victoria Line station finishes used grey tiles throughout and were austere compared with present day tastes. The 1977 Heathrow Central (as it was called until 1984) sports warmer tones, and is much helped by its greater dimensions due to the cut and cover construction. *John Glover*

Right:
The antique lift installation at Mornington Crescent was complete with ticket office, to allow the functions of ticket issue, ticket collection and lift operation to be combined under one man. The photograph was taken in 1983. ***John Glover***

Below right:
Early type 'shunt landing' escalator.



lations, time switches controlled movement to provide an evenly spaced service.

Lift safety measures incorporate door contacts so that the lift cannot be started until the doors are properly closed. Speeds are regulated by a governor and an automatic brake to ensure that plunges to the bottom of the shaft are prevented. If a lift becomes stalled in transit, passengers are transferred to another lift brought alongside using connecting doors; as a last resort the slow process of hand winching may be resorted to. A separate staircase, usually spiral, is always provided for *emergency* use. At school in Hampstead, the author was forbidden to race the lifts; this was only possible when the high speed versions were not working, as was not unusual.

Although a few of the original lift installations survived until recently at lightly used stations (such as the 1907 Otis manually controlled installation at Mornington Crescent), replacement with escalators or new lifts has been general. Lift renewal is a complex process. First, the old lift has to be dismantled and removed, and new lift guides built for the car to be assembled *in situ*. The machine rooms and landings have to be rebuilt to match the new equipment, following which the ropes and wiring are installed prior to acceptance tests. Physically, the work takes nine months or maybe much more; in the interim passengers often have to resort to the emergency stairs or the station may even be closed while the work is carried out. In 1991, 70 lifts remained at a total of 26 stations.

The word escalator is an American term dating from 1904. Just as the elevator was used to elevate the passenger, so the new invention 'escaladed' him.

For some time, the limitations of lifts had been apparent. Apart from, at that time, the need to staff them, the interruption of the flow of passengers was irksome and could lead to long waiting times. The aim was to find a conveyance which could deal economically with a steady trickle of passengers, and yet could absorb a surge at peak hours without becoming overloaded or causing congestion. Hence the search for some form of continuous movement, first patented by a Mr Reno. His first moving stairway (albeit without steps!) was installed at Coney Island in New York in 1894, and was moved to Brooklyn Bridge the following year. By 1900, he had gained sufficient experience to build a three mile long moving walkway at the Paris Exposition. In London, Reno constructed a pair of concentric spiral moving stairways in a lift shaft at Holloway Road in 1906. They never entered public service, as the Board of Trade was not convinced as to their safety. So it was that the Otis Seeberger design became the first to appear on the Underground system at Earl's Court in 1911.

Being first in the field meant that precedents did not exist, and being a run-on order from elsewhere, nobody objected to the highly original gradient of 26° 23' 16.5"! These escalators were of the 'shunt' type, whereby passengers stepped off them sideways. Such was public unfamiliarity, that the company hired a man with a wooden leg known as 'Bumper' Harris whose sole purpose in life was to ride up and down and demonstrate how to use it.

Lifts still had their place at the deeper stations, since with a vertical rise of more than about 90ft two flights of escalators with an intermediate landing are needed. But such was the escalator's general superiority with two escalators being reckoned to do the work of five lifts, that new lift installations stopped altogether after a couple of years. Raised cleats on the steps, which ended in a 'comb' at the landings to trap debris, became universal after Otis bought out Reno and his patents. All 'shunts' were then removed.

A 30 deg gradient became the standard. A great variety of machines was constructed, later substituting aluminium for much of the woodwork used originally and, much later, shown to be a fire hazard. Indeed, the 1936 Moorgate installation made a virtue of its use of wood panels veneered with samples from trees growing all over the British Empire. For the record, the greatest vertical rise can be found at Leicester Square (81ft), to be surpassed by the new installation at Angel. The shortest is at Chancery Lane (15ft). The maximum number in any one shaft is four (at Holborn). In the western suburbs at Alperton and Greenford are the oddities of escalators up from surface ticket halls to platforms on viaduct.

Experiments over the years have sought to determine the optimum speed. This rapidly rose from the 90ft per minute until 180ft per minute was reached, but it was found that understandable hesitancy by some passengers actually reduced the capacity. Since then, the maximum speed has been set at 145ft per minute, and this can comfortably handle 10,000 passengers an hour. Lesser speeds to conserve energy at times of light traffic may also be set.

Safety devices include the obvious plungers for emergency use, and these will stop the escalator in about four feet; these activate the brakes, which will also operate if the electricity supply fails. Detectors are also installed to stop the machine should a drive chain break.

During the 1920s an extensive programme of station improvement and modernisation was undertaken, and this often included the replacement of lifts by escalators. The problem was that the slope required by an escalator shaft would not join the existing ticket office with the existing below ground passages. Typically, the remedy was to construct a new surface ticket hall underneath a road intersection. Escalator shafts from there lead to landings above tube level since the tracks are generally too closely spaced to allow direct access to platforms. A short stairway joins the two. Since then, few stations in the central area have had more than a series of subway entrances to mark their presence. This kind

of work is tremendously expensive; the current work on replacing the four lifts at Angel with six escalators due to traffic growth is costing £25 million.

Escalators, too, need renewal, and a prolonged major effort is under way to restore escalator availability to a much higher level than that seen generally in recent years.

The water table under London is rising, and with it comes the increased risk of flooding of the system. Exceptional rainfall or the breaching of water supply or sewerage pipes can also result in the discharge of water into the Underground system – where it is not welcomed. Without a satisfactory means of dealing with water, the Underground would quickly resemble one massive sump.

Over 600 pumps are installed at 350 sites throughout the system. This includes a key installation next to the westbound Circle and District Line platform at Victoria, which deals with up to 1.2 million gallons of water in a 24 hour period. One of the biggest tests of the maintenance men came in July 1987 with the rupture of a 42in Thames Water Authority main at Euston. An estimated 18 million gallons of water poured into the BR car park and on into the Underground. The torrent surged across the booking hall and cascaded down the eight escalators, rendering them instantly unserviceable. Water filled the lower machine chambers, ran onto all six platforms, spilling onto the track and into the tunnel, filling the track inverts. According to the track gradients, it then followed the tunnels; on the Victoria Line, it was quickly demonstrated that it is downhill to Warren Street! The pumping out operation, which took three days, was at one stage removing more than 1,000 gallons a minute from the station to the car park and into the sewer.

Such incidents which involve prolonged suspension of services are exceptional, but it is only constant attention that keeps the Underground as remarkably dry as it is.

A problem as old as Underground railways is that of ventilating the tunnels adequately with economy, and without causing discomfort to passengers or creating nuisance for residents near ventilation shafts. It was an insoluble problem in steam days, but there were so many other inconveniences associated with horse drawn surface travel that many were resigned to the smoke and dirt. The problem was much reduced with the end of steam traction, but even so the residual difficulties have taken many years of research to overcome. The Central London Railway installed 'ozonisers' which were meant to purify the air, and some of the ducts at stations can still be spotted. The ozonisers certainly sucked air into the stations, but apparently the tang clung about the person for some time afterwards, and finally condemned the experiment.

Modern practice is to exhaust spent and heated air from the tunnels by means of powerful fans discharging into special ducts, and to admit fresh air through the natural channels of station entrances and escalator shafts. To augment this incoming flow, fresh air is also pumped through shafts enclosed in staircase wells, or through shafts sunk specially for the purpose.

An earlier method, still employed, works on the exhaust fan principle. Between Bounds Green and Finsbury Park three of the numerous shafts used during construction were retained to act as air extraction ducts. Below ground, two galleries and headings connected the shafts to the running tunnels. A later example is at Notting Hill Gate where a stairway shaft, no longer used, was extended to the roof level of an office block over the station site. All this adaptation and new construction has proved worthwhile, and the experience of having to positively force one's way against the rushes of air in passageways as fast moving trains approached a station is now forgotten.

A further aim has been to keep the air temperatures in the Underground at a reasonable level, since heat is created faster than is dissipated through the tunnel segments and into the surrounding clay. With the help of over 100 fans, the temperature underground is kept to an annual average in the region of 23°C.

Most of the Underground's stations are on the surface, but even so it is not the most obvious organisation to run a garden competition. An event of long standing, it was early justified 'by adding greatly to the cheerfulness of the railway', to the extent that management were prepared to pay for five shillings' (25p) worth of seed at each

Below:
The traditional form of escalator lighting still adorns St John's Wood station on the Jubilee Line, and is to be retained. This view shows the typical arrangement of three stairways in a shaft; the outside two are escalators, with the centre being a stairway capable of subsequently having an escalator installed should traffic warrant it. ***John Glover***

Above:
The bank of three escalators at Waterloo was constructed for the Festival of Britain exhibition in 1951, although later the central escalator was removed and replaced by stairs as shown here. In its own way, the general styling is as distinctive of its age as were the Yerkes tile patterns. ***London Transport Museum***

location. In spite of all the obvious difficulties, a challenge cup is awarded annually, with the gardens being judged on visual impact, health and vigour, choice and care of plants, design, and site problems overcome. Theft, vandalism and sheer thoughtlessness are problems to be coped with, but the efforts are appreciated by many.

One of the most well known manifestations of the Underground is the map, diagram of lines, journey planner or what you will. Since 1933 the map has appeared regularly, having twice undergone major redesign at the hands of new cartographers, and with minor (or occasionally major) adjustments made at each reprinting. It has always been available in a poster edition as displayed on station platforms, and as a pocket edition, but it has also appeared on T-shirts, mugs and carrier bags, on postcards and in diaries, as a jigsaw and as a tea towel. Recognised all over the world, it also happens to be a useful guide for those wanting to use the system!

As time went by, firm proposals for extensions were incorporated and shown by dashed lines as 'under construction' or 'to be electrified'. This was fine, as long as the work was eventually completed, but the Northern Line became less extensive with every edition during the postwar years until it regressed to the position reached in 1941.

In 1955 a grid was superimposed and keyed to an index of the 272 stations then extant. Little changes continued, such as an improvement in the typography, the indication of which stations had car parks, and the closure of the South Acton branch. By this time Beck's map with its curved transitions from horizontal to vertical and limited use of the diagonal was judged *passé*, and Harold F. Hutchinson's 1960/61 map took its place. In contrast, this used lines at 45° wherever possible, and eschewed all curvature. Perhaps it was meant to reflect the spirit of the times, but in truth it was heartily disliked. When Paul Garbutt, the LTE's Chief Secretary, doodled a more rounded replacement in a fit of boredom after a good Christmas lunch, his ideas were enthusiastically taken up. The first Garbutt map appeared in 1964, and its descendants which have had to cope with the Victoria, Jubilee and Docklands lines are still with us. Only one physical feature has ever been shown: the River Thames, which over the years has been twisted this way and that.

There have always been major trouble spots for would-be designers, the City being the most intractable. Hutchinson's design was weak here, with the main problem being the need to enlarge the area significantly to get all the lines in without unbalancing either the appearance or distorting relationships. Interchange between lines presents problems for which compromise is often inevitable, and a couple of examples are examined here.

Paddington is served by three separate stations, all with the same name. The Bakerloo and District/Circle Lines share the nowadays combined station in Praed Street, while the Hammersmith & City platforms are a hike of 250yd or so along the BR platforms and over a bridge at Bishop's Road. Until recently this was correctly shown, with BR interchange for both stations, but not between the two locations. However, the latest edition reverts to the former, less accurate, rendering.

Branch lines may be shown as divergences from their main lines or as separate lines from their junction station. Today, the distinction depends on the way in which the service is operated: if the line is always self contained (Holborn-Aldwych) interchange is shown; if through trains are operated as part of the basic service (Mill Hill East) it is a divergence from the main line; if sometimes one, sometimes the other (Chesham) it is shown as interchange but with a broken line connection indicating (here) 'peak hours only'.

Many other conundrums have had to be resolved over the passage of time. How many of British Rail's lines should be shown? To what extent should weekend station closures and peak hour only operations be covered? Does the walk between Fenchurch Street BR and Tower Hill count as interchange? What about one-way working as on the Heathrow terminal loop? Is it helpful to anticipate future events such as additions to the system, or does it only serve to confuse? An answer has to be found to all such questions.

Finally, on the question of colour, the last word must go to a letter to *The Times*. In response to a report that some changes to the line colours were being contemplated (in reality only changes of shade to make each line as distinctive as possible), Adrian Room of Petersfield protested:

'One of the delights of consulting the map has always been the aptness of the colours. The green District Line, for exanple, extends from the green trees of Richmond Park in the west and the green lawn tennis courts of Wimbledon in the south to the green fields of Essex in the east, while the red Central Line is the main artery through the city'.

'Similarly the black Northern Line represents the more built-up (formerly sooty and smoky) area of the capital, and off this trunk line extends the brown trunk of the Bakerloo Line. The blue Victoria Line too, crosses the Thames, while the yellow Circle Line runs round continuously through many bright and busy centres and mainline stations.

'LRT can hardly improve on this, and I hope they will think hard before changing the colours on our map!'

However, changes are occurring with the adoption of line management, and in 1990 the East London Line was recoloured orange, and the Hammersmith & City salmon pink..

Chapter 8

Operations and Control

Many regarded the prewar London Transport as reaching a high point which has never been attained since. Indeed, the folklore would have it, declining traffics, staff shortages and unreliability were wholly phenomena of the 1950s onwards. But what was the London Underground capable of a half-century ago? One of its largest tasks was the transport arrangements for the Coronation of King George VI on Wednesday 12 May 1937. It is perhaps worth looking at this operation in detail.

In those far-off days with no television, public transport had no alternatives, and the success or otherwise of such an operation depended upon the adequacy of the planning and operation by the transport providers. There had been some recent experience of major Royal occasions, notably the Silver Jubilee of 1935, but even so these could not match the intensity of movement in the first part of May 1937 around the West End. This started with Cup Final day on 1 May. Subsequently traffic rose daily; the last of three dawn rehearsals of the procession on 9 May had over a million spectators.

Pre-planning decided that there was a need to operate all-night trains on the Tuesday night on all lines; for Coronation day itself some stations on the processional route would be closed or partially closed to assist in crowd control. Some stations in the outer areas were also closed, but in these cases to economise on running time. It was not just the procession, attraction that it was; crowds of sightseers were expected to throng the streets to view the decorations and illuminations. At key stations, a special system of barrier control was instituted, with bell signals or telephones between platforms, ticket halls and subway entrances. Gates were erected to enable the passenger flows between platforms to be regulated to match accommodation available. This required substantial augmentation of staff, and the 6,000 employees were supplemented by no fewer than 1,319 'extras'. Some were recently retired staff, but all had to be instructed in their duties and perhaps receive some training. Over 600 regular staff received temporary promotion.

When the Underground opened for business on the Tuesday morning, it was to run continuously for 46 hours. At Charing Cross (now Embankment) alone, 6,530 trains worked through the station, which handled 467,000 passengers. These were part of the 5,669,000 carried in this exhausting traffic day. Not having overnight breaks in service avoided huge influxes at the start of operations, and the peak was reached, incredibly, at 0530. This perhaps indicated the success of warnings to the public to be in good time, seeing that the procession did not arrive at Westminster Abbey until 1100! The police request to close some stations partially backfired as it merely put undue strain on the rest. Nevertheless, a continuous 30 trains per hour was successfully maintained during this time on all lines. Included in this were 17 specials run for 10,000 schoolchildren, 1,000 troops and 2,000 dignitaries.

Weather always plays an important part. May 1937 was cold and foggy, with some rain. Consequently, return journeys tended to be earlier than anticipated, and by 1615 queues totalling 630yds long had formed outside St James's Park station. Traffic levels fell away after 0100 on the Thursday morning, the service finally ceasing at 0215. The respite was brief; over three million passengers were carried on each of the following three traffic days, which was approaching twice normal levels. There are numerous statistics to illustrate the magnitude of what was achieved, including the 12 ton weight of tickets issued during the week! Operationally, it would seem that a state of near perfection was achieved, with no instances of failure causing appreciable delay or inconvenience to passengers on Coronation Day itself. Minor problems only were encountered on other days.

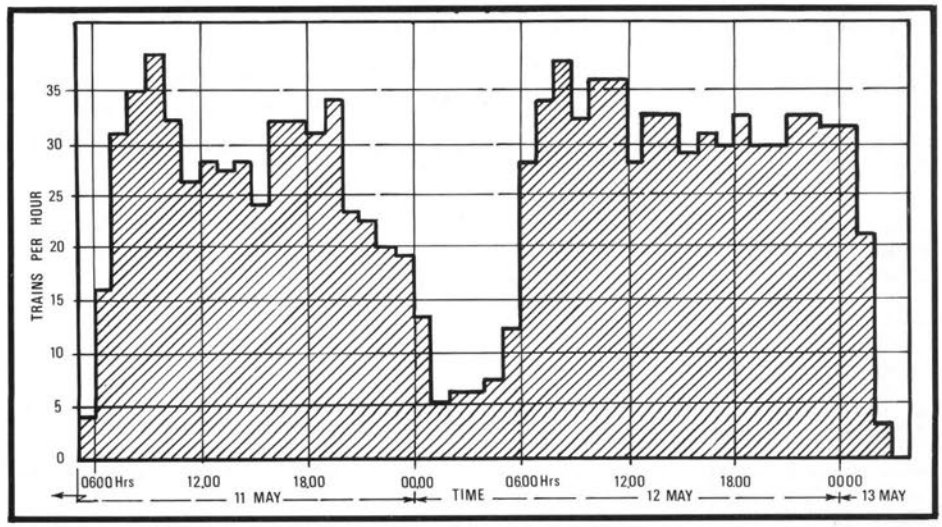
Whatever the cost, it was excellent public relations. 'The manner in which the (Underground workers) have carried out their task must excite universal admiration', enthused the *Morning Post* (now the *Daily Telegraph*). 'When it was inevitable that human beings should be packed like sardines, the sardines have at least been made to feel that the packers regretted unfortunate necessity along with them'. The editorial went on to suggest that if the Underground could cope with such a massive influx of passengers, the nation would do well to develop the network further as a solution to London's ever-growing traffic problems. This support for the public network was all the more encouraging as, although the trams and trolleybuses were running, the buses were absent at the time due to a strike.

Few travellers on the Underground need to give any thought to the timetable, most probably assuming that trains run on some sort of continuous basis. In reality, the timetable is constructed carefully to extract the maximum out of the resources which are available. Any railway service can only be as good as its timetable, and given the things that can go wrong, the performance is usually a little below what has been planned. Arguments have raged over whether timetable compilation is an art or a science; the consensus seems to be that it is a science, but one in which the art of the specialist gives the result the final polish. A Computer Aided Railway Timetable system (CART) is now available to assist the compiler.

The timetable is the written expression of the formal plan of action, which confirms what is being offered to the passenger and summarises what the organisation expects of its staff. It also indirectly commits the resources which are necessary to provide the service advertised. Before the timetable compilation is attempted therefore, the volume and pattern of traffic must be known or assumed, and the resources available must be assessed.

The decision to revise a timetable may stem from a number of reasons as well as shifts in the pattern of demand sufficient to affect the service levels to be provided. Technical changes involving the trains, track layouts or signalling, and the availability of staff, are all matters to which the compiler may need to address his skills. A thorough knowledge of the physical characteristics of the line, and the performance capability of rolling stock is also needed.

The journey time is the summation of the individual point to point timings for the inter-station distances, with an addition for station stop times. These need to be adjusted according to whether the period is the peak or off peak, or whether the stop is in the central area or the suburbs. Too long an allowance and the train waits time, which results in a slow and inefficient operation;



Right:
District Line train service at St James's Park station eastbound, 11 to 13 May 1937: trains per hour during 46 hours of continuous service.

too tight, and chronic unpunctuality quickly ensues. The number of trains required to operate the service is determined by taking the round trip time plus the layover at each terminus and dividing it by the service frequency.

In putting a timetable together, the requirements at the different times of the day need to be blended with each other. It is obviously undesirable to proceed directly from a 10 minute off-peak service to a peak frequency of perhaps two minutes between trains. Given also differential running times, the trickiest part of the job is to achieve a gradual change in frequency without causing large service gaps.

The Underground lines are unequal in their resource requirements, and Table 4 shows how many trains are needed to operate the maximum timetabled service, by line and by day of the week:

The comparison with the low of 1982 demonstrates both how difficult it is to expand capacity in the peak periods during the week, but also how the more optional traffics of the weekends had fallen away when confronted with the huge fares rises following the Law Lords' ruling at the end of the 'Fares Fair' episode. The 1990 service may have been a high point, since a cash crisis forced some service reductions in spring 1991.

All trains are formed of six-, seven- or eight-cars according to line, the exceptions being the self contained services on the Epping-Ongar branch of the Central, the Aldwych branch of the Piccadilly, the East London Line, and the Chesham branch of the Metropolitan. On these, three or four cars are deemed sufficient at all times.

There is also a great difference in the service required at different times of the day, as an analysis of the Jubilee Line January 1989 timetable shows. The ability to supplement and reduce the service level depends on the physical constraints; the Diagram shows that there are two major reversing points for trains from the south at Willesden Green and Wembley Park, but another at West Hampstead also sees occasional use at peak.

A basic principle is that trains should run at even intervals. If this is breached by turning (say) one in three trains short or giving one branch at a junction a greater weight of service than another, intervals beyond the turning point or junction will be irregular. Generally, control of the service is improved if services are self-contained where possible between the terminals, such as running Arnos Grove-Rayners Lane and Cockfosters-

Above:
A modest crowd waits at Paddington (Circle and District Lines), 1990. ***John Glover***

Above right:
Jubilee Line: trains per hour by section of line, time of day and day of week, January 1989.

Right:
The Underground prided itself in rising to the occasion when large numbers presented themselves for travelling. This entirely hatted crowd is waiting to be taken home from the RAF pageant at Colindale circa 1927. ***Author's Collection***

TABLE 4: Maximum number of trains needed to provide timetabled services, 1990 compared with 1982

	Monday to Friday	*Saturday*	*Sunday*
Bakerloo	28	18	13
Central	75	42	32
District	75	42	35
East London	5	4	4
Hammersmith & City/ Circle	30	18	18
Jubilee	27	16	10
Metropolitan	42	22	18
Northern	86	41	41
Piccadilly	73	53	40
Victoria	36	22	20
Total	477	278	231
As at 6 December 1982	447	213	182
Change %	*+7*	*+31*	*+27*

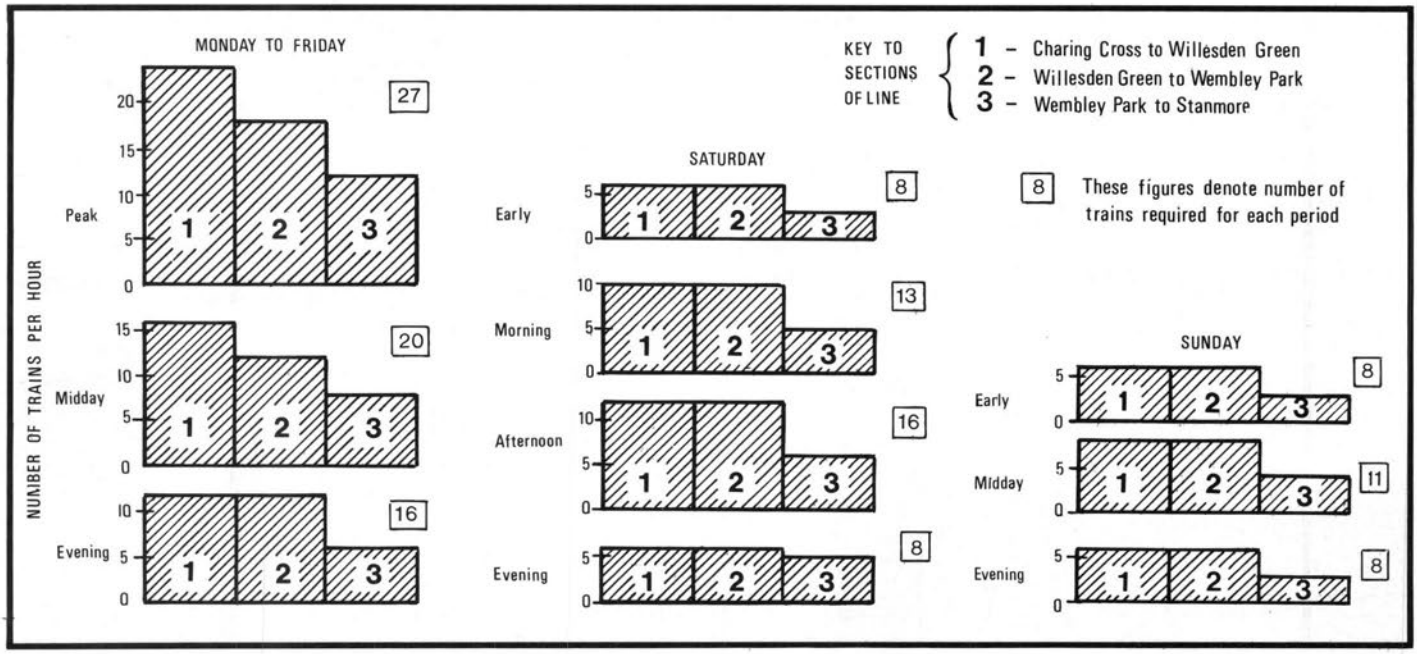
Heathrow on the Piccadilly Line. All trains though should pass common crew change points.

Timetables also determine connectional possibilities, and obvious problems arise if the services to be connected do not run at similar intervals! Sometimes it is only possible to make one set of connections; thus it may have to be decided if the Chesham shuttle from Chalfont and Latimer is sufficiently important for the whole of the Metropolitan Main Line timetable to be constructed around connections into and out of both up and down trains at Chalfont. Probably the good folk of Chesham are sufficiently vocal that to do otherwise would only serve to make the life of Underground management a permanent misery!

The timetable also has to return the trains at the end of the day to where they will be wanted the following morning. This is not necessarily back to their starting points, since outbased trains stabling in sidings overnight have to return to depots for periodic routine examination.

The above summarises the main constraints and methods, but in addition special timetables need to be devised for sporting and other events. Junction working can produce parallel movements which do not interfere with each other, or conflicting ones. Trains on several lines can get themselves reversed as on the Central Line's Hainault loop, which can lead to stock marshalling difficulties. Uncoupling to run shorter trains during the off-peak is no longer practised, but when it was a feature of Underground operation a major difficulty was that, on splitting, there would be two trains but only one train crew.

Twenty million passengers daily entrust themselves to the care of the Underground, and the 20,000 staff require training in their own tasks and the work of the railway in general. In 1963, London Transport opened



its new railway training centre at White City on a site formerly occupied by the rolling stock shed of the Central London Railway. The centre replaced the outdated and outmoded 1920 establishment at Lambeth North.

The courses were aimed mainly at new entrants and 'those seeking promotion. Instruction covered the duties of operating apprentices, stationmen and stationwomen, booking clerks, station foremen, and guards; all entrants to these grades received background and theoretical training in the school, with practical work at stations and on trains. To enable suitable staff to qualify as ticket collectors, guards, motormen, signalmen, station foremen and station supervisors, there were promotional training courses, varying in length from four days for ticket collectors to 36 days for station supervisors. From time to time, special courses were organised also to train railway instructors, traffic controllers, divisional inspectors and other senior staff. The centre had 11 teaching staff.

The White City school was claimed to be the most comprehensively equipped railway training centre in the country, with an intake of 3,500 students each year. The facilities were designed so that practically all out of course incidents and failures likely to be encountered in day to day operation could be reproduced with either replicas or models of prototype equipment. These arrangements were aimed particularly at control grades, since it meant that they could be set to unravel, practically, a number of difficult situations which could otherwise only be reproduced on the railway itself – which was hardly practicable for the majority!

One room contained a full size section of an Underground station, with running track, platform, tunnel entrance and various ancillary equipment. Incidents could thus be simulated to demonstrate the application of the rules, while the 'passengers' were kept informed by public address. A traction supply was laid on, and a device to reproduce current arcing was installed. Elsewhere, there were working electro-pneumatic and Westinghouse brake mechanisms as fitted to Underground trains, and electrical control apparatus and automatic couplers. A cutaway 1938 stock tube car demonstrated the air-operated door mechanisms and the guard's panel, and also the Drico communication equipment. Lift and escalators were not forgotten, while a fully fledged booking office was fitted with ticket issuing and change giving machines.

The model railway had 175ft of track, and was fully signalled and controlled from miniature lever frames with illuminated track diagrams or push button signalling. Eleven trains could be accommodated at one time and, needless to say, the instructor was able to introduce a wide range of 'failures'.

The use of video enabled consideration of historic accidents and their effects on current practice; provision of a record of an actual operating incident and enabling the class to construct alternative courses of action and their likely effects. It was also useful for recording and subsequent analysis of role playing incidents which could be staged on the mock platform. Over 4,000 staff currently attend courses every year.

A new vocational training centre for engineering staff is planned to be built at Acton.

Signals are the means of enabling the railway to run frequent trains at speed on potentially conflicting courses, but with safety of operation. The complexity of the signalling system is related to what is expected of it; thus the capacity of a line is dependent on the signal spacing, which determines the minimum gap between succeeding trains. As a safety back up, additional devices come into play should either the human element or mechanical defect supervene. The most important advance in safety was the adoption of automatic signalling, whereby each train alternately protects itself and clears the road behind by completing and breaking certain electrical circuits in its passage.

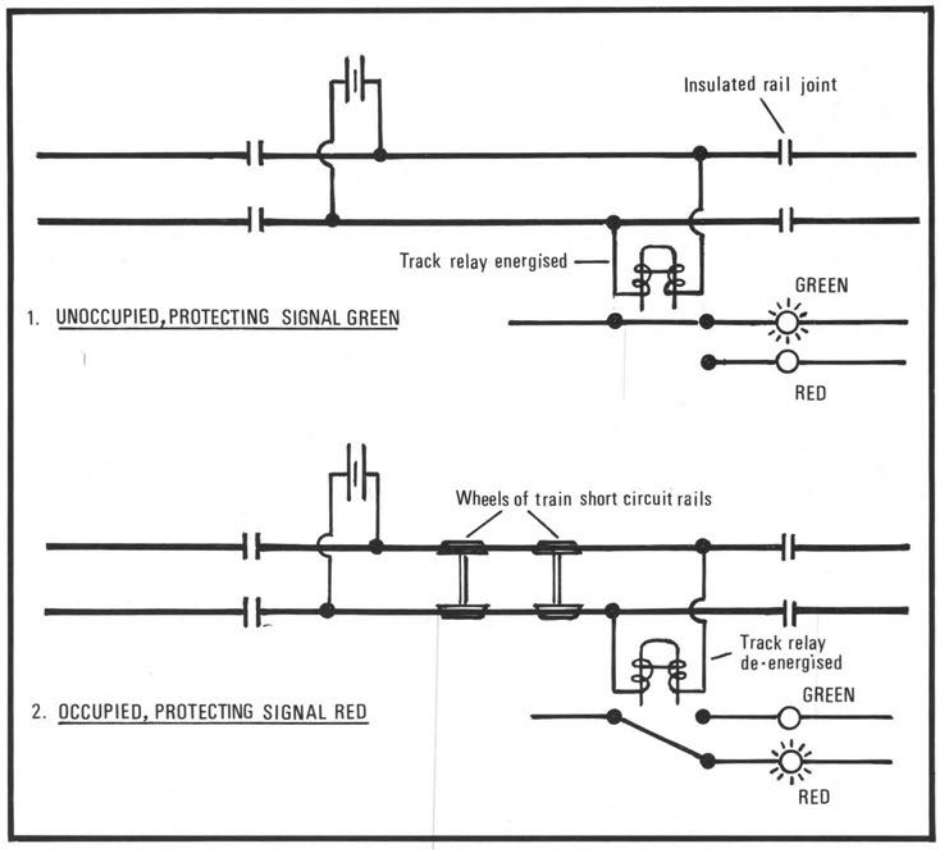
The traditional 'block' system with the 'blocks' being defined as the distances between the stations and with one train only allowed in each at any one time sufficed for a while with steam traction. Semaphore sig-

nals were quickly supplanted by colour lights (although the last semaphores used by Underground trains survived at Richmond, Southern Region, until 1980), but early tunnel signals were operated electro-mechanically, having moving spectacles illuminated from behind with an oil lamp! Growing weights of traffic and electric traction required a more flexible approach to signalling which was not conditioned by the station spacing.

Automatic signalling is no new invention, since it was adopted by the Metropolitan and London Electric Railways in 1905 and 1907 respectively, and earlier still on some of the main line railways. The system works as follows (see diagram). The running rails are divided into lengths which are insulated from each other electrically. The signal current passes along the rails on one side of a section of track, through a track relay, and then back through the rails on the other side. When current is flowing through the relay, its contacts are closed, and this completes the circuit for the control of the signal and causes it to show a proceed aspect.

When a train passes the starting signal and thus enters the track circuit section which the signal protects, the wheels and axles bridge the running rails and short circuit the signal current. This de-energises the signal relay which causes the signal to show a red aspect. When the train clears the track circuit section by passing another signal plus a further short section or overlap beyond that, the short circuit is removed. The signal relay is re-energised, and the normal green aspect of an automatic signal is restored, allowing the following train to proceed. The length of the overlap is designed to be sufficient to enable a train travelling at maximum permitted speed to stop short of any obstruction using an emergency brake application. With several automatic sections between two signalboxes which retain non-automatic control as at junctions, trains can follow each other safely without further intervention. As all trains on the Underground system are now of multiple unit stock, the variation of acceleration and braking characteristics as found on an all-purpose railway is missing, and the signalling can be designed that much more effectively. There are 8,000 track circuits on London Underground.

The track circuit depends upon the presence of a train to short circuit the running rails, but on little used sidings or crossovers a build up of rust could prevent this from



Above right:
Simplified diagram of a track circuit, showing at top unoccupied, protecting signal green; below occupied, protecting signal red.

Left:
The remains of the last level crossing on the Underground at North Weald in 1977, seen here being traversed by a 1962 stock train bound for Ongar. *John Glover*

Right lower:
The instructional railway at the White City Training School would be given few marks for scale accuracy, but it was a tool designed for a specific purpose – to train operating staff and demonstrate the consequence of mistakes. *London Transport Museum*

happening. This is dealt with in two ways: 'rusty rail' workings are deliberately introduced into the working timetable so that as many lines as possible see a train during the normal course of events, and secondly a narrow wavy band of stainless steel is welded to the head of the rails. This ensures that rust does not prevent electrical continuity being maintained.

Should a driver ignore the signal aspects, a second line of protection is brought into play. The automatic train stop apparatus alongside the rails, of which there are 3,440, will apply the brakes, taking control out of the driver's hands. Normally, the arm on the train stop lies clear of the trains, but it is raised automatically by air pressure when the signal turns to a danger aspect. In this position, the arm position is pre-set to make contact with a tripcock on the train, and if contact is made the cock will open and release the compressed air supply in the train pipe and apply the brakes, causing the train to stop within the overlap distance. The raising of the train stop is detected by the preceding stop signal which will remain at danger until the fault is rectified; this 'fail safe' approach is always apparent in railway signalling matters, and it will be realised that a loss of current in the track circuiting device already described will always cause the signal to display a red aspect.

On the Underground system, two aspect red/green signals are sufficient for most purposes; yellow is used as a repeater for a red aspect in advance where the sighting distance is limited. Exceptions include the sections where Underground and British Rail trains use the same tracks as happens north of Harrow-on-the-Hill, where four aspect BR signals provide additional braking distance.

Automatic signals cannot cope with junctions, and here semi-automatic signals are installed which have to be cleared each time for the route selected, although they will restore themselves to danger automatically after the train has passed. It follows that they normally display a red aspect. Usually, such signals can be set to full automatic operation when all trains are to take the same route. Junction signals will normally feature the 'lunar' lights, a series of three white lights placed at an angle above the signal head as a visual indication to the driver of the route setting. Lack of any indication indicates that the 'normal' route is set.

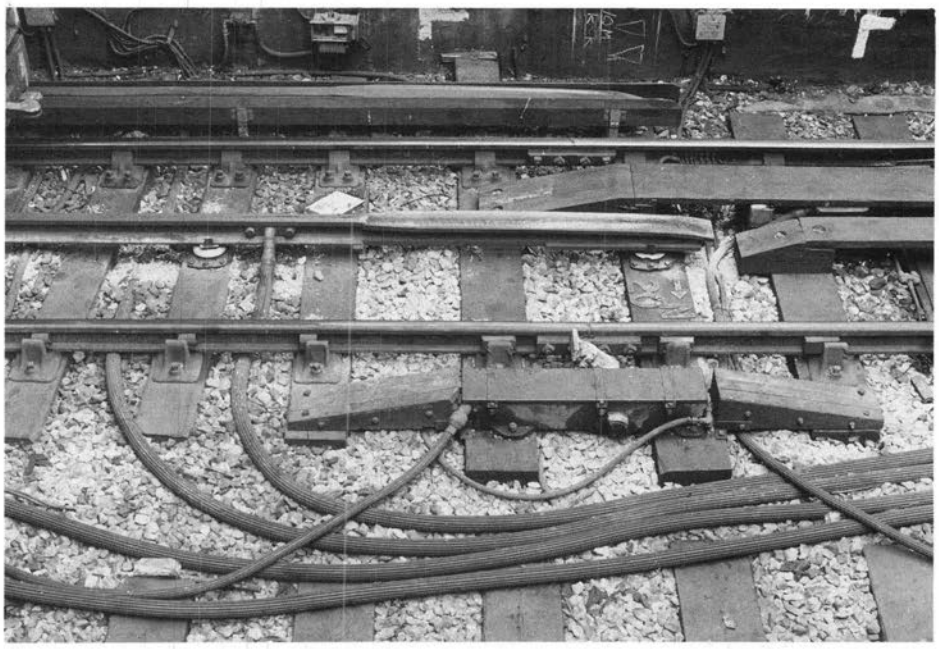
For slow speed operation, the theatre type indicator is used. This can display various numbers, each of which indicates a separate route, through the illumination of a pattern of light bulbs. It will usually be found above a ground or shunt signal controlling the entrance to sidings.

Signalling may also be used to control train speeds rather more directly than just displaying large numerals to denote speed restriction signs at the side of the track. A specific problem was the southbound run from East Finchley on the Northern Line. From entering the tunnel, the gradient falls steadily at 1 in 50 for the two miles to Archway station, outside which there is a sharp and therefore speed restricted curve. Two timing points were therefore arranged on the section; the first controls a signal about 200yd beyond it, which will not clear if the train exceeds 40mph over the timing length. The second section controls a signal about 100yd beyond it and 250yd from the curve, which will not clear to any train exceeding 30mile/h over the second length. In this way, the speed has been reduced so that the curve cannot be taken too fast, as if a speeding driver should attempt to do so, the automatic train stop will come into action.

Later refinements but with a similar end in mind have been applied to approach control systems, where the speed of an approaching train is assessed by the current it generates in coils situated with magnets under the rail. The detector now consisted of a 12ft length of dummy positive current rail adjacent to the home signal, with a stainless steel surface; beneath it were 12 permanent magnets and coils, in which a current was induced by the positive shoes of the train making contact with the inductor. This caused a small alternating current to be generated in the coil, its frequency proportional to the speed of the train. A related relay responding only to alternating current below a given frequency was connected, and only when the relay operates does the signal clear. Measurements correct to 0.5mile/h are said to have been achieved, the advantage being that the detector makes constant checks as the decelerating train's pick up shoes pass over the inductors. Speed control of this nature allows trains to enter platforms where the signalling would normally demand that they be detained in the running tunnels as, of course, the time taken in the platforms will allow the next train in front to proceed further. Another application is in the approach to dead end platform tunnels underground, following the disastrous accident at Moorgate in 1975. Here, the driver of the train failed to stop in the platform and instead carried on and hit the end of the tunnel with the loss of 42 lives.

It is always easy to be wise after the event, and railway safety has had a century and a half in which to develop. This has led to rail becoming one of the safest forms of transport available, since the whole operation takes place in a strictly controlled environment. Yet one must never lose sight of the purpose of the railway, which in the case of the Underground is mass movement. Safety is important, but there is a cost involved, and the standards must be consistent with the fulfilment of the basic *raison d'être* of the organisation. One problem that has raised its head several times is the procedure to be followed when a driver encounters a signal at red and which resolutely refuses to change to a proceed aspect. In order to keep the traffic moving, the stop and proceed rule was devised which, after a one minute interval, allows the driver to

Right:
The signalling installation at Wembley Park, 1954. *London Transport Museum*



Above:
An R stock train waiting to leave Richmond. Until their final withdrawal in 1983, these trains always carried an oil tail lamp to provide a back up should the electric tail lights fail. ***John Glover***

Left:
In this view of bullhead track at Edgware Road, the sheathed conductor rail adjacent to the platform may be noted, and the shaped ends of those rails where the pick up shoes leave them. The wooden ramps are to ensure that the pick up gear is not caught in the pointwork, while the guard in the foreground is to protect the automatic train stop, seen in the raised position. ***John Glover***

'trip' past it and, after resetting the tripcock on the train, to proceed at a speed consistent with stopping short of any obstruction that he may encounter or at the next signal. The obstruction may be no more than a failed train stop which, as noted, will cause the signal behind to remain at red. However, it may be a failed train, in which case the normal procedure would be to push it until such time as it can be diverted to siding or depot. So far, so good, and any other arrangement would be far more disruptive.

Nevertheless, the safety of this operation depends upon the driver of the second train continuing with care and attention to what he is doing. On 8 April 1953 this did not happen. A damaged train stop caused a signal between Stratford and Leyton on the Central Line to display a permanent red aspect. Eleven trains passed the signal according to the rules; the twelfth was in the process of doing so when it was struck heavily in the rear. The Inspecting Officer commented on the damage, 'which greatly exceeded that ever experienced in any previous damage to tube stock. The leading driving cab of the first car (of the rear train) was wrecked and the headstock was forced down with such violence that the whole end of the car was lifted and became jammed between the track and the roof of the tube, buckling itself in the process. This had two results – firstly, the whole of the energy of the train was dissipated at that point instead of some, at least, being expended on pushing (the preceding) train further forwards; and secondly, the lifting of the front end caused the rear end to be lowered, enabling the buffer of the second car to ride over that of the first car and to telescope into it for a distance of six feet'.

The accident took place during the rush hour and was, at that time, the only really serious accident in the history of the Underground. The accident caused 12 deaths, with the cause being a lack of care or misjudgement by the driver. There have been a number of other accidents from the same basic cause both before and since, but none with such devastating results. In the last analysis, no safety device can replace the skill and vigilance of the staff.

The railwayman deserves all the help he can get, and an anticipated hazard concerned the two major types of rolling stock. Those for surface and tube operation respectively have totally different cross-sections, and the extensions of the 1930s and the years following brought with them increased opportunities for both types to share the same tracks. Sometimes, this sharing also encompassed the main line railways, whose goods trains continued to run long after the passenger services had been ceded to London Transport. The risk thus arose of a surface or main line train being diverted in error towards a tube tunnel of 12ft diameter, against which the signalling would not provide protection. The solution was to first detect surface trains and then to stop them.

Above:
A 1938 Driving Motor Car is put back where it ought to be using re-railing slippers, skid plates and pushing jacks, all equipment carried in the emergency road vehicles on permanent call. ***London Transport Museum***

The method chosen was to suspend a series of three mercury filled glass tubes from an overhead gantry, clear of tube stock but obstructing larger trains. Breakage of the tubes returned the signals in advance to danger, with their associated tripcock mechanisms. The first installation was at Hammersmith in 1932, to prevent District Line trains entering the eastbound Piccadilly Line tunnels at Barons Court. Other detection methods have also been used. On the Central Line eastward extensions, it was necessary to distinguish between electric tube trains and BR services, and electric trains were required to 'prove' their presence through the pick up shoes making contact with a length of specially installed conductor rail on the opposite side of the track to the positive rail.

Traditionally, each junction location was controlled by its own signalbox, and featuring a miniature lever frame. This mirrored main line practice, with each lever controlling a separate set of points or a signal. The first was installed at the present Acton Town station in 1905, and Howson described the Aldgate box which controlled the triple triangular junction at the eastern extremity of the Circle Line:

'In the cabin a long power frame of miniature levers is worked by signalmen who handle at peak periods as many as 120 trains per hour. Above the frame an illuminated diagram gives a picture of the various tracks and the position of trains moving over them. Trains are advised to the cabin on a train describer panel, and are described on a transmitter as they are despatched away from the controlled area. Signalmen receive trains by "pulling off" a signal after setting the road where necessary. These signals are of the semi-automatic type, and are restored to danger by the passage of the trains past them. The signal cannot clear again until the signalman has restored his lever to normal and "restroked", or reversed it. The levers have both electrical and mechanical locking as safeguards against irregular movement.

'Back-locking relay apparatus prevents a signalman from inadvertently replacing a lever and resetting a road once a train has accepted the signal, and mechanical locks block the movement of any lever, other than the one pulled, that could set up a conflicting movement. Below the cabin is a room housing 266 relays in glass-fronted covers to protect them from dust and damp. More than 50 miles of wire was needed to complete the circuiting in this room when the equipment was installed'.

The first change was to consolidate the movement of a number of levers, so that each performed a series of functions and set up an entire route. Local control remained possible, through the expedient of switching the box back into the system. Next, remote control of the levers from an adjacent location by push button was introduced, using compressed air to activate them. Push buttons conferred a number of advantages, not the least of which is that the signalman can remain seated. Routes no longer needed to be reset after use, and it became possible to pre-select the following route which was required and which would then be set up automatically. The status of each route, whether it is clear, pre-selected or at danger is shown by panel lights. The first of these installations was commissioned at Ealing Broadway in 1952.

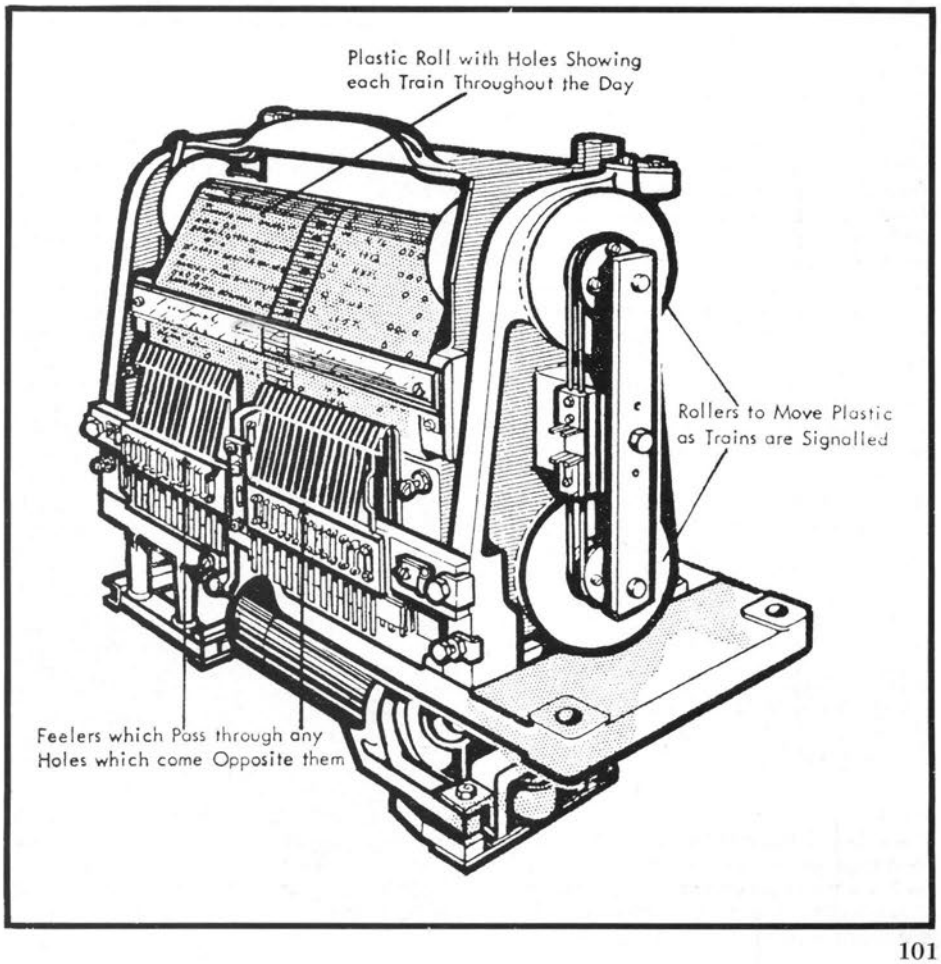
Hitherto, the signalman had initiated the movements, albeit over a wide area; the next step was to use the trains themselves through the working timetable to set up their own routes. At simple facing junctions, the automatic train describers can be used to control the junction points; at trailing junctions, signals can be arranged to pass trains on a first come-first served basis.

In 1955 the first programme machines were installed experimentally at the complex Camden Town junctions on the Northern Line. This contemporary description nowadays reads like a combination of a primeval computer and the music rolls used by steam driven fairground organs! But this is not to mock the real advance which the development represented:

'The programme machine carries a plastic roll about 8ft long and 8in wide, on which is recorded the day's train service in terms of the train time, the reporting numbers, and their destination. Each entry is in the form

Above:
A southbound 1983 stock train approaches Finchley Road beneath the device installed to ensure that only tube gauge stock is allowed to enter the tube tunnels at the far end of the platform. Surface trains would break the tubes, which contain mercury, and restore signals and trainstops to danger. ***John Glover***

Right:
A drawing of a programme machine, one of many which control operations on several lines.


Plastic Roll with Holes Showing each Train Throughout the Day
Rollers to Move Plastic as Trains are Signalled
Feelers which Pass through any Holes which come Opposite them

of punched holes in the roll which forms a unique code. Feeler arms on the machine press against the roll, and as the roll advances the holes come into position and make various contacts. These are sufficient to initiate the setting up of the route for each train. As each train proceeds, the programme machine roll is automatically stepped to the next entry. Checks ensure that the train being described is that which it should be approaching according to the timetable, in which case the route will be set at the correct time. (This could involve the much troubled "Positive Train Identification" system, whereby each train confirmed its identity automatically). If a train is late by more than a pre-set time, the machine may "ask" for a supervisor to decide on the course of action or, if trains arrive at a converging junction out of order the machine may automatically step forward

to deal with the train that has arrived first, storing the route details in its memory until the missing train arrives. It should perhaps be noted that the programme machines do not directly operate points and signals, which is carried out as previously; there is thus no safety connotation. The machine takes the place of the signalman in his decision as to what action to initiate next.'

The inevitable move into computerisation of such tasks is proceeding concurrently with resignalling schemes. The first use of computers was for track circuits, and allowed the elimination of the insulation joints in running rails. These could be replaced by impedance bonds, the track circuit being tuned to a particular computer detector. Trials began with electronic versions of the programme machine at Watford in the 1970s, subsequent installations covered Heathrow and the northern part of the Piccadilly Line. The Metropolitan and Jubilee Lines followed.

With increasing sophistication, the need for signalmen to be able to identify trains on sight disappeared. Consequently, the headcode was also phased out, and from the 1959 tube stock build onwards, marker or headlights only were carried. Underground codes were related to destinations, and the juxtaposition of which out of three, four or five lights (according to type of stock) formed the code. Illustrated here are the codes once carried by the Metropolitan's electric locomotives, which had three positions only.

Early headcodes were provided by positioning oil lamps, an anachronism on an electrified railway. Amazingly, though, oil tail lamps continued to be carried by the CO/CP and R stocks into the 1980s, as only one fuse was fitted to the electric tail lamps!

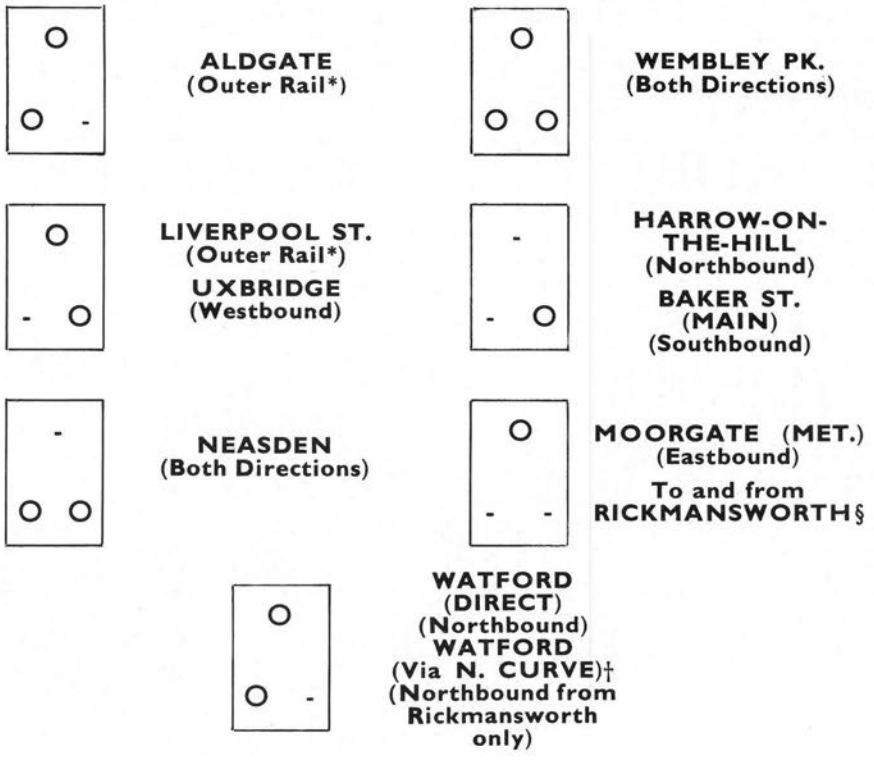
Although signalling was originally carried out locally, centralisation has gradually concentrated the task into the hands of train regulators in single locations. But regulators, signalmen and programme machines alike require supervision from some kind of control organisation, which is in a position to take a broader view of what is happening on the network.

Control offices can be traced back to the early days of the District Railway, when the telegraph office at Earl's Court was notified of breakdowns and failures, following which orders were issued to maintenance chargehands standing by at various key points. Signal fitters at Aldgate East, electrical linesmen at Victoria, and locomotive foremen could thus be summoned to deal with any emergency, whilst a chief inspector stationed at Earl's Court was responsible for train working throughout the District system.

Problems which fall to the controllers to deal with include those which local manage-

METROPOLITAN COMPARTMENT STOCK AND ELECTRIC LOCOMOTIVES

NOTE: On this stock three light positions only were available, at top centre, on lower left and right of the cab front.



* i.e., Clockwise round the Circle.

† Northbound Watford trains via N. Curve carried Rickmansworth code to Rickmansworth, and changed there to Watford (Direct) code.

§ Southbound trains changed code to relevant destination at Harrow, or earlier if non-stopping.

Above right:
Headcodes carried by Metropolitan Electric locomotives and compartment (T) stock, 1960.

Right:
The District Railway was early in establishing a control office. This is the Earl's Court installation, photographed around 1912. *Author's Collection*

ment has been unable to resolve, such as no driver being available to take over a train when it arrives at a crew changeover point. This can be doubly disruptive to the operation, since not only is there a potential gap in the service, but there is also a train without a driver holding up the system. Other commonplace events include train, signal and track failures, or actions by passengers or staff. The job of the controllers, who are organised on a line basis, is to keep an eye on all that is happening, and minimise the effects of unwanted events on the train service. The principle is that of intervention when needed; if everything is running perfectly, the controller has nothing to do.

To undertake the control task effectively, a flow of incoming information is required, together with an intimate knowledge of the track layout, rolling stock characteristics, station facilities, the timetable, and traction and other current supplies. The objective is to minimise the causes of delay, and to contain such delays as cannot be prevented to the smallest possible geographical area.

In the event of disruption, the controller has to decide on the appropriate action. This may include turning trains short of destination, reducing the service interval, organising a replacement bus service, calling out engineering staff and, of course, restoring the service to normal. The controller has an information assistant who can use the selective public address facility to inform passengers of operational problems, whether they be irregular running or the non-availability of lifts at a particular station. It has to be said that such public announcements are not always audible, and often seem to be largely irrelevant.

At all times, the safety of staff and passengers alike must take top priority. For major incidents, the line controller can turn to the Headquarters Controller, who would normally summon the public emergency services.

Effective control depends upon effective communication, and the telephone, useful as it is, has serious drawbacks – notably that it cannot be used to or from a moving train. Along the walls of all tunnel sections may be seen two bare copper wires. Their primary function is to discharge the traction current, which is carried out by pinching the two wires together to make contact. This is essentially an emergency measure, to counteract any fusing or arcing which may arise. Right from the earliest days of tube railways, drivers were also provided with a telephone which could be clipped to the wires, which has the same discharging effect. It also enables the driver to talk to the substation control room and pass messages through those staff to the line controller. Unless instructed otherwise, the traction current will be reconnected by the substation control after a short interval. This can be overridden by the driver in emergency, and always if passengers are to be detrained and walked to a station, by placing short circuiting bars on the rails. Detraining is to be avoided if at all possible, as it can take a long time for passengers to be led through the entire train and out through one of the cab doors and then along the track to the nearest means of exit. At the very least, there are likely to be some bills presented for dry-cleaning! Tunnel emergency lighting is automatically switched off.

Such communication is really for emergency use only, and the 'Drico' (*Driver-Con*troller) system dating from the 1950s allows direct speech communication through speakers in the cab and the control room. Contact is made through attachment to the same tunnel wires; again the train must be stationary, and there is no facility for the control to call the driver.

For the Victoria Line, which was built for Automatic Train Operation (ATO), carrier wave contact through the conductor rails was used to transmit messages between the driver and the regulator. While this system could be used while the train was in motion, it suffered from interference and could not be used if short circuiting devices had been put down after the current had been discharged. It was thus likely to be useless in the event of a real emergency when communications were most needed. The 1967 Victoria Line stock was the first to be built with a public address facility.

With Driver Only Operation (DOO) in mind, train radio was developed to overcome this somewhat unsatisfactory state of affairs. Train radio allows communication while the train is moving, unlike the previous cumbersome system which required the driver to stop and attach the telephone handset. Priority has been given to train radio since it benefits the whole operation of the railway, and a high premium is attached to its reliability, providing as it does the front line communication between train and control.

Train radio operates by means of a continuous leaky-feeder cable through the running tunnels, transmitting to and receiving from fixed on-train equipment. Radio also allows contact with supervisory and managerial staff, who are out and about on the system. Station staff also benefit, and principal tunnel stations now have radio contact with the surface. These personal sets are effective on trains or immediately adjacent to the track. Initially, development was hampered by the allocation of an insufficient number of radio frequencies.

The provision of direct contact at all times is one of the prerequisites for driver-only operation. STORNO train radio is now fitted to all DOO trains, which allows the DRICO equipment to be dispensed with.

Below:
Only on the Central and Northern Lines are guards now found; there are no plans to convert these lines to Driver Only Operation until they have been equipped with new rolling stock. A guard leans out of the back of his northbound Northern Line train at Leicester Square to get a better view along the curve of the platform as he shuts the doors. ***John Glover***

A quiet night time moment at Ealing Common depot, showing CO/CP stock. The traffic day lasts for about 19 hours, and much stabling, washing and maintenance work has to be undertaken at night. *GEC*

Chapter 9

Engineering Support

Without the engineering function, there could be no Underground. This Chapter takes a look at some of the many areas in which the engineers contribute to the operation of the system.

Acton Works, for many years the central railway overhaul workshops in west London, was built in 1922. It occupied a 50 acre site to the south of Acton Town station, and provided facilities for heavy overhaul and reconditioning of all London Transport's railway rolling stock as well as supplying reconditioned wheels and other components to the running depots. That Acton Works is no more, the site now being used for much more modest purposes, but Howson's description of the progress of Underground cars through the complex has been retained for its interest.

'The works are arranged so that cars for overhaul are first drawn up at a platform alongside the trimming shop, where the seats are removed. The seats are either washed or retrimmed and then stored ready to go back to the cars after overhaul. Cars can then proceed to the lifting shop, where the car body is lifted off its service bogies or trucks by means of a 30 ton overhead traversing crane and placed on special accommodation bogies, which are old bogies built up with raised transverse beams so that the body sits much higher off the track than usual, giving additional working space beneath.

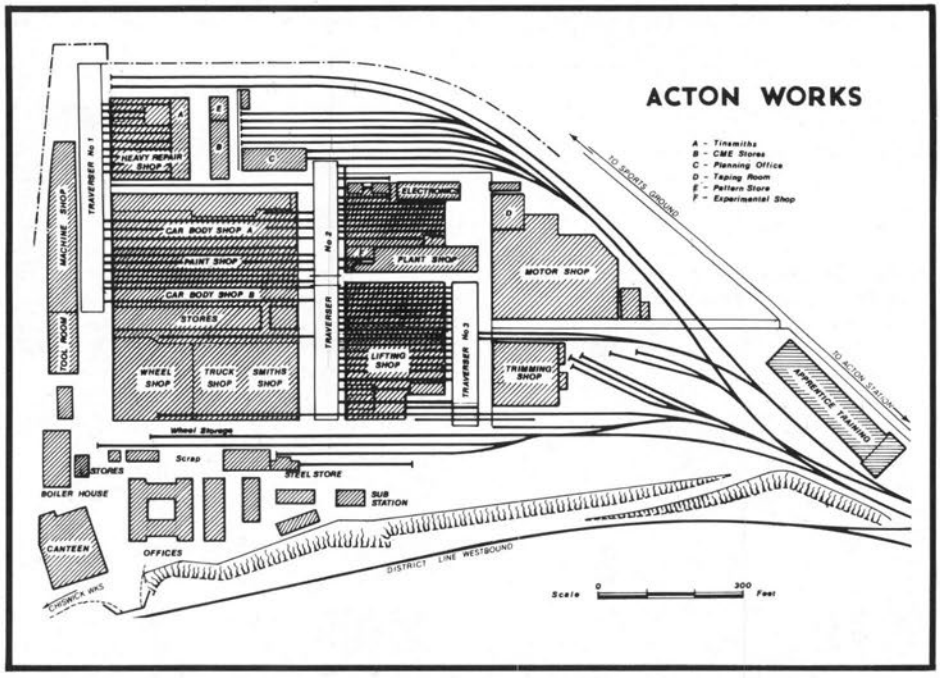
'After the car bodies are lifted on to accommodation bogies, the service trucks have their traction motors and current collection equipment removed and are drawn by chain into the truck shop. Down one side of this large building is the dismantling track or road, along which the trucks are slowly moved and progressively stripped down to the bare frames.

'On the far side of the shop is the truck assembly line and across the wide space between pass all the various components on a series of conveyors. On their journey across the shop, the components are cleaned, inspected and reconditioned or renewed as necessary.

'The truck frames themselves are now removed from the line and come under close scrutiny for defects, such as rivets working loose, which may occur under the stress of continued running.

'All that is now left of the service trucks on the dismantling road are the pairs of wheels and axles and these are moved to the extreme end of the truck shop, known as the wheel area. Here the wheel assemblies, comprising either wheels with gear drive mounted directly on the axle, or plain wheels and axles, are subject to very close examination for wear and faults. Wheel axles, approximately 5in in diameter, sometimes reveal faults during a special testing process. If so, they are tested on an ultrasonic flaw detector. Should there be any suspicion of a crack on an axle, the wheels are pressed off and subjected to a test on a magnetic particle tester. In this, fluorescent ink containing particles is sprayed on to the axle, which is then electrified. The particles are thus attracted magnetically to the opposite poles of any crack, which thereupon reveals itself as a black hair line. Overhauled

Below:
Battery Locomotive No L35 is photographed on the traverser in Acton Works in 1983, while alongside is an uncoupling driving motor car (UNDM) of 1972 Mk I stock on accommodation bogies. These are used for moving vehicles around the works while their own bogies receive attention elsewhere. The crimson lake livery of the battery loco has since been replaced by the much brighter and more safety conscious yellow. It is one of the batch built in 1938 by the Gloucester company. *John Glover*



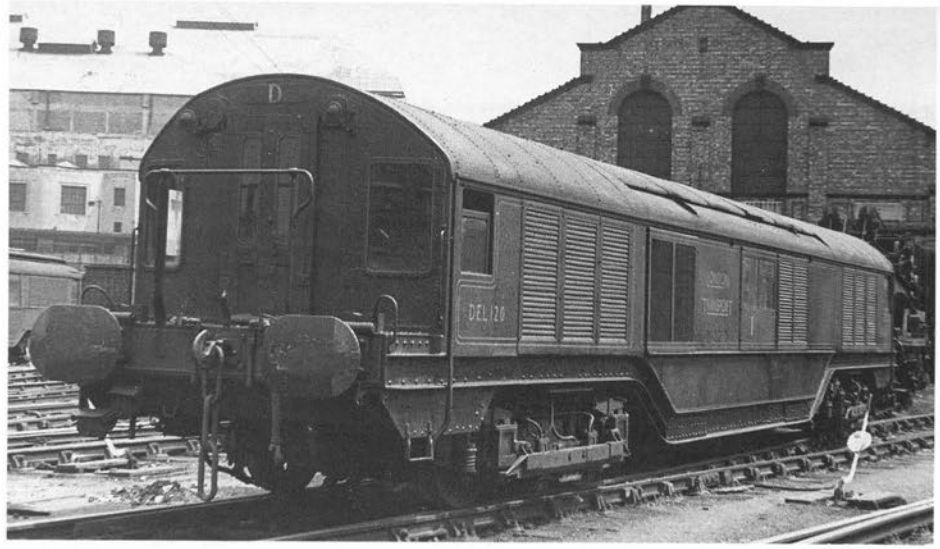
Left:
Layout of Acton Works.

Bottom:
Pilot motor cars are used to transfer other stock around the system, with the pilots providing the power and placed one at each end. Nos L130/1 are former 1934-built standard stock cars in yellow livery, and were photographed at Acton Works in 1983. The wheelsets in the foreground demonstrate the size of the gearwheels in the final drive. *John Glover*

wheel assemblies are conveyed to the assembly line, and then begins the building up process of the bogie, which continues as the bogie slowly moves along the line in the reverse direction to that in which it entered. The completed trucks are now ready to return to the lifting shop.

'The motor shop overhauls traction motors, compressors, alternators and a variety of other machines such as lift and escalator motors. Motor overhaul is a specialised business and can vary from superficial attention and cleaning to complete rebuilding from the shaft upwards. Three of the processes involved are the stoving or reconditioned armatures to drive out moisture and ensure good insulation, the banding of armatures to prevent the copper bars from rising due to the high rotating motor speeds, and the armature insulation tests at 2,000V – or double if the armature is rebuilt. These high tension tests are carried out within a special raised enclosure to keep out unauthorised personnel during testing. Modern traction motors use better insulating materials, so the number of machines rewound because of insulation breakdown is decreasing.

'The car body overhaul starts when the car is moved from the lifting shop to the blow-out enclosure, where compressed air jets unsettle dust and dirt from the equipment and underframes, while induced draught sucks all this debris away. The car body then travels by traverser to the main car body shop. Compressors and motor alternators are then removed to the motor shop, and all electrical and mechanical equipment on the cars, such as brake valves, door engines and traction control equipment are removed for attention at specially equipped benches and then refitted. Overhaul of the car structure and fittings also takes place here. After this process the car body is sent through the paint shop and then returns to the lifting shop where it is lowered on to its service trucks. Roads with pit facilities are provided for inspection and testing on completed cars. The cars are then coupled into unit formation, the seats refitted, and a final test run performed.'



Right:
DEL 120 was an electro-diesel locomotive built in 1940 from a pair of CLR motor cars, and a Petters diesel engine installed. It was in a sense an alternative to the battery locomotives then undergoing development, but use of the diesel engine in tube tunnels was not envisaged. It was not a success, and the battery fleet was expanded instead. It was photographed in lined lake livery at Lillie Bridge in 1946, and was scrapped in 1958. ***H. C. Casserley***

Below:
Permanent way work of a modest nature is carried out at Morden depot in the early morning sunshine. ***John Glover***

Even in this description, the seeds of change can be seen. Maintenance requirements overall were decreasing, and further changes were foreseen. For example, if the vehicle bodies needed to lifted from their bogies less frequently, this would be of little value if the lifting was still needed to remove the wheelsets so that they could be machined periodically to restore their correct profile. Underfloor wheel lathes to re-machine the wheels, but without removing them from the vehicles, were first introduced in 1947. These lathes dealt with the flanges only, but in 1961 a new machine was put into service at Northfields depot which could machine the entire profile. This used rollers pressed against the inner faces of the wheels to rotate them, while hydraulic jacks supported the axleboxes and hence the vehicle's weight. The copying tool to cut away the surplus metal was then moved across the wheel flange and tread, following a master profile. Using this method, it was not even necessary to uncouple the vehicles, and a complete four-car set would be drawn progressively across the lathe by winch.

Armature rewinding was being replaced with the use of better insulation techniques. Painting of aluminium cars with plastic faced interiors was not necessary. Wheel changes were being extended from one year to every four years, and heavy overhauls from every four to every nine years. Heavy mechanical work was being replaced with increasing requirements for electrical and electronic work. For modern rolling stock with nine years adopted as the basis for heavy overhauls, the half life overhaul at 18 years has similar work content to previous half life overhauls. However, the nine and 27 year overhauls are much lighter, with some items removed for repair but most equipment being subjected only to a clean up and test. For example, the cars in a train no longer need to be separated, let alone have the bodies lifted off the bogies.

Given the age of much of the equipment at Acton, the upshot was the decision in 1985 to transfer all car overhauls to the line depots, with equipment removed from the vehicles maintained at a new facility at Acton or by outside contractors. The new Acton unit concentrates on seat retrimming, wheel maintenance, sub-assembly work, electrical and electronic maintenance, and machining. None of these required a rail connection, since the plan was to bring the parts for overhaul in by road. Meanwhile, Acton was allowed to tender for other work, such as the conversion of the Metropolitan Line A stock to one person operation.

Golders Green was the first of the line depots to take on this work in 1986, and has

Above:
Plasser and Theurer tamping machines are used for track maintenance work. Type PUO716 No TMM771 dating from 1980 was photographed at Acton Works.
John Glover

been quickly followed by others. These main depots have always dealt with day to day cleaning, inspection and maintenance. A lifting facility and inspection pits both beneath and at the side of the cars were also part of the standard provision, but do of course aid the new tasks.

There are 254 route miles served by Underground trains, of which 20 miles are in cut and cover tunnels, 85 miles are in tube tunnels, and 149 miles are in the open. In 1971/2, mileages were officially remeasured in kilometres; while the location of the zero point for the system is really academic, the choice of Ongar sand drag for this honour seemed a little quaint!

The track is the literal foundation of the railway: it has to be strong and resilient enough to withstand the weight, speed and frequency of rail traffic to be run upon it, sufficiently stable to offset the worst that climate and weather can do, and to wear well and minimise the requirements for maintenance and, ultimately, renewal. For the sake of good relations with the surrounding property owners, it must also offer reasonably unobtrusive running.

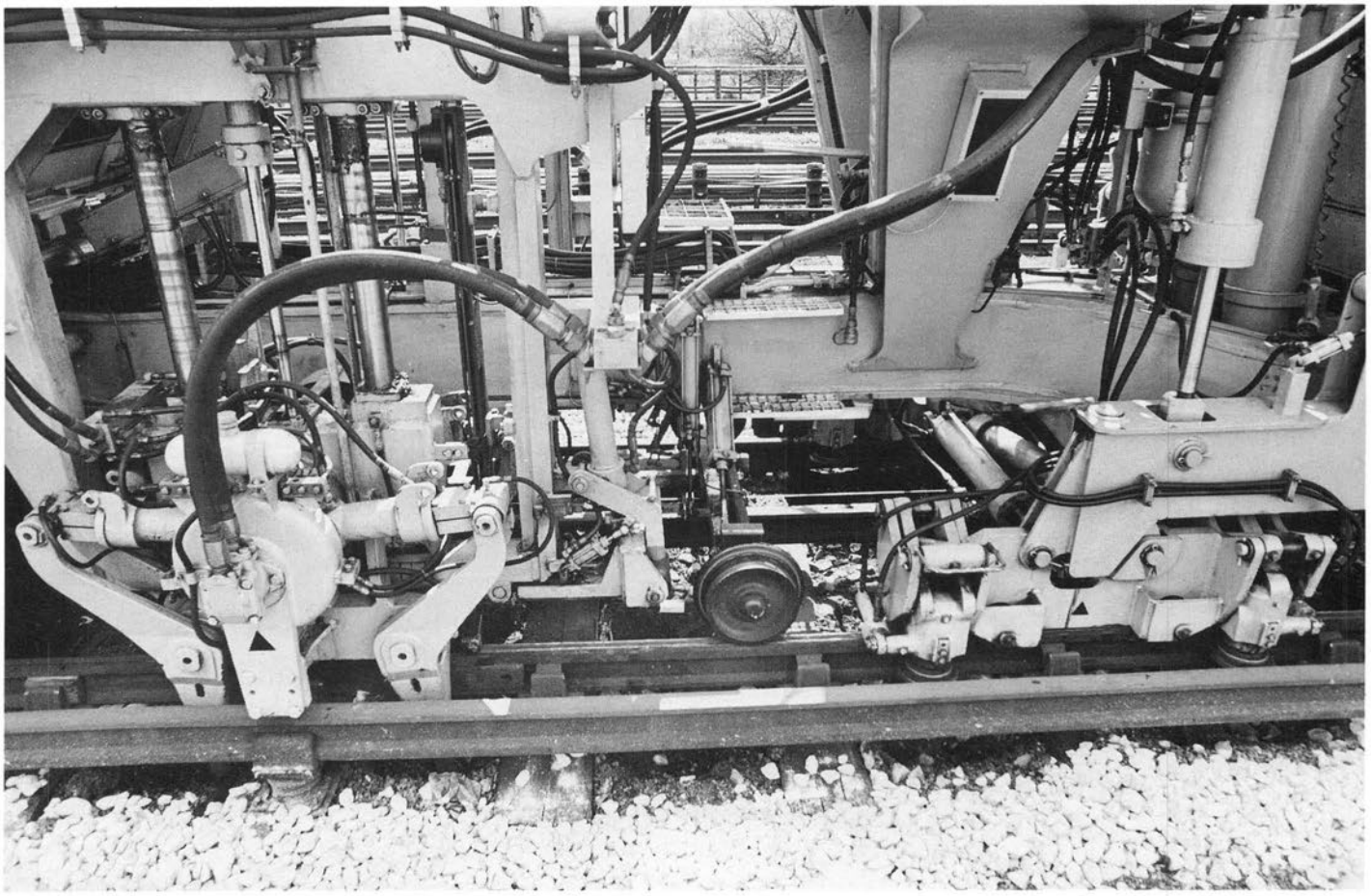
Early days saw much experience being gained the hard way. On the Bakerloo, it was decided to lower the rails into the tunnels down vertical shafts, turning them at the bottom to reach the trackbed. This meant that 36ft was the longest length that could be accommodated. The Central London Railway opted for 44 ton locomotives to haul their trains. These 28 machines were built by the General Electric Co of America, and were of the double-bogie type, with a centrally placed cab and sloping front and rear ends. They were quickly blamed for vibration in the properties above. Investigation narrowed the problem down to a relatively flimsy track construction combined with a high proportion of unsprung locomotive weight. Rebuilding of the locomotives reduced the nuisance, but the solution was the adoption of multiple-unit operation. Recommendations which followed from this incident included enlarged tunnel clearances in future construction, and deeper rail sections to give added stiffness.

The corrugation of running rails was also discovered as a source of noise nuisance for passengers, and the 'roaring rails' phenomenon can still be found occasionally. In any event, Underground travel tends to be noisy as the tunnels reflect the noise back into the train. Experimental use of asbestos sprayed on tunnel walls in the 1930s was thankfully found too costly for general adoption, since it had to be expensively removed in recent years for health reasons. Relief was eventually forthcoming by the installation of sound-absorbent screens at below car body level, and the introduction of rail welding to reduce the number of joints. Eventually, track construction and electrification systems were standardised.

Interestingly, the old problem of environmental noise from trains has yet to be completely solved. The lack of 'give' in the track construction on the Docklands Light Railway has led to sound baffles being installed, and rail corrugation has had to be removed by grinding.For many years, the standard running rail on the Underground system was of 95lb/yd bull-headed section in 60ft lengths, secured by oak or steel keys to chairs in which the rail was seated, which were coach-screwed to the sleepers. Conductor rails were of 130lb/yd rectangular section in tube tunnels, and 150lb/yd flat bottomed section elsewhere. The outer conductor rail carries the positive traction current, and will be found on the side furthest from the station platform wherever possible; the centre conductor is the return. Both are, of necessity, supported on porcelain insulators.

Wooden sleepers have many attributes, among them the relative ease of handling compared with the heavy concrete variety. Jarrah wood, a costly hardwood imported from Australia was universally used in tunnel sections, with sleeper ends held in concrete to prevent track movement. Track 'creep' could, if not prevented, lead to clearances between trains and tunnels being fouled. In the open sections, creosoted fir or similar wood sleepers at rather closer intervals was the standard.

The weakest part of the rail is at the joint with the adjoining rail, and this is always supported by closer spacing of the sleepers. However, rails wear and are subject to cracking at joints, and moves were made to extend rail lengths. Standard rails are welded into 300ft lengths at the Permanent Way Depot, and transported to site on trains of bogie bolster wagons. Once on site, the wagons are withdrawn and longer lengths are then welded together. Constraints to the process include the allowance needed for rail expansion (of little import in the tunnels as the temperature remains fairly con-



stant), and the insulating joints giving electrical separation within each running rail, required for signalling purposes. For the rails themselves, flat bottom section is now standard, although some locations have been thus equipped for many years.

Points and crossings are examined daily, running lines every two days, and depots and sidings every three. The purpose is to detect any condition which is potentially or actually unsafe, or cause a delay in service. This monitoring by patrolmen is supplemented by less frequent inspections, covering also ditches, drains, embankments and fences. Welded rails in open sections receive special attention in the summer because of the risk of buckling, while ultra-sonic flaw detection is carried out twice a year on running lines using hand probes.

Track condition generally is poor, to the extent that the Metropolitan Line has been subjected to a blanket 50mph speed limit. Track renewal from the foundations upwards is urgently required, but this is often difficult to secure during limited night time possessions of about 4hr on a weekday night. In tube tunnels, much work is undertaken using hand tools such as crowbars, hammers and shovels in very bad light. Compressed air tools are used on reconditioning sites, with air lines running from a compressor mounted on an adjacent station platform. Internal combustion engines cannot be used in tube tunnels because of the exhaust fumes.

Longer possessions can be achieved by curtailing the late evening service on the Underground, and this is presently under consideration.

Track fires in tunnels need to be eliminated, and involve more people than just the Civil Engineer. Work under consideration includes screeding all ballast, use of non-flammable rail lubricants, eliminating the hydraulic handbrake on trains and its propensity to drip oil, train mounted transponders to detect conductor rail gaps and cut the current without sparking, thermo-energy cameras on trains to measure temperature changes and, perhaps in the long term, laying fibre optic cables in the tunnels able to detect local rises in temperature of 2°C to the nearest metre.

What is permissible in terms of track geometry will affect the speeds attainable and the type of rolling stock which can be run; furthermore, it is the most restrictive of the curves or junction layouts on a railway which is the determining factor. One of the advantages of a light rail system is its greater ability to accept these constraints, but for the Underground a maximum gradient of 1 in 30, and curves of not less than 20 chains radius are desirable. At junctions, curvature is eased as far as possible, but space constraints in older tunnels frequently result in less than ideal results. In any event, trains need to clear junctions as quickly as possible to keep the throughput of traffic moving, and in this sense 'clearance' is what the signalling system will accept.

Points and crossings all receive heavy wear, as the wheels passing over them deliver a series of heavy blows. The tougher manganese steel is used in busier locations, since it is not only the capital cost but also the disruption caused by replacement or by welding repairs which justify its use. Wearing of all rails, particularly on sharp curves, may also be eased by the use of rail lubricators which use the wheels of passing trains to spread a film of grease for distances up to half a mile.

Points are operated by compressed air. Movements actuated by the signalling apparatus complete a number of electrical circuits, one of which opens a valve to admit compressed air to the cylinder of an air engine placed alongside the points, and the ensuing thrust of the piston moves the point blades across. This gives rise to the characteristic 'hiss-crash', which can be observed when points are changed. Air supplies are contained in the piping which is present on the walls of all running tunnels. Facing points, that is where the approaching train has the choice of route, must be locked in position to prevent their movement during the passage of the train, but those which are always trailing to the direction of traffic may be unworked, with the blades being pushed across by the leading wheels.

The Permanent Way depot for the whole of the Underground system is at Lillie Bridge, Earl's Court. Despite its space limitations, it is well situated at the geographical centre of the system which minimises the valuable time taken to run works trains in non-traffic hours, and has connections to the British Rail system via the West London line as well.

Recent remodelling of the premises is providing a new points and crossings workshop, a new railway track layout to separate road and rail movements in the depot, the rationalisation of storage facilities and the installation of a new maintenance area for battery locomotives. Part of the depot is now covered by an elevated raft supporting a new exhibition hall for Earl's Court. Two emergency call out teams are maintained, at Lillie Bridge and at Baker Street. These respond to calls from anywhere on the system.

Rail welding is carried out at Ruislip. Flash butt welding consists of placing the rail butts, or ends, together, and passing high tension current through them. The rails are drawn apart slightly during the operation to

create an arc, and when this has been done a few times the butt becomes so hot and soft that when pressed tightly together they fuse into one.

A fleet of wagons for track maintenance purposes is retained. These include ballast hoppers and flat wagons for carrying pre-assembled sections of track. Of interest are the specialist vehicles, which includes four cranes.

The movement of a crane to any part of the Underground system imposes severe limitations upon design if it is to negotiate tube tunnels successfully. The limitation was overcome in 1955 when two Taylor Hubbard cranes, each weighing 36 tons, were put into service. Previously, over 100 miles of Underground open track could be reached only by long detours or not at all. Although required to operate within tube gauge, the cranes had to be capable of slewing a complete revolution and to have a tail radius which would effectively clear cable posts and platforms with the minimum of obstruction to traffics on parallel tracks when working; axle loading was not allowed to exceed 12 tons. This required some design ingenuity, particularly in the articulation of the foot of the jib, which is necessary to negotiate curves in tube tunnels. The articulation is automatic when the jib is lowered onto the jib carrying wagon, and the re-engagement of the foot of the jib when raised for use is also fully automatic.

A five-car tunnel cleaning train was built at Acton in the 1970s, and acts as a giant vacuum cleaner in tube tunnels during non-traffic hours.

A fleet of tamping and lining machines from the Austrian firm of Plasser & Theurer carries out by machine tasks that a few years ago were left to careful observation and measurement followed by hard physical work. To find out where this work is most needed, a new Track Recording Train to measure the geometry entered service in 1987. It consists of an instrumented 1973 stock trailer, specially modified by BREL at Derby, between two 1960 stock pilot cars. Other pilot cars for ballast trains and moving trains or parts of trains around the system other than under their own power are formed from old passenger driving motor cars.

Traction for engineers' trains was provided by the fleet of retained steam locomotives after passenger train haulage passed to the L&NER in 1937. These locomotives eventually wore out, and it was ironical that just as the British Railways' publicity machine was being cranked into action to extol the advantages of modern types of traction, Britain's most completely electrified system should issue a confession of faith in steam, albeit for very specialised purposes only. In 1957, the Underground acquired Western Region pannier tanks Nos 7711 and 5752, renumbered them L90 and L91, painted them in lined maroon livery and set them to work on miscellaneous duties. According to London Transport, the minimal use to which the locomotives were put meant that retention of steam was a viable proposition. Battery locomotives were considered, but their cost and the practice of working them in tandem told against them. So, replacement with WR surplus steam was proceeded with until a maximum of 11 pannier tanks was in service. They were finally withdrawn in 1971, being replaced by three Sentinel diesels and more battery locomotives . . .

Most haulage around the system is now provided by the battery locomotive fleet, placed one at each end of their trains to speed reversal. All are of 'tube' loading gauge to enable them to pass anywhere without restraint, and have variable height drawgear to suit both 'tube' and 'surface' stock coupling heights. Wherever possible they operate on current obtained from the conductor rail, during which time the batteries (on the more modern locomotives) are recharged in readiness for use where no live supply exists. There are currently 48 such locomotives in the fleet, built by various manufacturers over the last 50 years.

Left:
Sister tamping machine No TMM773 is seen in operation at Neasden. ***John Glover***

Below:
Former GWR 0-6-0 Pannier tanks, now Nos L99 and L89, 'at home' in Neasden Depot of London Underground in April 1969. The connection between the two railways went back to 1863, when the earliest Metropolitan Railway trains were hauled by Great Western motive power. ***Victor C. K. Allen***

In some years, winter weather precautions are hardly needed. Sleet locomotives used to help in solving the current collection problems during winter weather by the use of anti-freeze solution, liquid sprayers and wire brushes on the conductor rails. Electrically operated pneumatic control actuated the valves controlling the de-icing fluid, and the cylinders which lowered the brushes and ice-cutting rollers to the rails. These locomotives were built out of redundant CLR motor cars of 1903 vintage, but have now been replaced by equipment on a number of passenger cars. Night-time heating of conductor rails was tried as a frost precaution; the method used was to short circuit the negative and positive rails so that their resistance to the 600V dc traction current being passed through them raised the rail temperature and melted any snow or ice. This method could only be used out of traffic hours, but once trains started to run their passage was usually enough to keep the current rails clear. In 1963, 17 miles of track on rising gradients on the Metropolitan, Piccadilly and Central Lines were being thus treated.

The autumn has always brought the problem of falling leaves, and various methods of removing them before they are ground to a slithery paste on the rail have been tried. This included water cannon, but since 1983 a Unimog tractor and trailer which could run on road or rail has been used to vacuum up the leaves as they fall. The tractor unit has a cabinet containing a centrifugal fan, and a flexible hose with suction nozzle draws up the leaves from the track into the cabinet. They then pass into the trailer van where they are collected for disposal. This unit is kept at Chalfont & Latimer station high in the Chilterns, where many of the worst problems are found, and makes night time sorties. Two more Unimogs have since been acquired for shunting purposes.

However, no precautions were possible for the night of 15-16 October 1987, when hurricane force winds swept southern Britain, after which over 600 trees had to be cleared from the tracks. The more serious damage was to signal cables, cut by falling debris, while the stability of some embankments previously bound by tree roots had to be attended to in the longer term. However, even the Epping-Ongar line which had 60 fallen trees to itself, was back in business three days later.

The early tube railways began the tradition of self-sufficiency in power generation, and the City & South London Railway built its own power station at Stockwell when it opened in 1890; the Central London Railway's establishment was at Wood Lane. The electrification of the Metropolitan and the District Railways spawned coal fired power stations at Neasden and at Lots Road, Chelsea in 1905. By this time, the District and three of the tube railways were under the unified control of Yerkes, and Lots Road which was then claimed to be the biggest power station in the world, provided power for them all. Later, the power station at Greenwich was added, after being released from its former role of supplying power to the LCC tramways.

Lots Road was built on the banks of the Thames to burn about 6,000 tons of small grained 'pea' coal a week coming in by barge. Conveyors transported the coal by bucket conveyor to bunkers over the 32 boilers in the basement. These were fed mechanically, and the draught for the fire raised by the four 275ft chimneys and assisted by fans. Howson referred agreeably to 'the old warm, gently roaring power house with its glowing, slowly moving chain grates; its glistening rows of humming generators; and its parquet-floored control room, all knobbly with polished dials and instruments with, above, thin plumes of smoke drifting from its tall chimneys'.

Below:
Battery locomotive L21 is one of the Metro-Cammell machines of 1964. It is seen here at Acton in 1983 displaying its newly fitted buckeye coupler (in the dropped position), making it fully compatible with other modern stock.
John Glover

Each boiler produced about 50,000lb of steam each hour, used to turn the nine turbo-generators arranged in two rows above the boiler basement. Their output was electricity at 11,000V, three phase at 33⅓Hz. Jutting out into the river bed were the two water intake pipes of 9ft and 7ft 6in diameter respectively, supplying cooling water at up to nine million gallons each hour. After passing through screens to remove debris, the water was passed over the condensers to cool them, and returned to warm up Chelsea Creek. The condensed steam in the boilers was then recycled, and any losses were made good after purification by supplies from artesian wells.

All this was swept away in a modernisation programme in 1968, with natural gas or oil taking the place of coal as the primary energy source. Neasden was closed at the same time, and provision made in the investment programme for supplying power to meet the needs of the expanding Underground system. Lots Road was re-equipped, with six vertical oil-fired boilers serving new turbo-alternators. The voltage generated is now 22,000V at 50Hz, and the total capacity of the plant increased by 7% to 180,000kW. Shortly afterwards, in 1972, Greenwich was also re-equipped, but with gas turbine alternators.

Although outer sections of the Underground have been fed by the National Grid for half a century, the principle of generating the base requirement of electricity was not challenged until recent years. However, a number of failures of power supplies for technical reasons served to bring trains to an abrupt stop all over the system. In October 1979, an explosion in one of the boilers blew out the other two which were in use at the time. As this happened at 1430 when Greenwich was not operating, this caused a complete power loss in the central area. Although Greenwich came on load within a couple of minutes, this was not sufficient to prevent a shutdown.

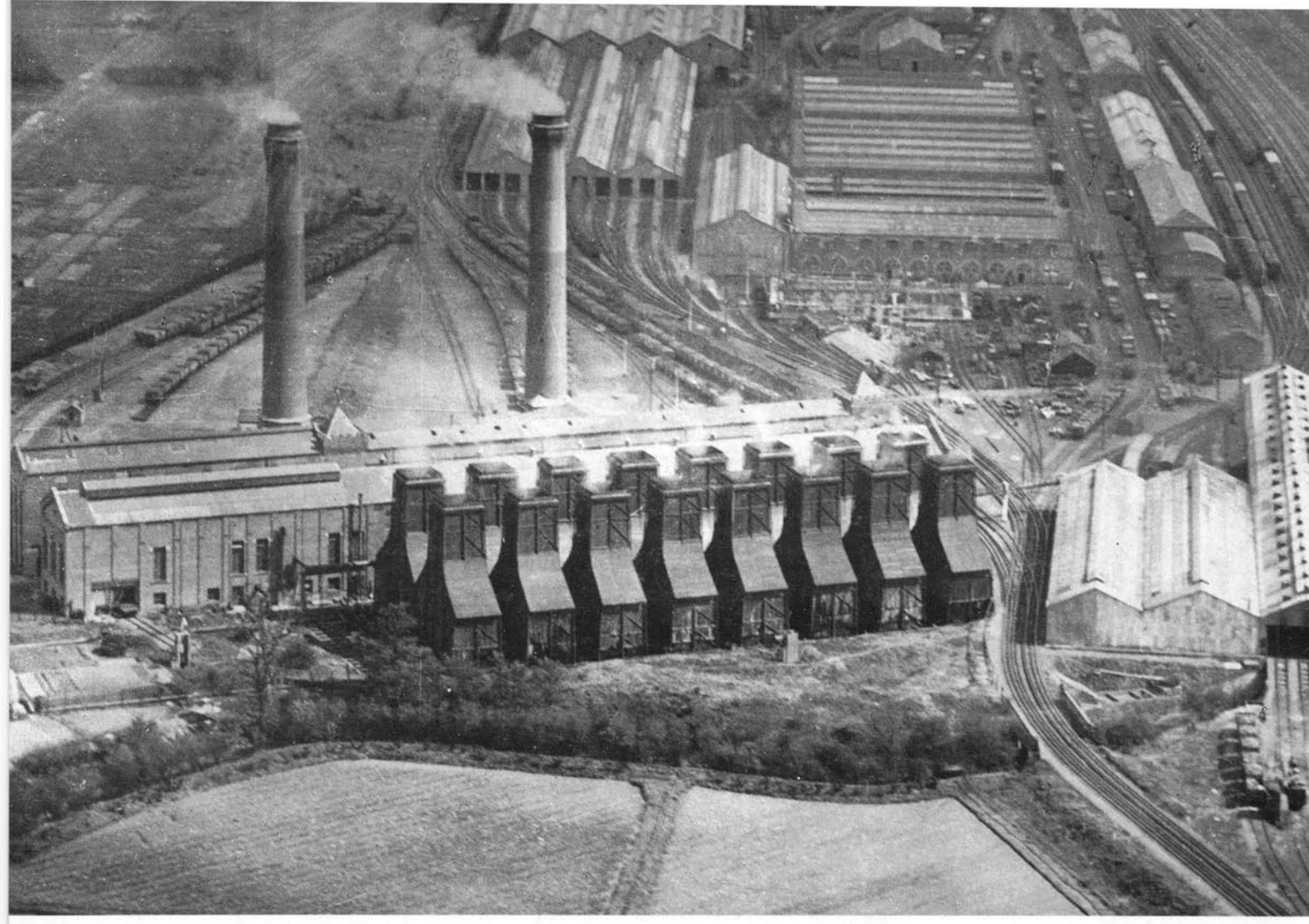
Supply was restored in 20 minutes, but it took more than an hour to get most of the trains running again, with disruption lasting for the rest of the day. Industry sources were highly critical of the Underground's generating policy. 'London Transport has two choices – find an alternative source of economic electricity to operate in parallel with Lots Road, or go on taking the risk of spasmodic shutdowns' said the *Electrical Times*. 'Its problem is that one of its power stations is specifically designed for base-load operation and the other for peak demand. It could overcome some of its difficulties if it improved the efficiency of one or two of its gas turbine sets at Greenwich and ran them continuously in parallel with Lots Road.'

Overall, these incidents demonstrated that the power supplies were not necessarily any more secure than the Grid could offer nor, it turned out, any cheaper. A review in 1983 recommended closure, and purchase of electricity from London Electricity plc. However, the present intention is that both stations be sold to a new company, Metropower, which would install new plant and operate commercially.

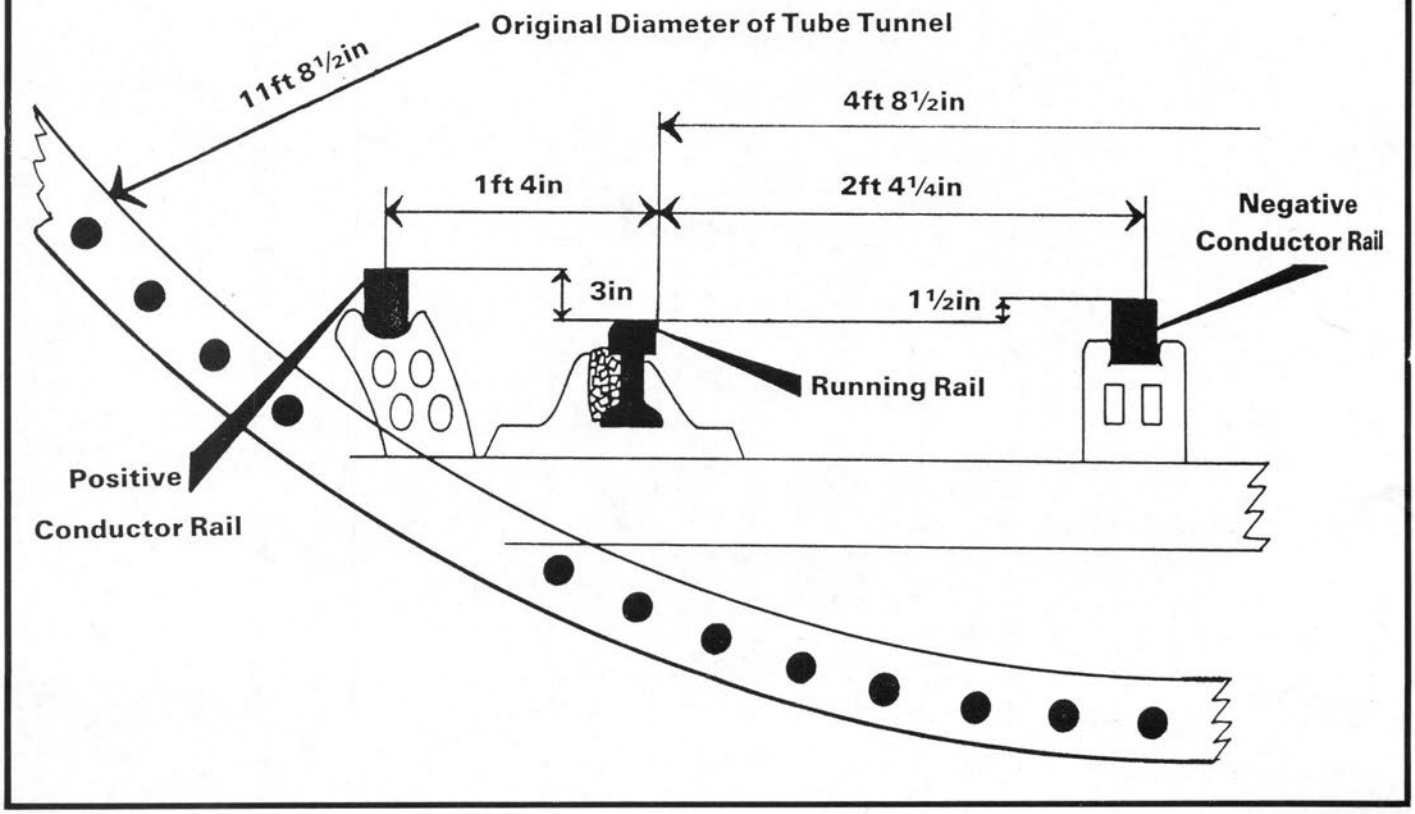
Traction supplies for the Underground are fed from Lots Road and other supply sources to switch houses located at Cromwell Curve, Coburg Street and Stockwell, where they are transformed down to 11,000V.

The function of substation equipment is to receive high tension current, step it down to the traction voltage, and rectify the supply from alternating current as generated to direct current at 630V as required by the traction motors. The current then flows through track feeders to the conductor rail,

Below:
Two of the T stock motor cars survived to become the basis of a leaf clearing train, wet leaves being the bane of operations on the Metropolitan main line every autumn. Latterly, as seen here, additional apparatus was carried on a centre flat wagon No F311. Numbered ESL118A (nearer camera) and ESL118B, they have now been retired for preservation. ***John Glover***



The London Underground Four-Rail Collection System



each length of which is bonded or welded to its neighbour to minimise voltage drop.

Over the whole system there are approximately 100 substations owned by London Underground or, in some cases, by British Rail. The substations are unmanned, and use mercury arc or silicon rectifiers. Current can be cut by the operation of relays in the substation which trip the track breakers; all stations have the facility to do this in emergency, as have train drivers when underground by pinching together the tunnel wires.

Each section of track is fed by the substation at each end (double end feed), apart from terminal sections (single end feed). Electrified sections are discrete, and separated from each other by gaps in the conductor rails; in the event of a failure a section can be neutralised without affecting nearby parts of the line. If a section in advance of an approaching train is dead, a triangle of three red warning lights warns the driver. The driver should attempt to stop short or, if this is not possible, to ensure his train is completely on the dead section. Otherwise, he will bridge the section gap and render the section in advance live, which could endanger persons on the track or otherwise exacerbate the incident which caused the current to be discharged in the first place.

Substations also provide current for ventilating fans, lifts, escalators, lighting and pumps.

The City & South London Railway used a third rail system from its opening in 1890. The current rail carrying a potential of 500V dc was laid between the rails, offset to one side to keep the pick up shoes clear of the couplings. The return current used the train wheels and the running rails. The Central London Railway adopted a true centre third 10 years later. This arrangement was not popular; another principal British exponent (who used the sleepers and ballast as well for the return) was Meccano Ltd, makers of Hornby Dublo electric trains!

In 1898, the Metropolitan Railway decided at last that it would electrify its lines, after 35 years of steam operation underground. The means by which the choice of system was made has been related in Chapter 3; here it is necessary only to record that the preference for fourth rather than third rail electrification stemmed from fears of corroding pipes and cables. The arrangement placed the positive rail outside the running rails, usually on the far side from the platform face in stations. The return rail is located centrally between the running rails. All Underground lines were built or later converted to this standard, although on the CLR (today's Central Line), the changes in curvature in the tunnels still require a limited repositioning of the positive rail to maintain clearances.

North of Queen's Park on the Bakerloo Line and on the Richmond and Wimbledon branches of the District, Underground trains run over British Rail tracks electrified on the third rail principle. The fourth rail here is effectively a dummy, provided to accommodate the shoes of Underground trains. It is bonded to the running rails, through which the current is returned via the wheels and axles of third rail BR trains.A disadvantage of using relatively low voltage dc traction current is the need for frequent substations by the lineside. The heavy currents involved and the cost of equipment were among the reasons that British Railways eventually adopted ac overhead traction supplies in the 1950s, but clearances in any case would have been insufficient in the Underground tunnels. One wonders how Messrs Ganz would have fared if given the chance! In the event, the fourth rail dc system has worked superbly well; its only real operational vices for urban applications are the susceptibility to frost and snow, and the potential safety hazard.

Left:
Power for the Underground has traditionally come from the organisation's own resources, since in the early days there was no adequate public supply from which to draw. This early aerial view is of Neasden. *Modern Transport*

Below left:
The London Underground four rail current collection system.

Below:
The break between British Rail and London Underground electrification is seen between Turnham Green and Gunnersbury, with D stock District Line trains. The receding train in the background is already occupying the junction with the BR North London Line which is nowadays electrified to third rail standards; the centre rail is therefore bonded to the running rails to carry the return current. *John Glover*

Chapter 10

Victoria Line to the Greater London Council

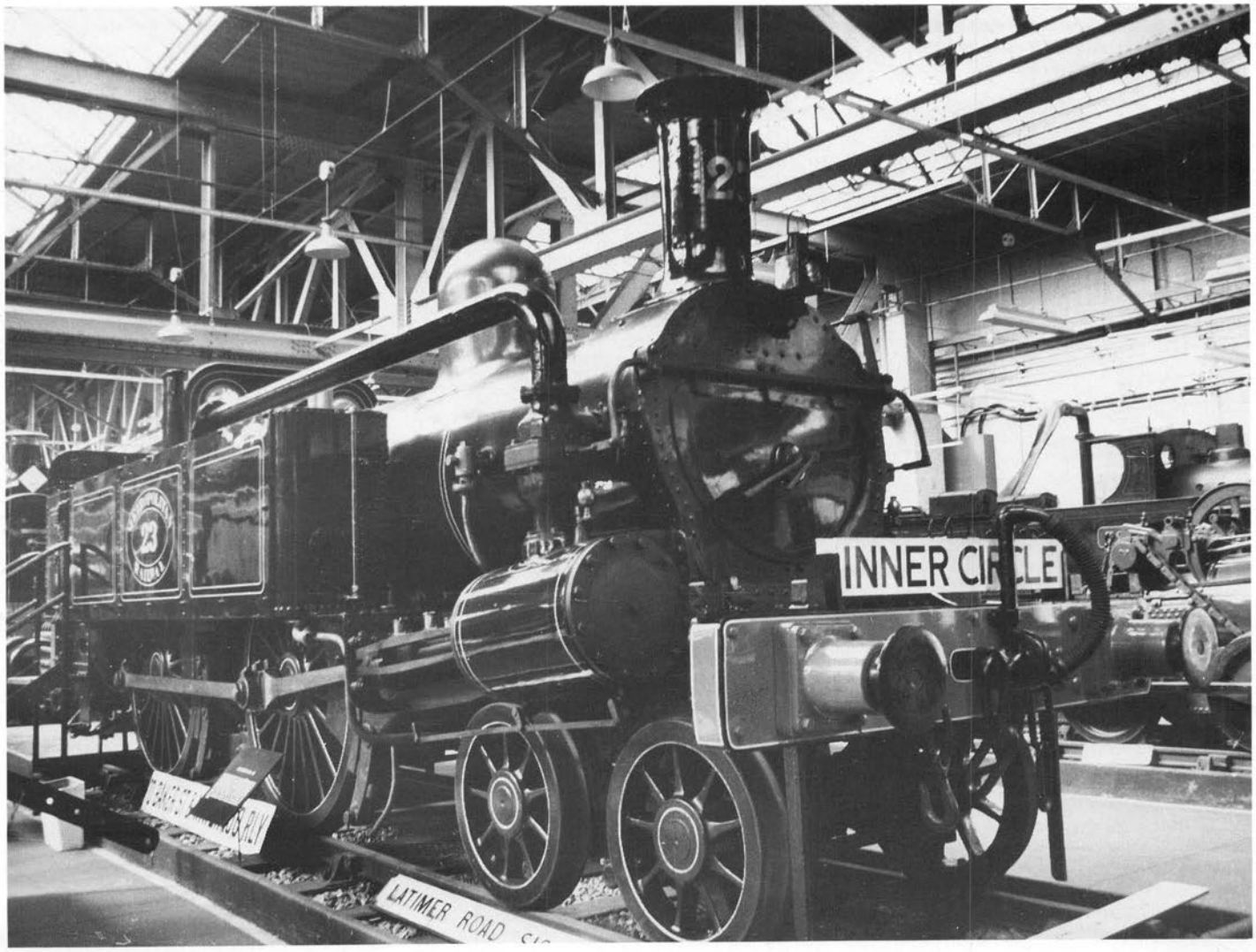
In August 1962, the Government finally approved construction of the Victoria Line northwards from Victoria to Walthamstow. Not surprisingly, London Transport was well prepared. General principles aimed at in building the new line were: an avoidance of curves sharper than 20 chains radius, stations built on a hump or saw-tooth profile (giving a falling gradient to accelerate a train leaving a station and a rising gradient approaching it), a tunnel diameter sufficient to minimise air resistance, and the line to be as straight as possible (not following street patterns above) between any two points. These ideals had to be modified as necessary to fit the line into the pattern of existing stations, tunnels and sewers.

Approval came just before a pleasant interlude to mark the Underground's Centenary in 1963. A gathering of invited transport officials from various parts of the world was shown the modern system at work and, in contrast, part of its history in review. The spectacle included a replica of the very earliest train complete with passengers in period dress, and a parade of steam and electric rolling stock spanning 100 years of operation. A plaque commemorating the centenary was placed outside Baker Street station.

This was essentially a Metropolitan Railway occasion, which was reflected in the exhibits. The parade of 15 trains took place at Neasden Depot, on 23 May. The first was Metropolitan Railway Class A locomotive No 23 and two contractors' wagons. No 23 was built in 1866 and survived in traffic until 1948, when it was withdrawn after 82 years of service. The locomotive was subsequently restored externally to its 1903 condition and placed in the (then) British Transport Museum at Clapham, from which it was removed temporarily for the celebration. The two contractors' wagons had been altered at London Transport's Ealing Common Depot to resemble the vehicles used by Smith & Knight, builders of the Paddington-Euston Square section of the original Metropolitan Railway, to convey a party of VIPs along the still unfinished line on 24 May 1862. Twenty four members of the LT Musical & Dramatic Society, attired in period costume, recreated the scene. The entourage was propelled by battery locomotive No L76.

The train was followed by Metropolitan Railway Class E 0-4-4T No L44 with milk van No 3 and four bogie coaches. No L44 was the first of the Class E locomotives to be built at Neasden Works in 1896 for the extension of the Metropolitan's services into the Chilterns. The milk van was built at the same time by the Birmingham Railway Carriage & Wagon Co, and was used in passenger trains on the outer sections of the Metropolitan until 1936, when it was transferred to the engineers' department for use as a tool van in the breakdown train. It was then painted grey and numbered 700 in the service fleet, but had been restored to the Metropolitan varnished teak livery. The four passenger coaches were built between 1898 and 1900, and were withdrawn and sold to the Bluebell Railway when the Chesham branch was electrified.

Third in the procession was electric locomotive No 1 *John Lyon* with a six coach train of 'Dreadnought' stock. Locomotive No 1



Left:
Metropolitan Railway 4-4-0T No 23 was finally retired from active service in 1948, and in the 1960s was put on display in the then British Transport Museum at Clapham. With two subsequent changes of home, it may now be seen in the London Transport Museum at Covent Garden. *John Glover*

Above:
The 1960 Cravens motor cars were converted as guinea pigs for Automatic Train Operation on the Woodford–Hainault line as a prelude to the equipment of the new Victoria Line. The ATO system is now out of use; this 1990 view shows a shuttle train entering the turnback siding at Woodford. *John Glover*

was the first of a batch of 20 which replaced the original 1905 locomotives in 1922/3. They were primarily employed on through London-Aylesbury trains as far as Rickmansworth until 1961. Most of the locomotives were withdrawn though four were then still in use for shunting.

First in the line of multiple units was a three car train of compartment T stock. The Metropolitan preferred compartment stock for its longer distance trains, due to its greater seating capacity compared with saloons. It was followed by a four car train of District F stock, by then confined to East London Line services.

Next came a three car train of P stock with Metadyne control, which had replaced early Metropolitan electric trains on the Uxbridge line just prior to World War 2. This stock was still in the process of being converted to normal resistance control with PCM equipment. To bring the surface stock story right up to date, the P stock was followed by a single unit of silver A stock, built by Cravens of Sheffield in 1961.

The inclusion of some tube stock in the parade was justified by the projection of Piccadilly Line trains to Uxbridge and the Bakerloo extension to Stanmore, a former Metropolitan appendage. Pre-1938 stock was used initially on both these extensions although it was by then fast disappearing; it was compared with the 1938 tube stock. A few of these trains were then in service on the Piccadilly, but they monopolised the Bakerloo, albeit with one trailer of pre-1938 stock in each train.

An example of the 1959 aluminium successors for the Piccadilly Line was then shown, which was to eventually oust all the pre-1938 rolling stock and, with the similar 1962 stock, most of the 1938 stock as well.

Attention next turned to Metropolitan 'F' class 0-6-2T No L52 with an engineers' train. No L52 was one of four engines which were built in 1901 for use on freight trains on the Aylesbury and Uxbridge lines. In 1937 they were transferred to engineers' duties, with No L52 being the last survivor and about to be superseded by a further arrival of 0-6-0PT locomotives from BR's Western Region. Pannier No L98 was shown on a cable laying train, with special wagons carrying drums of new power or signalling cable; one end of the cable was fixed to a convenient point by the track and the wagon pulled slowly along, paying out the cable which was supported on brackets at the side of the track.

Battery locomotive No L57 used battery power while the current in the conductor rails was switched off and the crew of the long welded rail train which it was hauling gave a demonstration using 400ft rails. When being transported from the depot to the working site the rails – up to 18 may be loaded at a time – are secured only to the middle wagon; with the ends free to move, the rails bend with the train as it goes round curves. Further lateral movement is prevented by the stanchions located along the sides of the wagon. The whole then resembles a gigantic leaf spring. The assembled guests were then shown the ease with which these rails, weighing over 4½ tons each, are handled. To load a rail length, the end is winched up and placed in a roller mounted in a hinged frame on the rear wagon. The whole train is then propelled *under* the rail, until the last 20ft overhangs the roller. This

Above:
Complex and expensive engineering work is involved in making new junctions underground. At Finsbury Park new step plate junctions built under running conditions diverted the westbound Piccadilly Line to a former Northern City Line platform. The south end step plate is seen here with the first westbound Piccadilly Line train over the new section passing in October 1965. The former tunnel alignment used until the previous day is seen on the left, but now with all temporary track supports removed. ***London Transport Museum***

is hauled on by the winch. Both loading and unloading operations were carried out by the eight man crew, the entire manoeuvre taking 10 minutes.

Also on view was the Chief Mechanical Engineer's Instruction Train. This consisted of five yellow painted ex-Bakerloo Line 1920 Cammell Laird trailers of 1920 vintage, which had been fitted out as a mobile school. These were the first production tube cars to have air doors from new. Using adapted pre-1938 motor cars as power, the train was taken from depot to depot to give instruction courses on new train equipment and refresher courses to staff responsible for maintenance work on Underground trains.

The 1960s were the age of the big holes in London, when the scars left from the bombing of the Hitler war were finally healed. The Barbican was one of the largest projects, and at the behest of the City of London, London Transport diverted the Metropolitan Line to a straighter and more southerly run between Aldersgate (now Barbican) and Moorgate. This work first entailed the moving of the Widened Lines. The 500yds of new railway were constructed by the cut and cover method, reinforced concrete being used both to enclose the line and support the Barbican development above. This work was completed in 1965.

Meanwhile, progress with Victoria Line construction by September 1966 saw the work of the shields in cutting the running and station tunnels complete. The earlier experimental work with a 'drum digger' shield and a groutless method of installing the tunnel lining had proved useful, and had been adopted for the main construction. During 35 months, this had involved 44 different tunnel drives starting from 21 shafts sunk for that purpose, the last drive breaking through an already completed tunnel section near King's Cross. There remained only a few short sections of running tunnel to be excavated without the use of a shield. The whole of the line is underground, apart from the depot at Northumberland Park.

At Victoria, the ticket hall for both the Victoria and District Lines was sited under the existing forecourt of the main line station. The Victoria Line's platforms lie 59ft below; beyond, to the south, there were four sidings, two of which were later continued to form the Brixton extension.

The British Rail station was largely built over a filled in canal basin. It was necessary to stabilise part of the thick stratum of water bearing sand and gravel to permit deep mining beneath it, by injecting chemicals through a large number of narrow pipes driven 35ft into the gravel over the affected area to harden it.

A large part of the land south of Victoria down to the Thames was ancient low drainage ground, referred to as early as the year 951 as Bullinga Fen, into which the Tyburn is thought to have drained. This once open river is now non-existent or reduced to a subterranean trickle, but it is roughly beneath and along its former line that the Victoria Line now runs northward to cross deep under the Mall opposite the Queen Victoria Memorial, and under Green Park to the station of that name.

The Victoria Line platforms lie just to the west and above the Piccadilly Line station, connected to the latter by a subway, and to the new ticket hall by a bank of three escalators. From Green Park the line, having crossed the Piccadilly Line roughly at right angles, runs north again beneath Mayfair to Oxford Circus for interchange with the Bakerloo and Central Lines. It has climbed steadily to follow the land contour rising from the Thames, but is still 70ft below the surface.

Tunnelling here was a major job, as the tubes swing out to flank the Bakerloo on both sides, thus providing the ideal cross-platform interchange. Building this composite station below ground took longer than any other station building along the line, and the only visible surface evidence of the day and night activity going on below was the 6,600 ton steel 'umbrella' bridging the whole of Oxford Circus itself. This carried all the street traffic 3ft 6in above its former level. Below the Circus is a large circular ticket hall and below that are five new escalator shafts, separate Victoria Line station tunnels, subways, passages and concourses linking it all together, including the Central Line at right angles.

At Oxford Circus, the engineers were faced with an unusually intricate task in underpinning part of Peter Robinson's store and transferring the load from its foundations to the southbound Victoria Line station tunnel. Below the third basement, the building's columns were underpinned with massive prestressed concrete, the bottom layer cast in weaker concrete. Later, the tunnel shield drove beneath a saddle shape cut in the base of the concrete, and finally the station tunnel segments were expanded by jacks to produce the necessary stresses in the ground.

The line continues north from Oxford Circus station, cutting diagonally across a grid pattern of streets above to Warren Street. Along the route the northbound tunnel was made to roll over the southbound and continues thus to the station 90ft below ground level. New escalators connect the Victoria Line platforms with the existing escalators to the Northern Line at an intermediate landing; there is no low level connection between the two. Beyond Warren Street the

tunnels swing north east to Euston, another deep level underground complex which provides interconnection between the British Rail terminal station above, and both the City (via Bank) and West End branches of the Northern Line. The reversed tunnels emerge into a combined, one level, double-island Euston station, with the northbound tunnel on the right and the southbound tunnel on the left. Across their respective platforms are the northbound City branch trains to Camden Town and the southbound City trains to King's Cross. These platforms are unusual in that trains run in opposite directions on each side of them. Pedestrian subways give access to Northern Line West End branch trains.

The line rises gradually then to King's Cross, a congested maze of tunnels between which the new line and its platforms had to be threaded. A complicating factor was the brick arch of the Midland curve nowadays used by Thameslink services. This had to be removed and replaced by a new structure of reinforced concrete so as to provide room for a subway. Lower down, part of the Victoria Line's station tunnel crown is positioned a few feet below the foundations of the Midland curve and the Circle Line tunnels. As these are in brick with either no inverts or inverts of varying depth, an extra robust tunnel shield was employed here to exert great pressure in the ground at its working face during excavation. Finally, extra heavy steel tunnel lining was expanded against the ground by powerful jacks and steel wedges, so as to maintain at all times equilibrium of ground stresses and prevent settlement of the brick tunnel foundations.

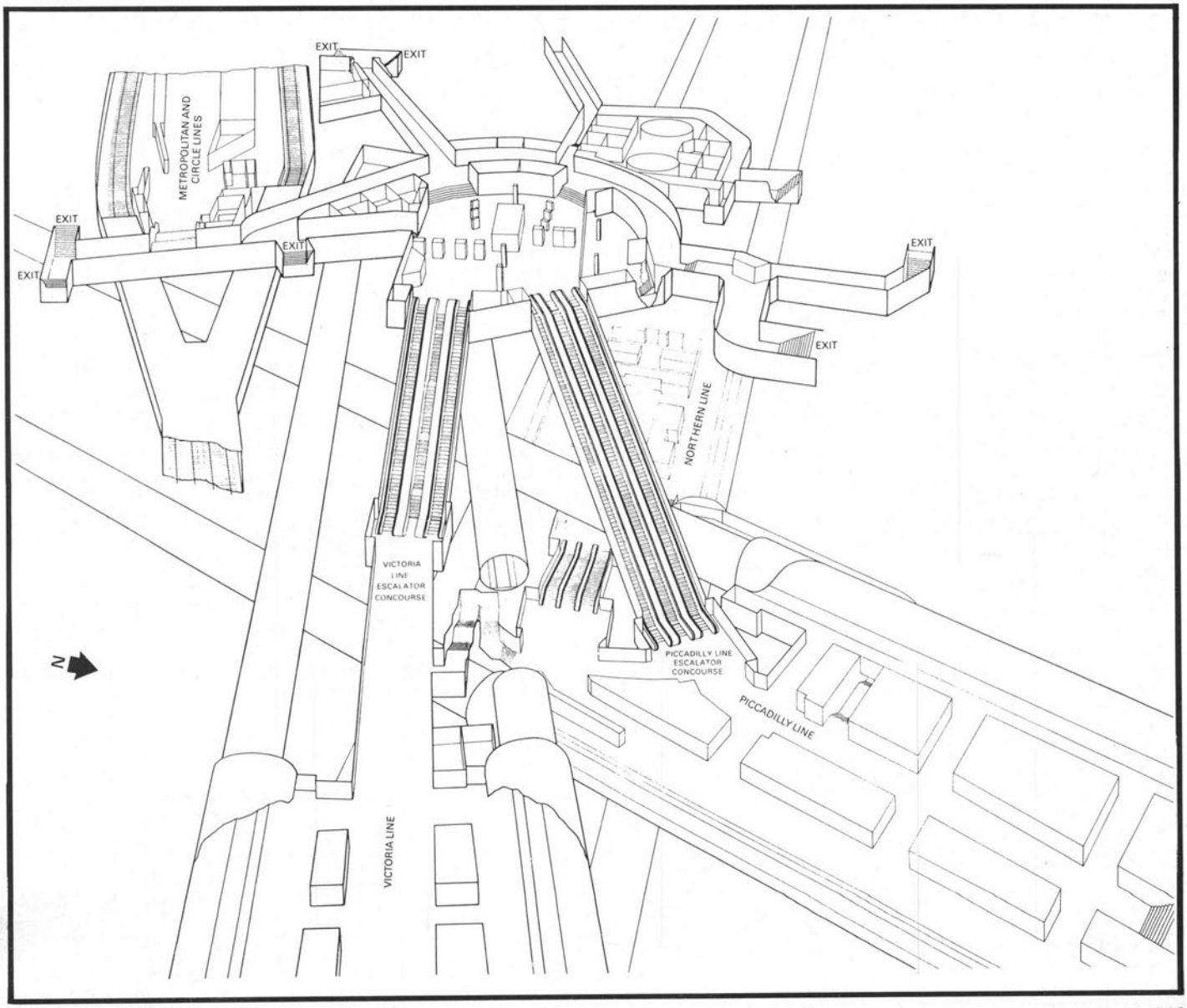
King's Cross is the only 'four-tier' station on the Underground system. The whole of the work here, including line and station construction and equipping, took roughly 3½ years. The work included the excavation of two horizontal tunnels, one 12ft and one 15ft in diameter, both of them for draught relief and each about 75ft long. They connect the Piccadilly and Victoria Line stations to a new vertical air shaft. The Victoria Line is above the other tube lines but below the Metropolitan. At ticket hall level, the Fleet River sewer had to be diverted and recontained in a new concrete ring and box construction, which at one point nearly obtrudes into the ticket hall. All this work had to thread between existing tunnels and shafts in deep earth, without any visual means of pinpointing obstructions as would be the case above ground.

Beyond King's Cross the tunnels curve and ascend to follow the rising ground to Highbury and Islington, providing interchange there with what was the Northern City Line and was later transformed into part of the Great Northern Electric Inner Suburban.

About half way along this 1½-mile stretch, the running tunnels resume their normal positions by the southbound crossing over the northbound. The old Highbury station was rebuilt extensively both above and below ground, and a joint station building constructed to serve also BR's North London Line. The northbound Northern Line platform became the Victoria Line southbound; the other pair of lines use new tunnels and platforms. The result is a very positive improvement to interchange facilities.

The running tunnels continue a further mile to Finsbury Park, where the old Great Northern & City Line and the Piccadilly Line stations, opened in 1904 and 1906 respectively, were utterly transformed. The below ground works here involved building step-plate junctions around tunnels through which trains continued to run, building underground crossovers, and ultimately

Below:
King's Cross Underground stations three dimensional representation, 1987.



In mid afternoon, trains leave depots all over the system preparatory to taking up the enhanced evening peak services. A pair of Victoria Line trains of 1967 stock leave their depot at Northumberland Park, soon to be followed by most of the rest of the trains in the picture. ***John Glover***

44
45
46
47
410

switching trains from old lines to new. This resulted in southbound Piccadilly and Victoria Line trains using the old GN&C former terminal platforms, while the northbound trains of both lines used the former Piccadilly station. Again, the result was cross platform interchange between a pair of lines in both directions of travel, with further BR services available 'upstairs'.

Descending steadily now to Seven Sisters, the 1.96 miles of this stretch became the longest underground distance on the system between adjacent stations. This is the interchange with BR electric services to Enfield Town and Broxbourne. The station has three platforms, the centre one leaving the eastbound line just west of the station, and subsequently offering access to Northumberland Park depot. The outer ones are the east and westbound tracks, the latter receiving the exit road from the depot a little to the east of Seven Sisters. The pair of depot tracks swing northward in tunnel for about ½-mile, coming to the surface alongside the British Rail Lea Valley main line. The extensive site was built to cater for the complete fleet of 39½ trains of 1967 stock which were constructed, though a handful of trains are stabled overnight in the underground sidings at Walthamstow and Brixton.

The tube running tunnels continue north east, descending to Tottenham Hale where Lea Valley rail connections are made for passengers. The line then rises again and swings eastward to continue a mile to Blackhorse Road (interchange of a sort with the Tottenham and Hampstead BR line), and to its terminus below the British Rail Chingford branch station of Walthamstow Central.

Beyond Finsbury Park, the Victoria Line broke virgin ground for the Underground; from Tottenham it followed beneath the old road over the River Lea and then through misty marsh and reservoir country on the route to Epping Forest. The Great Eastern Railway colonised Walthamstow and other parts of north east London with steam trains from the 1870s on, but the Victoria Line had no such development aspirations. Instead it aimed to attract traffic from this built up area and beyond through interchange with the surface railways.

All this northern end of the line's running tunnels were driven through blue clay, as was part of the southern end, and excavated by shield and rotary cutters. Tunnelling began from a site in Ferry Lane, Tottenham, where a 46ft shaft was sunk. From its foot a horizontal shaft was driven a short distance to the line of the running tunnel, where a chamber was excavated to allow the running tunnel shield to be assembled. A vertical shafts along the route was utilised subsequently to house one of the nine substations (for the initial line), and a fan house. For the larger diameter station tunnels and for a crossover at Walthamstow the tunnel lining is in cast iron segment form, and the running tunnels in concrete segments. Much of the southern end was lined with cast iron segments, some of the new design similar to to those used in the experimental tunnel, but for water bearing and other difficult ground, conventional bolted cast iron segments were used.

Furnishing of the line was according to the practice of the time, and used Jarrah wood sleepers concreted into the road bed to support bullhead rail, long welded into 300ft lengths at Northumberland Park and fed into the tunnels from there. A narrow concrete shelf was affixed to the tunnel walls at platform height to contain the noise of steel wheel on steel rail. The station decor was plain to today's eyes with grey tiling everywhere, relieved only by a motif illustrative of each station. While the maze at Warren Street and the cameo of Queen Victoria were apt and well chosen, the association of seven trees with Seven Sisters was tenuous, while the use of the Doric Arch, then so recently demolished, to denote Euston seemed almost perverse.

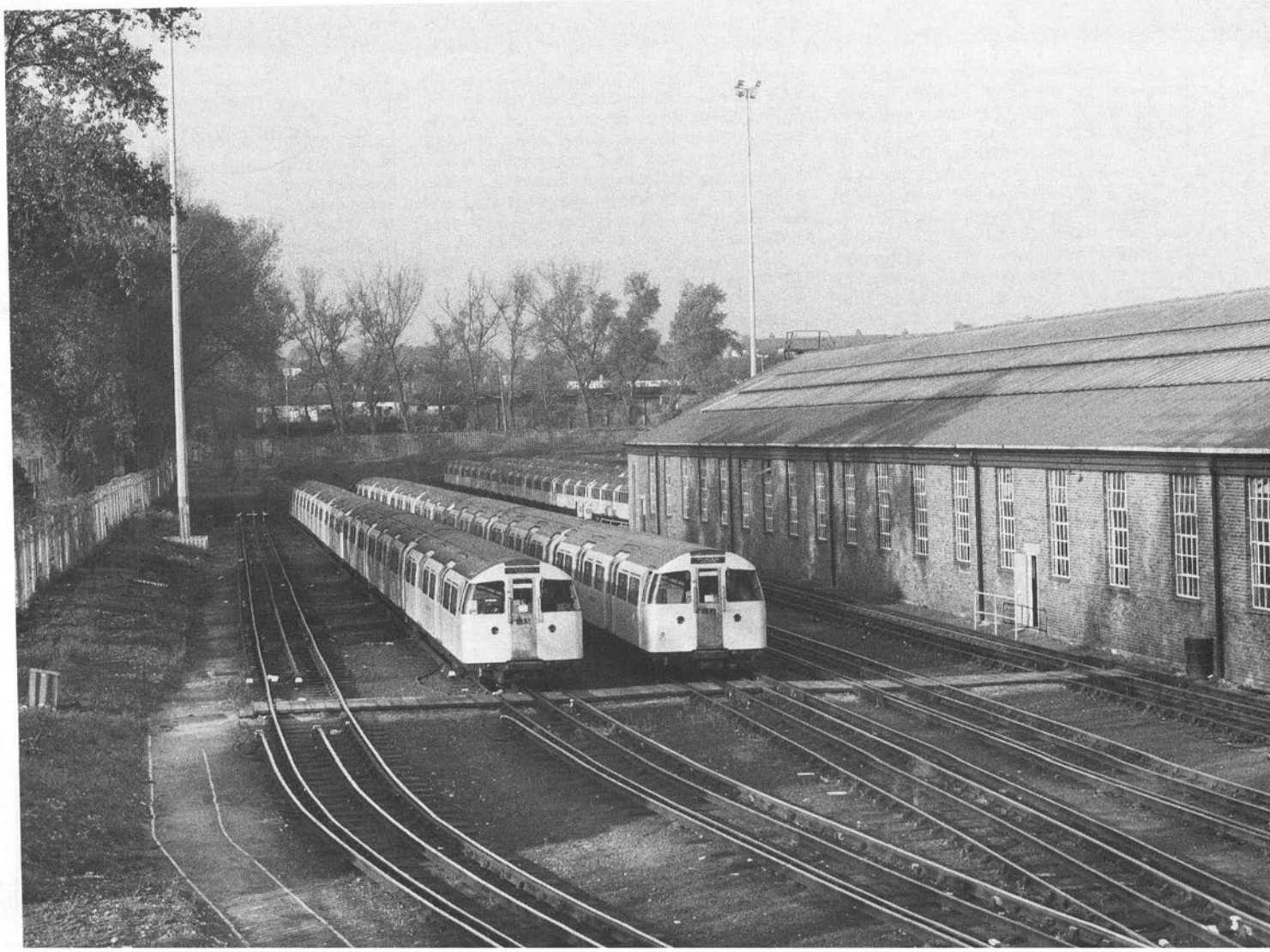
The opportunity to construct a brand new line was unique for London Transport, and the decision was made to go for full automation as represented by Automatic Train Operation (ATO). Under non-automatic conditions, the train driver applies power to the traction motors, cuts it off or applies the brakes as dictated by the track and signalling conditions. With ATO, the human element is almost completely removed, and the train is under a dual system of control. The most important system safeguards the train by employing an inductive pick up to receive continuous coded signals from the track, with equipment on board the train to interpret and act upon these signals. No code means no movement. This is the safety signalling system. The other, the 'driver command' system, receives impulses at predetermined spots along the track. These cause power to be applied, or cut off for coasting and the brakes to be applied; a series of commands controls the stopping of trains in the station platforms.

In more detail, the safety signalling codes are formed by current from the mains supply. In a relay room this current is interrupted into codes electronically or by the action of pendulums operating electronic switches. One pendulum, swinging 180 times a minute, produces a '180' impulse code. A faster swinging pendulum produces a '270' impulse code. This coded signal cur-

Below left:
Northumberland Park depot is connected to the system by a branch a mile long from Seven Sisters station. The top of the ramp down is just visible in this view of 1967 stock trains arriving and departing simultaneously in 1982. ***John Glover***

Right:
Internally, Victoria Line trains showed little difference from their predecessors. A half life refurbishment programme currently in progress is intended to enable them to more nearly meet today's expectations. ***John Glover***

Below:
The 1972 Mk I stock hastily procured for the Northern Line is a manual seven car version of the Victoria Line stock, and a few of these non-ATO fitted trains are now in Victoria Line service as centre vehicles. The rest remain on the Northern Line, and two trains are seen here alongside Morden depot. ***John Glover***



Above:
The 'big tube' Northern City Line eventually found its role in life as part of British Rail's Great Northern suburban electrification, and was transferred to BR control after Underground trains were withdrawn in October 1975. Dual voltage No 313.048 arrives at Old Street with a Hertford North–Moorgate service in 1989. ***John Glover***

rent is fed into the running rails (which are sectionalised by insulated joints), passing along one rail, through the wheels and axles at the front of the train, and then back by the other rail. Coils mounted on the front of the train are affected by the code in the rails, and a signal is passed to the train equipment, amplified, and recognised by the electrical circuits responding only to an appropriate code frequency. A '180' code indicates that the train is safe to proceed at up to 25mile/h provided current is not being fed to the traction motors. It is made to conform to this speed by a mechanical governor, actuated by the train wheels, that ensures that this speed is not exceeded for as long as the '180' code is being transmitted. A '270' code allows the train to run under power at up to 25mile/h; a '420' code indicates that a train may proceed at full speed. While one of these safety signal codes is being received by the train, current from the train battery holds an emergency brake valve in the closed position. If the code should cease to be picked up by the train, the current would be cut off from the brake valve and an emergency application of the brakes would result.

The other part of ATO is described as 'automatic driver signal command'. These commands are also derived from current fed into the track, but in this case only in short 10ft sections of running rail. An electronic generator produces current of a special frequency which is obeyed by equipment on the trains. Current at 100Hz equals 1mile/h permitted to the trains; at 1,000Hz it equals 10mile/h, at 3,000Hz 30mile/h, and so on. One of the main purposes of the driver command equipment is to apply the brakes to stop the train accurately in the station, and careful calculations are made to enable command spots to be positioned along the track at the right places. This, incidentally, is one of the major difficulties in applying ATO to lines in the open, since rail conditions and hence braking requirements vary according to the weather.

The command signal frequency, picked up by an inductive coil on the train, is counted by an electronic counter and the frequency compared with the frequency produced by a speedometer generator on the train. Electrical circuits regulate the train's progress to the correct predetermined speed required, by causing brake application or release. This occurs at station approaches, but there are also command spots along the line where the train has reached sufficient speed to allow it to coast to the next station. The frequency at these spots, 15,000Hz, is outside the speed range of the train, and is recognised by a special circuit which issues a command to cut the motors.

For example, in operation a train may have left one station, but some distance ahead another train is standing in the next station. Between the trains would be a '420' signal coded section (speed unrestricted), followed by the restrictive '270' and then '180' coded sections. Ahead of that a 'no code' section protects the train in advance. When the advance train clears the station to leave an unimpeded run to the following train, the latter would be able to proceed under '420' code to a 15,000Hz command spot, cutting the flow of current to the motors and causing the train to coast to the first of the command spots at the approach to the station. Here it would pass successively command spots at 3,000, 2,500, 2,000, 1,500 and 1,000Hz, each producing a 5mile/h speed reduction through to a final halt. This would be at a predetermined platform stop, which the train would approach and stop at in a gradual braking curve, regardless of its load at the time.

All that is left for the driver, or rather 'train operator' to do is to initiate starting the train by depressing simultaneously a pair of buttons on the control desk, and operating the passenger doors. (Manual driving can be performed in the case of ATO failure.) For this he was deemed to need a clear view back along the length of his train, supplemented by closed circuit television cameras to view from the rear. This meant straight, or nearly straight, platforms, a condition which could not be provided on the existing system. The Victoria Line was the

first application of one person operation on the Underground, which was a welcome gain in productivity. But overall, not using the driver as a skilled man seemed to represent rather a waste of talent.

The Victoria Line is now alone in being ATO operated, the Woodford-Hainault 'guinea pig' service having reverted to normal one person operation. The only other installations were experiments on the District Line in the early 1960s.

Work on extending the Victoria Line south to Brixton began in 1967, shortly before the main section to the north was opened in sections in 1968 and 1969. Twin tunnels driven south led to Pimlico (built at the behest of the local authority and the only station without interchange to another railway), and on under the Thames. Crossing at its lowest point 24ft below the river bed, the line reaches Vauxhall, for the Southern Region. The familiar cross platform arrangements were provided once again at Stockwell with the Northern Line. Brixton station is the terminus, serving a particularly densely populated area. The finished product, largely completed in July 1971 but with the opening of Pimlico delayed until September 1972 brought Brixton and Walthamstow, 14 miles apart, within 32 minutes of each other. It was indeed a *tour de force*, and in its time was hailed as the world's most highly automated underground railway.

The 1960s had not been good years for London Transport, which found itself sinking slowly into deficit despite the demands of the 1962 Act for the undertaking to pay its way. This was compounded by growing staff shortages and industrial problems. The Greater London Council had been created in 1963, and was complaining that if it was to be the strategic planning authority for London, it should also have control of London Transport. In their 'Transport in London' White Paper, the Labour Government agreed, and determined to hand the undertaking over to the GLC. The hope was expressed that this would offer a comprehensive approach to the efficient planning, provision, operation and financing of transport in London. There would be the 'closest possible harmony' with the wider aspects of land use and development. A new London Transport Executive was set up under the control of the GLC in 1970, 'for the purposes of implementing the policies which it is the duty of the Council to develop'. The GLC therefore became responsible for appointing the members of the Executive, establishing their general policies, and approving their budgets and fares policies. The Government heaved a sigh of relief; it was very much 'over to you'.

While the Victoria Line was being built, the question was inevitably 'what next'? Office space in central London was being expanded, and it was thought that further travel demands would arise. By the end of 1965, Parliamentary powers to extend the Aldwych branch to Waterloo had been obtained, while proposals for a new 'Fleet Line' saw the light of day.

Both in the inter-war period and the 1950s, it had seemed as if the growth in demand for travel by the Underground network would go on expanding for ever. Yet the growth was faltering. The Location of Offices Bureau did its best to encourage firms to move out of London, and by the time that the London Rail Study reported in 1974, the extensive plans and optimistic proposals for capacity increases had to be judged against a background of static traffic levels. The growth that there was began to be taken up in the outer suburbs, with centres such as Croydon, Watford and Uxbridge bearing the brunt. And in these, there was little or no traffic for the Underground.

One development represented a loss to the Underground network. What had become a detached part of the Northern Line north of Moorgate on the frustrated expansion of the 1930s finally had its fate determined. From autumn 1975, Underground trains were withdrawn from the Moorgate to Finsbury Park (latterly Drayton Park) section, and the line was handed over to British Rail's Great Northern Electrics. It had always been a difficult part of the Underground to work; for instance, to transfer trains to Acton Works, it was latterly necessary to drag them via a spur up to British Rail at Finsbury Park, haul them down to King's Cross and the Widened Lines, and back onto the Underground. Transfer was then via the Circle, Earl's Court and Hammersmith!

British Rail's new services started late in 1976, connecting Moorgate to Welwyn Garden City and Hertford North. The Class 313 trains were dual voltage, using 25kV ac south to Drayton Park where they entered the tunnel section. While standing in the platform, the pantograph was lowered and the current pick up was made from the 750V dc third rail instead. A dead overhead wire section is installed in the tunnel as far as Highbury in case the pantograph does not lock down!

Great Northern services on the Widened Lines were withdrawn. These tracks were later transferred to British Rail for the use first of 25kV ac Midland Suburban Electrics to Moorgate, and subsequently the Thameslink service through the Snow Hill tunnel between Farringdon and Blackfriars. This brought the third rail through from the Southern Region to Farringdon in 1988, where a similar pantograph ceremony takes place.

The Bakerloo Line south from Baker Street had long been the most overcrowded of the Underground lines in central London, and relief was planned to enhance its capacity by eliminating the junction of the Queen's Park and Stanmore lines at Baker Street. The Stanmore branch would henceforth be connected to a new 'Fleet' Line, running via Bond Street and Green Park to Charing Cross (Stage I), on to Aldwych, Ludgate Circus, Cannon Street and Fenchurch Street (Stage II), and finally to Surrey Docks (now Surrey Quays), New Cross and Lewisham, with a branch from Surrey Docks to New

Left:
Construction of what was then to be called the Fleet Line required the separation of the Stanmore branch from the Bakerloo Line at Baker Street. A step plate junction was constructed around the northbound Bakerloo Line tunnel, shown here before dismantling of the latter started. The vertical beams were a temporary measure to support a safety fence to close off the working site from the newly exposed running line. *London Transport Museum*

Cross Gate (Stage III). Or such was the plan, amended many times since, especially in the vexed question as to the direction the line should take east of the City of London.

For the main problem was that traffic on the Underground system was falling, quite fast. The go-ahead for Stage I was obtained in 1971, with work starting the following year. When Stage I was opened well behind time in 1979 and two years after the Queen's Silver Jubilee for which the line name was changed, the need for the line to exist at all was being questioned, as were most certainly the extensions. Consequently, the cost of further construction which would largely parallel the District Line was not favoured, while a new concept in the River Line arose for the further eastern projection. The 1974 London Rail Study had pronounced in favour of an underground link binding together the north and south banks of the Thames to be tagged onto the Fleet Line by a junction at Fenchurch Street. The line would cross beneath the Thames no less than four times, with a terminus at Thamesmead. However, without Stage II, discussion of Stage III alternatives foundered; they came to be resurrected in totally different circumstances several years later.

Separating the Bakerloo Line branches at Baker Street, deep underground, so that each branch would have its own two platforms but all four interconnecting in the same station, presented problems. Two new step plate junctions were built, one just to the south of Baker Street and one 1,000ft to the north about 50ft below Marylebone main line station. Additionally, a new station tunnel and a new running tunnel were driven on the north side of the existing Stanmore platform. The end result is that this latter now became the southbound Jubilee Line platform, and the new station tunnel and platform became the northbound Jubilee tunnel and platform. To achieve this the northbound Jubilee running tunnel had to be made to roll over the southbound tunnel both north and south of the station, which resulted in the new line's running in the station being the reverse of that of the Bakerloo Line! Readers are invited to examine the diagram and work this out for themselves, and also perhaps to ponder on how a simple design concept in terms of passenger convenience can be met through an ingenious and complex, but thoroughly elegant, solution.

At depths of between 70ft and 140ft, the new twin tunnels run south and east for 2½ miles. At Bond Street, only 7ft separates the station tunnel from the Post Office Railway's driverless trains above, an indication of how existing services and building foundations can constrain the future provision of new lines and facilities under the capital. Bond Street ticket hall was much enlarged, and as at Oxford Circus some years previously an umbrella raft was erected over the roadway to allow work to proceed more or less unhindered. The line then veers south east to Green Park, where it passes beneath both the Piccadilly and Victoria Lines to reach the new station platforms, east of and below the latter's station. There is interconnection between all three lines, aided by new passages and escalators, but geography here as elsewhere on the Jubilee Line has imposed limitations on how convenient these interchanges can be made.

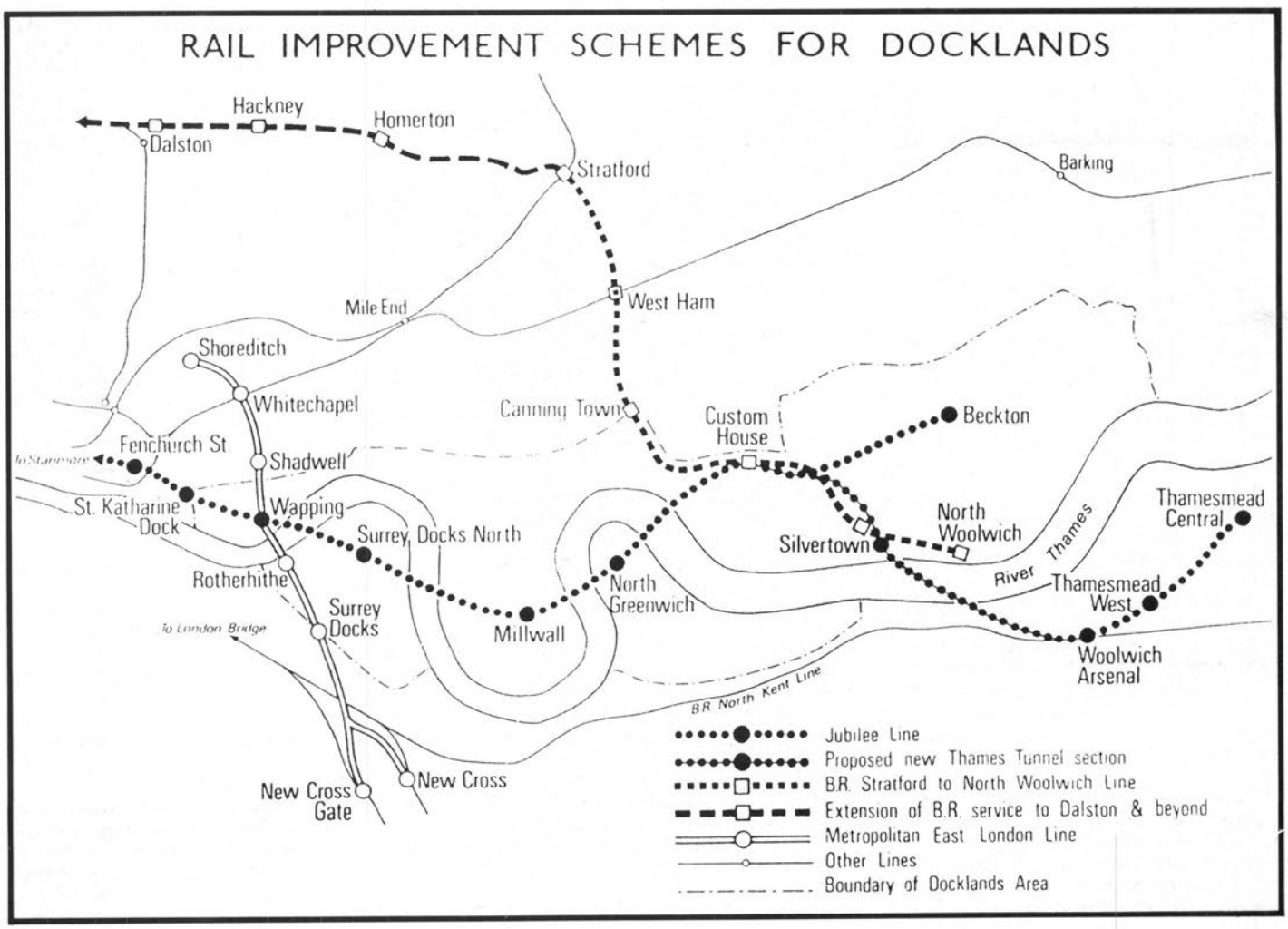
Reconstructing the Northern Line station at Strand and the Bakerloo Line station at Trafalgar Square resulted in the disappearance of both those names and the appellation Charing Cross being applied to them as well as the new Jubilee Line terminus. (The existing Charing Cross station was renamed Embankment.) During the building work, Strand had to be closed, as a shaft for a bank of three new escalators was to be driven diagonally through the former lift shafts. Here too an umbrella was constructed in the BR station forecourt, after carefully underpinning the 300 ton Queen Eleanor memorial.

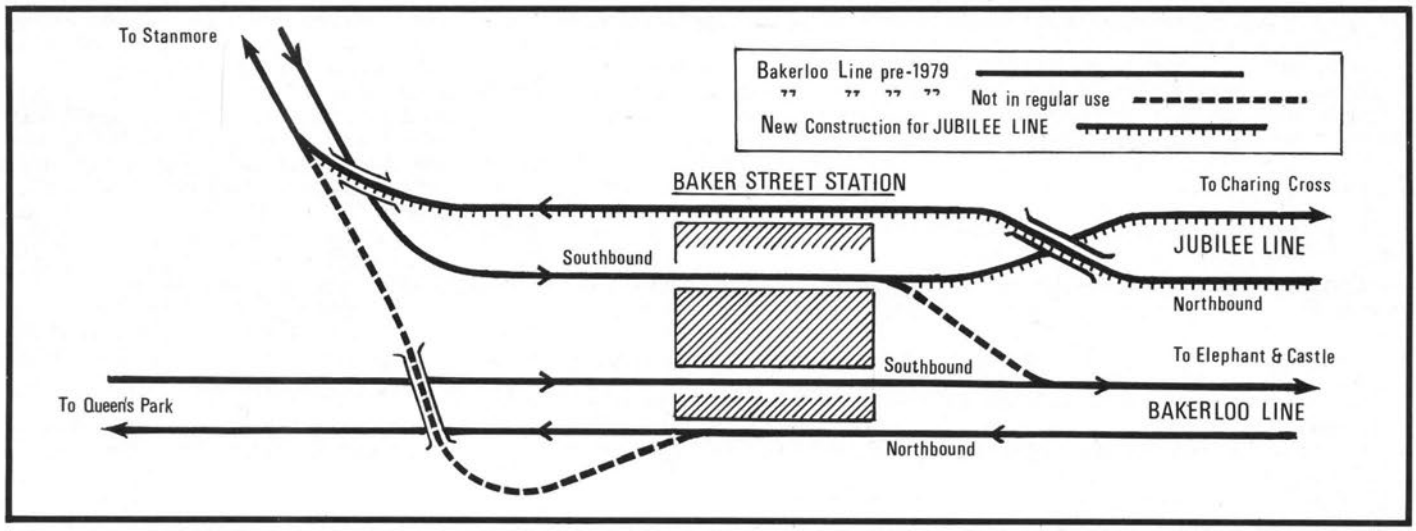
Tunnelling followed established practice, but a laser beam was used to assist in setting

Above right:
Baker Street, Bakerloo and Jubilee Lines, after reconstruction in 1979.

Right:
A train of 1972 Mk II is ready to depart from the Charing Cross terminus of the Jubilee Line; the generally bright and pleasing appearance of this part of the station, opened in 1979, is apparent. Platform lengths are unusually ample.
John Glover

Below:
Rail improvement schemes for Docklands, 1977.





out the tunnels and keeping the tunnelling machines on course. A beam from a point in the rear of the workings is directed onto a mark at the face, where it appears as a spot of light and thus acts as a guide for the shield operator. The line continues on in over run tunnels for another 0.3 mile, ending just north of Waterloo Bridge.

The new part of the line was constructed with Automatic Train Operation in mind, but it was One Person Operation which was adopted eventually without the complications of ATO. From its opening by HRH the Prince of Wales on 30 April 1979, the line was operated by the 1972 Mk II stock, although subsequent reshuffles and new building led to its being equipped with the much superior 1983 stock. A consequence of the divorce from the Bakerloo was the depriving of that line of its maintenance depot, and a new facility was built at Stonebridge Park. The connection between the lines at Baker Street remains, though not in normal passenger use.

In 1929, grass runways for test flying were established at a site in west London. During World War 2 the aerodrome was chosen as a base for RAF long range transport flights, and by 1945 military aircraft were taking off from its sole runway. Civilian airlines arrived in 1946, and LHR or London Heathrow was officially opened in May of that year. At that time, with an annual passenger usage of under two million, it was said that an Underground link would probably be built within six years. However, false prophets in a 1956 study concluded that the expected passenger use would not justify the cost, and that the proposed M4 motorway would suffice.

After a skirmish between British Rail and London Transport interests had finally been resolved in favour of the latter, and with air passenger traffic predicted to reach 20 million a year in 1973, the go ahead for the Piccadilly Line extension was received in 1971. Few pretended that the Underground was the perfect solution for Heathrow; the Piccadilly is an integral part of the Underground, carrying commuters to and from central London and passengers of many sorts within London. It is thus an ordinary urban railway and accordingly passengers have to handle their own luggage up and down escalators and in and out of trains. Extra floor space for luggage was provided in the 1973 tube stock with which the Piccadilly Line was re-equipped, but with lim-

JUBILEE LINE
PLATFORM 4
THIS STATION
CHARING CROSS
GREEN PARK
BOND STREET
BAKER STREET
ST JOHN'S WOOD
SWISS COTTAGE
FINCHLEY ROAD
WEST HAMPSTEAD
KILBURN
WILLESDEN GREEN
DOLLIS HILL
NEASDEN
WEMBLEY PARK
KINGSBURY
QUEENSBURY
CANONS PARK
STANMORE
STANMORE
WAY OUT
TRAFALGAR SQUARE
& BAKERLOO LINE

1173

ited success when it came to impeding other passengers.

However, there were also advantages. One was that the scheduled service needed to be very frequent to cater for the combined needs of airport users and others; another gain was the multiplicity of destinations available directly or by a single change of train. King's Cross proved to be the single most popular destination.

The Piccadilly Line runs in the open between Baron's Court and Hounslow West, from which point it was extended mainly in cut and cover tunnel 1.81 miles to Hatton Cross (save only to emerge into the open for a short distance to cross the River Crane), and then in deep level tube tunnels under the runways for the further 1.37 miles to Terminals 1, 2, 3. The station is built in a reinforced box nearly 400ft long and 75ft wide, right in the centre of the airport. Escalators join the platforms 44ft below ground to a subsurface concourse, from which there is direct access via subways built by the British Airports Authority to the three terminals. A further exit is to the bus station immediately above. Her Majesty the Queen formally opened the Heathrow extension on 16 December 1977.

A modernisation scheme for the East London Line, which sorely needed it, was started in 1979. In the pre-Docklands boom days, traffic levels were low and declining, but the condition of the stations was deplorable. Refurbishment was later to become a major programme on the principal Underground stations; that on the East London was confined mostly to installation of fluorescent lighting, platform resurfacing, repainting and minor works, together with the plastic faced panels to cover up the grimy platform walls. At Wapping, the panels tell the story of the Thames Tunnel. However, Shadwell was provided with lifts to replace stairs, and a new surface building. Wapping got new lifts, Rotherhithe's rebuilding featured a pair of escalators, and Surrey Docks also got a complete new surface station. At Whitechapel, the ticket hall was renewed.

The London Transport Museum was opened in the former Covent Garden flower market building in 1980, replacing the display at Syon Park and at Clapham before that. Major as well as minor exhibits, many of which are mentioned in this book, are displayed here permanently.

Travelling beyond Northwood on the Metropolitan or the far side of Woodford on the Central, a curious change took place. For this was territory outside Greater London and hence beyond the writ of the GLC.

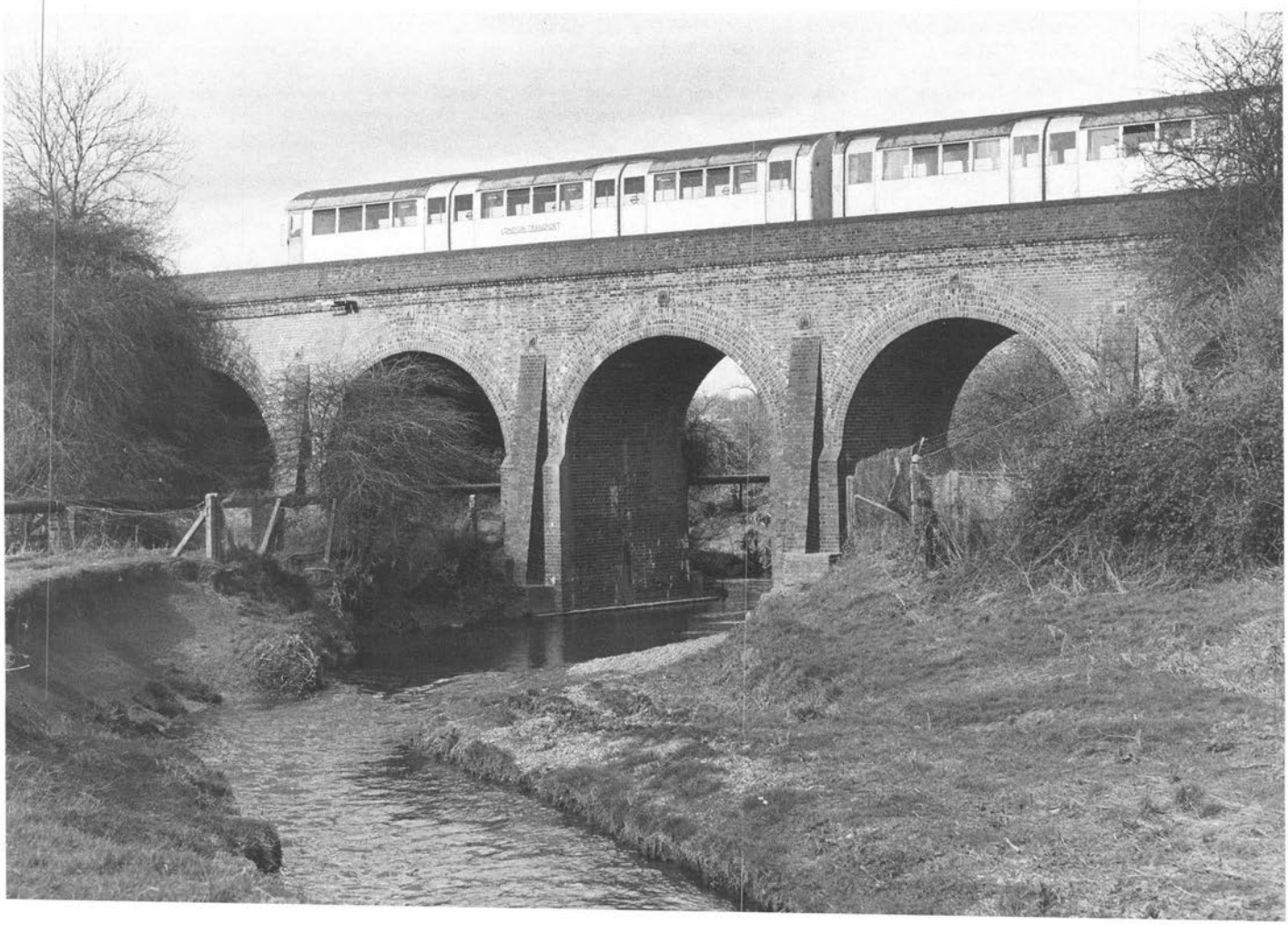
It cannot be said that the 1969 Act ignored this spread of the Underground beyond the GLC boundaries, since that authority had to approve the fares charged, but the financial consequences were not perhaps appreciated. This was peripheral territory, of marginal profitability at the best of times, with both the Watford and Ongar branches having been less than successful ventures financially. 'The Counties shall pay for these services if they want them', said the GLC. It turned out that the Counties did, but politely declined to contribute, arguing quite reasonably that it was a mere historical quirk that such services were operated as part of the Underground rather than British Rail. Faced with this, London Transport was instructed to raise fares to a quite ridiculous extent (Ongar to Debden, under 10 miles, £1.55 single in 1980).

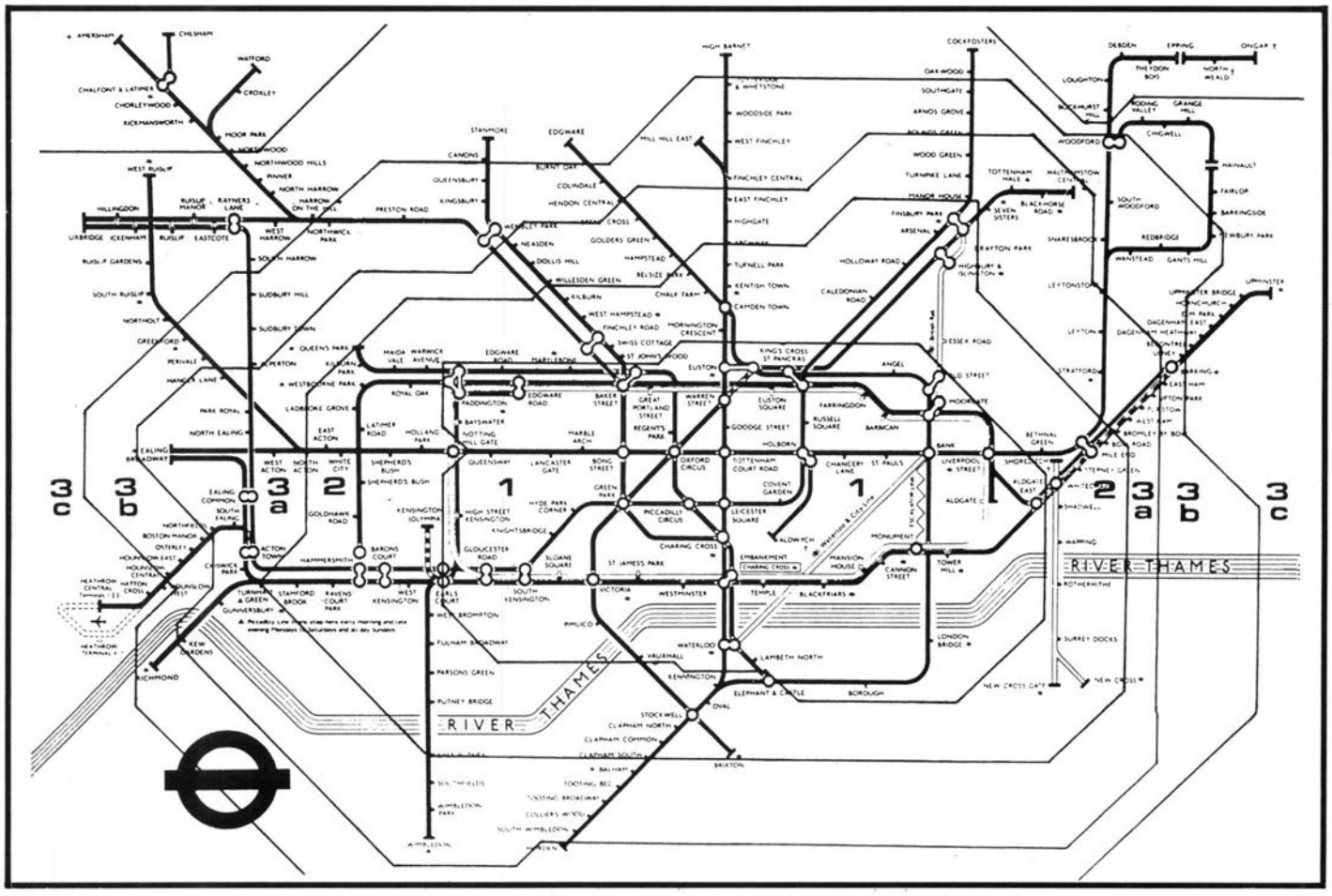
In an effort to save costs, the Epping-Ongar line was staked out as a closure proposal; the usage of this rural branch which had already been reduced to operation by one train, was less than 1,000 passenger journeys a day. The Minister refused outright closure, but Blake Hall station in its remote glory was having difficulty in generating even double figures of passengers on a good day, and was closed in 1981. The rest of the service was reduced to run in rush hours only, which were generously inter-

Left:
New trains in the form of the 1983 stock were purchased for Jubilee Line use, and a set awaits departure from Charing Cross. The order for these trains, originally 30 three car units, was later increased by another 33. Extension to Stratford will require a further allocation of rolling stock. *John Glover*

Below left:
The East London Line nowadays is operated with A stock, a train of which is seen entering the single platform Shoreditch station. Sunday services were restored to this station to serve the nearby markets. *John Glover*

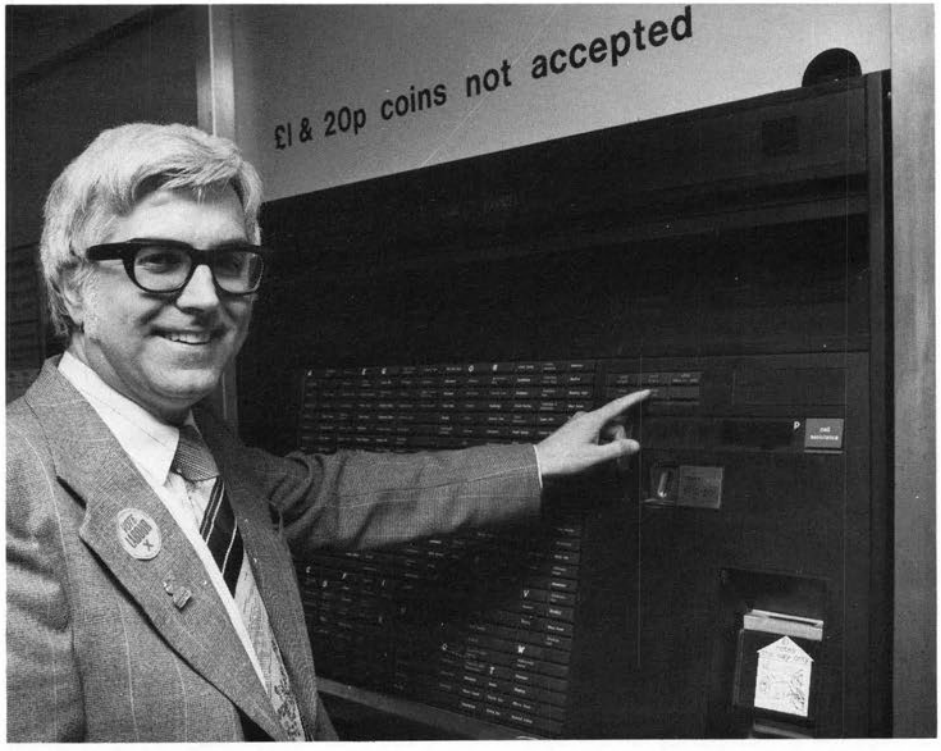
Below:
Disputes between the Greater London Council and Essex County Council over who should pay for the rural Epping-Ongar branch led to an extortionate fares policy and a formal application for closure. A mid afternoon train of 1962 stock crosses Cripsey Brook as it leaves Ongar in March 1977; the lack of patronage is only too apparent. *John Glover*





Above:
Underground Fares Zones, 1983.

Below:
Chair of the GLC Transport Committee during all the 'Fares Fair' shenanigans was Dave Wetzel. He is seen here demonstrating his grasp of fares issues with the trial Underground Ticketing System installation at Vauxhall. ***GLC***



preted, in the 1982 timetable revisions. Unexpectedly, a local management decision was to restore the all day service in 1989, but this was withdrawn in the 1991 economy measures.

Although the GLC years produced some tangible results in terms of new trains and some line extensions, the whole period was characterised by the warring which took place with central Government, and to which the Council was often politically opposed. The Jubilee Line was a case in point; denied a capital grant from the (Labour) Government to continue east from Charing Cross, the (Conservative) leader of the GLC said that 'the line would be built whether the Government agrees and helps or not . . . if we cannot borrow the money we will raise it from the rates and damn the Government'. The extensions were not built. GLC influence was far from consistent over the years, as administrations oscillated from one party to the other. Policy shifts are all very well, but when capital investment can last for a century or more for infrastructure and 40 years for rolling stock, a degree of continuity and freedom from political meddling is called for.

Fares provided the graphic example of shifting priorities. At first, London Transport was expected to break even after depreciation expenses, to provide for any surplus which the GLC might determine, and to set aside a general reserve. The incoming GLC administration of 1973 decided to implement a fares standstill until 1975, when spiralling inflation led to a policy reversal. The original wholly unrealistic remit was thus turned into a fares relief grant, first made in 1974. The cost escalated alarmingly, and fares were doubled in eighteen months during 1975/76 to restore the position. After that, fares levels continued to climb slowly in real terms, reaching a historically high level in 1981. 'Fares Fair' then intervened. This was a GLC attempt to put fares back to their 1969 levels in real terms. But such had been the growth of inefficiency in London Transport with staff levels up, traffic levels down, a falling London population and a miserable operating performance, that the cost was too much for some to swallow.

Prime critic was the London Borough of Bromley, whose High Court action succeeded in having the policy declared unlawful on appeal. Consequently, fares were increased by 96% in March 1982, with the result that patronage, which had been rising, took a nose dive again. Services were reduced to match the new traffic levels in December of that year.

In many ways, this was the Underground's darkest hour; from such a position, matters could only improve. Fewer than 500 million passenger journeys were recorded in 1982, the lowest since 1943 when the network was much smaller and circumstances wholly different. Yet in the turmoil of the Greater London Council's fares policies for London Transport had been the introduction of zonal pricing on the Underground – a necessary precondition for what was to follow in the bestselling product of Travelcard.

Travelcard was launched, more or less in its present form, in May 1983. This date marked the introduction of the GLC's 'Balanced Plan' for transport, whereby a strategy for transport as a whole in the capital was unveiled. For London Transport this meant an overall fares reduction of 25%, the legality having first been verified by a 'friendly' High Court action between LT and the Council. The result was a restoration of the real fares level to a position midway between that before and after 'Fares Fair'. By the end of that year there were 600,000 holders of Travelcards, and passenger miles travelled on the Underground rose by no less than 20%. The number of passenger journeys made over the early 1980s reflected the fares structures; for the years 1981, 1982, 1983 and 1984/85 these were, in millions, 541, 498, 563, and 659 respectively.

It was, however, too late to save the GLC, and the Government abruptly wrenched London Transport away from the Council's control on 29 June 1984.

Before leaving the GLC period, it is perhaps timely to consider the major project of the Terminal 4 loop at the western end of the Piccadilly Line, completed under LRT auspices. Traffic at Heathrow had built up very satisfactorily, but, unfortunately, the planners had anticipated that if a fourth terminal was built, this would be on the Perry Oaks site further west. The station, originally Heathrow Central, was thus aligned on a north west-south east axis, which posed something of a problem when the decision was reached to construct Terminal 4 a mile or so away on the southern perimeter! After desultory talk of a travelator link to Hatton Cross, the decision was reached to instead build a terminal loop for the Underground starting at Hatton Cross. Trains would proceed in an anticlockwise direction only around this loop calling successively at Terminal 4, Terminals 1, 2, 3 and Hatton Cross again. This meant the effective abandonment of one of the two existing running tracks west of Hatton Cross constructed only a decade previously.

The building of the loop led to some novel problems. Excavation just west of Hatton Cross station had to take place almost directly under the flight path of aircraft. No component part such as lifting gear and stacked material had to rise above a level which would have created radar interference and thus affected aircraft in flight. So the large working area had first to be turned into a kind of shallow pit, and in a deep trench below that a new rail junction plus a ¼-mile section of tunnel had to be built and then covered in.

Above:
The GLC sanctioned the re-equipment of all District main line services with the D stock which, after ventilation problems had been sorted out, might fairly be described at the most comfortable vehicles in the Underground fleet. An eastbound service arrives at Whitechapel. ***John Glover***

The new junction was built within a concrete subsurface formation, necessitating careful demolition of the original box. Then followed an ascending section of tunnel with cast iron lining, built in trench and backfilled. Tunnelling shields were used from all three working sites to drive the running tunnels through the London clay, thrust forward by hydraulic rams. Face cutting was by boom cutters, and the spoil was removed rearwards by conveyors. Eventually this reached the surface up inclined drift tunnels. Most of the running tunnel was lined with pre-cast concrete rings.

Where the new single track tunnel divided to link with the two original over-run tunnels, a step-plate junction was constructed. Flat bottom welded rail on pre-stressed concrete sleepers made its first appearance on the tube system here. In an effort to reduce noise, sleepers on part of the new track rest on rubber fittings. Finally, two ventilation shafts were constructed. It was a shame that delays in deciding how the new terminal should be served resulted in the station at Terminal 4 not being ideally sited, and rather a long walk from the vast terminal proper. The station and loop were opened in April 1986.

Chapter 11

Light Rail in London

If the Jubilee Line was too costly to extend into Docklands, were buses the only alternative? Could a cheaper means of providing a railed solution be found? What ought to be done about the intermediate level of flow requirements which is above what buses can comfortably handle, but below the really heavy traffics which are needed to support a full scale Underground system or similar? The London Docklands Development Corporation was created in 1981. Its purpose was to provide a lasting regeneration in the eight square miles of London's derelict Docklands in the ensuing 10-15 years. The intention was that this would be achieved by awarding speedy and unrestrictive planning permission to would-be entrepreneurs; an essential part of the package was the provision of transport infrastructure.

At an early stage, it became clear that the LDDC wanted a railway, and preferably one using the latest technology. If industry was really to be attracted and new life injected into the area, a high-quality public transport system was seen as essential – and that meant rail, however much the Department of Transport might have hankered after buses. Evaluation suggested that a rail system might attract 9,000 extra jobs, being the key element which would entice businesses to move to the area and people to live and work there. It was always admitted that justification in transport terms alone was low, at least for the first few years, but that was to miss the point. The Docklands Light Railway was to be a catalyst and justified on what it would achieve for the community and the area, not as the result of a commercial decision by a transport operator.

In the event, public funding covered the whole of the cost of the initial section. The railway was able to be built on the cheap; not so much from skimping the specification, although that was pared down where possible, but from the extensive use of existing railway rights of way which accounted for two thirds of the route length.

What were these lines? The London & Blackwall Railway of 1840 was a remarkable creation. Carried for most of its length on a 4,020yd viaduct, trains on this double track line were cable hauled using a drum to drum system and seven miles of hemp rope for each track. Winding engines were built at each end of the line. Track gauge was a non-standard 5ft 0½in and carriages, each with their own brakesman, started every 15 minutes from each terminus. Thus from Minories to Blackwall a group of carriages started out together and as each station was approached, the rope gripper was released and the carriage braked to a halt, while the rest of the train continued on its way. From Blackwall to Minories the rope direction was reversed, and a cumulative train, as it were, returned to the City. To ensure efficient and regular operation, the railway relied on the electric telegraph, one of its first commercial uses.

It will be apparent from this description that a major shortcoming was the impossibility of travelling between any pair of intermediate stations, while on the technical side the cables had a tendency to twist or snap. By 1849, it had been rebuilt as a conventional railway to standard gauge. The Millwall Extension Railway forms the southern part of the line, built as part of the Millwall Docks complex to exploit the southern part of the Isle of Dogs. It was connected to the London & Blackwall at Millwall Junction,

Below:
The articulated twin cars of the Docklands Light Railway are seen arriving at West India Quay on a Tower Gateway–Island Gardens journey. The very tight curvature at this triangular junction is apparent. ***John Glover***

the whole coming under the Great Eastern Railway. The third railway was the grandly titled East & West India Docks & Birmingham Junction Railway, later known by the more homely (and more accurate) name of the North London Railway. The company created their own docks at Poplar, while their former workshops at Bow much later became the first depot on British Railways to be turned over exclusively to diesel traction! The combined effects of motorbus competition and the war saw all passenger traffic cease by 1944, while the fortunes of the freight traffic declined with those of the docks. All conventional rail traffic had ceased by 1980.

By the time the Docklands Light Railway was being planned, there was thus much ready made railway. The NLR portion even had some track remaining. The brick built viaducts had been disused for years, but this availability did ease the land acquisition and construction costs. After ideas of street running to Mile End had been discarded as unnecessarily complicating an otherwise completely segregated railway, plans were quickly finalised.

Below:
As built, Heron Quays station was near nothing in particular except a temporary London Docklands Exhibition Centre. Public uncertainty as to the status of the DLR is exemplified by the reassuring banner hung on the fence 'Yes, you can use your Travelcards and Capitalcards'.
John Glover

The 'London' end was built at Minories, squeezed alongside the Fenchurch Street station throat next to a multi-storey car park. It was a far from ideal site, several minutes walk away from Tower Hill Underground station, but at that stage of the game the costs of going any further would have prevented the project from proceeding at all. Tower Gateway, as it was named, is in standard Docklands style of unstaffed station built from a kit of modular parts. The original platforms were 98ft long, and featured canopies with distinctive curved roofs. Self service ticket machines, 'Next Train' indicators and closed circuit TV monitoring complete the picture. Normally, access to the stations is by stairs with a lift for the disabled, but Tower Gateway features a pair of escalators plus a stairway in a shaft, rising up from a glass rotunda at pavement level.

From here, the DLR lines took over the two southernmost BR tracks on the Fenchurch Street lines viaduct, leaving all the 23 trains per hour of the Southend line's peak service to be accommodated on the two which remained. Shadwell station construction involved building out from the existing viaduct to accommodate an island platform. Interchange of a sort is available to the East London Line, but unfortunately the new station entrance for the Underground which was constructed only in 1982/83 was further from the DLR station than the original! At Limehouse the DLR takes the course of the former London & Blackwall Railway along a route disused since 1962. A fine view of Regent's Canal Dock is afforded from the viaduct. From West Ferry, the railway embarked on the 'ski-jump', which formed the 1 in 23 approach to the elevated triangular junction at the centre of the system. It also features curves at the 40 metre minimum radius which, although allowing a truly compact (and economical to build) set of junctions, stretches the technology to its limit and must induce severe wear on the wheel tyres and rails.

In the passage of this junction the trains turn due south, as for the time being the northern side is used only for movements to and from Poplar depot. Immediately beyond the triangle is the elevated and exposed West India Quay station, where interchanging passengers descend to a lower level to cross to the other platform. This is all new construction, as the line jumps the three stretches of water on a series of three brand new bridges. Canary Wharf station at the heart of the new office complex was not opened initially, so the next station was Heron Quays. More bends (corners?) follow through the South Quay area and across Millwall Cut before the old North Greenwich branch embankment is reached and the line descends to Crossharbour and then reaches Mudchute. Use of the former viaduct here complicates matters, since it is for single track only; the splayed pattern of the twin tracks at the Island Gardens terminus denotes another unusually laid out station. From here, passengers have the option of walking through the pedestrian tunnel under the Thames to Greenwich.

The Stratford branch diverges at West India Quay, and descends to Poplar station. As built, it was the only three platformed station, so arranged for crew changing purposes, but also as it is the point where trains enter and leave the system from the adjacent operations and maintenance depot. The line, which now follows the former BR Poplar Dock branch, is in a shallow cutting or at ground level. Stations are at All Saints,

Left:
Construction of the Docklands Light Railway was carried out by contractors, who used a Unimog rail/road vehicle during electrical installation work. The vehicle is seen in the Poplar yard area on its road wheels. London Underground have three Unimogs of their own for yard shunting and leaf clearing work. ***John Glover***

Devons Road and Bow Church; between the latter there is even a short tunnel where flats bridge the line. One of the Docklands speciality sharp curves on a steep gradient, and single line at that, heralds the BR Great Eastern main line, which is joined via the connection from Fenchurch Street. The single track continues to a formerly disused bay platform at Stratford station, where there are extensive interchange facilities.

The Docklands line is self contained, with no physical connection to British Rail. Although this left the way open for truly innovative technology, the familiar standard gauge steel wheel on steel rail was used. For economy, little purpose is usually served by reinventing the wheel where well-tried solutions exist. In this case, extensive existing trackbed was also available. Current collection at 750V dc uses third rail, but with a difference: the aluminium rail is shrouded with a plastic cover, and is of bottom contact type. This offers greater safety for staff on the track, and better protection from ice and snow.

Initially Docklands trains ran every 10 minutes as a minimum frequency. They are automatically driven, the starting command being given by the Train Captain on board. However, he has the commercial duties of ticket checking to perform, as well as looking after the passengers generally, and does not drive the train in normal operation. This task is performed by the ATO system on the train. Using data received from a transmitter at the platform, the system 'knows' when to accelerate, coast or brake. The Automatic Train Protection system (ATP) is a limiting arrangement which ensures that the train is driven correctly either by the ATO or the Train Captain. By means of loops laid in the track which are detected by the train, codes are received which ensure that the maximum speed permitted is not exceeded, and that there is a safe distance maintained behind the train in the section ahead. Automatic Train Supervision (ATS) regulates the train service by adjusting departure times to maintain even intervals after disruption, or

Below:
Car No 10 arrives at Stratford as BR electric unit No 302.258 departs. The automatically changing destination indicators have given nothing but trouble, and this unit is fitted with a manual sign which is rotated as required by the Train Captain. ***John Glover***

to instruct the ATO system to forsake economy by the use of coasting, and to go flat out to recover from delays. There is also the option for the supervisor to key in additional instructions.

The three systems together control the whole of the operation; this includes the door operation, the setting and the locking of the points, and the driving of the train indicators. It is perhaps a measure of the technological advance over the two decades since the Victoria Line was hailed as the last word in automation.

The 11 original trains each comprise a twin articulated unit of welded steel construction, seating 84 but with the ability to take 200+ passengers including standing. They are 91ft 10in long, weigh 39 tonnes, and are of typical continental design and appearance. Two-axled motor bogies are located at each end of the unit, with a central non-motored two-axle bogie under the articulated joint. Trains have 'gate turn off' thyristor, or 'chopper' traction control equipment, which is a modern electronic alternative to older systems which made extensive use of mechanical switching. Both rheostatic and disc friction braking equipment are fitted. The braking system automatically compensates for the passenger load, and a load compensating air suspension system is also fitted.

As trains are driven by an automatic system, they have no driving cabs, although driving controls are provided at each end of the trains to allow manual operation in sidings or in the case of system failure. Maximum service speed is 50mile/h. While the initial 11 cars were built in West Germany, the subsequent batch of 10 were assembled by BREL (1988) Ltd at York. Seating is mostly in bays of four, but there are longitudinal seats in the centre of the car, where provision is also made for the carriage of wheelchairs.

The system is fully accessible to the disabled, with hydraulically powered lifts giving access to street level – much used by mothers with push chairs. All platforms are straight, to minimise the car to platform gap. The system is monitored from the control centre by CCTV with recording facilities; a passenger alarm system at the stations enables contact with the controller in emergency, and its use automatically activates the cameras. Public address is installed at all stops, and a 'next train in x minutes' is displayed. The Train Captains keep an eye on what is happening at the stations.

The initial system as described with its 15 stations and 7½ miles of track were designed to link the Isle of Dogs with both Central London and Stratford, and this is reflected in the 33,000 or so journeys made daily in 1988/89. The average service speed of 15-20 mile/h is between that of buses and Underground, and so is the average journey length of just under three miles. Besides work journeys, the DLR caters extensively for shopping and leisure journeys made by residents of the area, as well as for visitors and tourists. The system was opened formally by Her Majesty the Queen on 30 July 1987, who travelled from Island Gardens to Poplar, visiting the Operations and Maintenance Centre, and then to Tower Gateway. Public opening was postponed until 31 August, to allow further time for reliability testing. Operation is in the hands of Docklands Light Railway Ltd, a wholly owned subsidiary of London Regional Transport. It is not, therefore, part of the Underground.

With so much new in a short period of time, it would have been remarkable if all had proceeded entirely smoothly. True to form, it was the doors and the ticketing system which offered the most trouble.

The doors were of the inward opening variety. This resulted in their taking up space inside the car as they opened, which was proving to be increasingly difficult when the cars were full. The alternatives were bleak: folding doors as on buses carried with them the risk of pinching fingers, while outside plug doors would foul the platform edges which had deliberately minimised the gap so as to ease wheelchair access.

Ticketing is by machine purchase at stations, but tickets once purchased needed to be validated. This was done by inserting the ticket in a separate machine, which code marked it with date, time and station to prevent it from being reused. Coding was in magnetic as well as visible form. Stations are 'open' in that there are no barriers, and a 'paid area' is denoted by crossing a red line, within which all passengers must have a ticket. Sadly, the ticket machines did not work at all well, and the validation arrangement was not well understood. Ticket issue arrangements were altered during 1989,

Below:
The linking of the West Ruislip–Greenford section of the Central Line and the BR Ealing Broadway–Greenford diesel service was among the possibilities for light rail conversion identified in 1987. Greenford station bay sees a Class 121 unit and an eastbound 1962 stock train in 1982. ***John Glover***

Shadwell station alongside the Fenchurch Street BR lines, shown with unit No 01 departing for Island Gardens, demonstrates its extended platforms capable of accommodating double length trains in June 1990. ***John Glover***

NEXT TRAIN
TIME NOW
TRAIN
DUE IN
MINUTES
2

with ticket machines automatically validating tickets as they issued them. This was one of the aspects of the DLR which has been most criticised by the public, another being information systems when services were disrupted.

The success of the Isle of Dogs was undoubtedly encouraged by the existence of the DLR, but was that enough? Built at the bottom end of the capacity scale, major developments threatened to swamp it. Olympia & York, the developers of Canary Wharf, were quite certain that they wanted direct access to the City of London, and hence were instrumental in putting forward a private capital grant for the extension to Bank. This deep level section leaves the DLR near Royal Mint Street and just short of the Tower Gateway terminus, and drops down a 1 in 16 ramp to run underground for the 0.94 mile. Because the car design did not anticipate underground operation, no end exits are provided on the cars. Thus the twin bored tunnels are of five metres diameter, more like that of a tube station tunnel than that of a bored tube. However, safety changes in the wake of the King's Cross fire mean that the 11 original cars will not be allowed to work underground at all, and are to be disposed of. Opening in 1991, the DLR platforms at Bank are at very deep level below the Northern Line; a shunting neck beyond the pair of platforms allows terminating trains to run forward after discharging their passengers and then reverse into the other platform.

The Bank extension though was only part of the story. With Canary Wharf employment growing rapidly, it is expected that there will be 20-25,000 employed there in 1991 and 100,000 in the mid-1990s. Trains needed to be lengthened and frequencies increased – to the extent of producing 10 times more railway. This is being achieved by doubling train lengths from one to two units, and increasing the 7½ minute peak frequencies to every four minutes from the full opening of the Bank extension. Platform extension work has been completed at all stations other than Mudchute and Island Gardens; a new reversing facility is being built at Crossharbour for the longer trains. A third batch of 10 trains will complete the fleet needed for Bank. These will have sliding doors, as will those for Beckton. A total of 80 new trains have been ordered, including the BREL built cars delivered in 1990.

Further upgrading is following as a result of the 12 station Beckton extension due for completion in 1992, opening up the Royal group of docks. To be paid for out of land development values (the land already being in the hands of LDDC), major works were needed, including the construction of a flying junction to supersede the original arrangements at Delta Junction. Now it is planned that service levels will reach 30tph on the main sections, of which various other enhancements such as a passing loop at Pudding Mill Lane, the rebuilding of Poplar station, and the addition of a further two tracks between West India Quay and the enlarged Canary Wharf are all part. Resignalling is also in progress, with the Canadian Seltrac moving block system being installed to reduce headways to a potential 90 seconds.

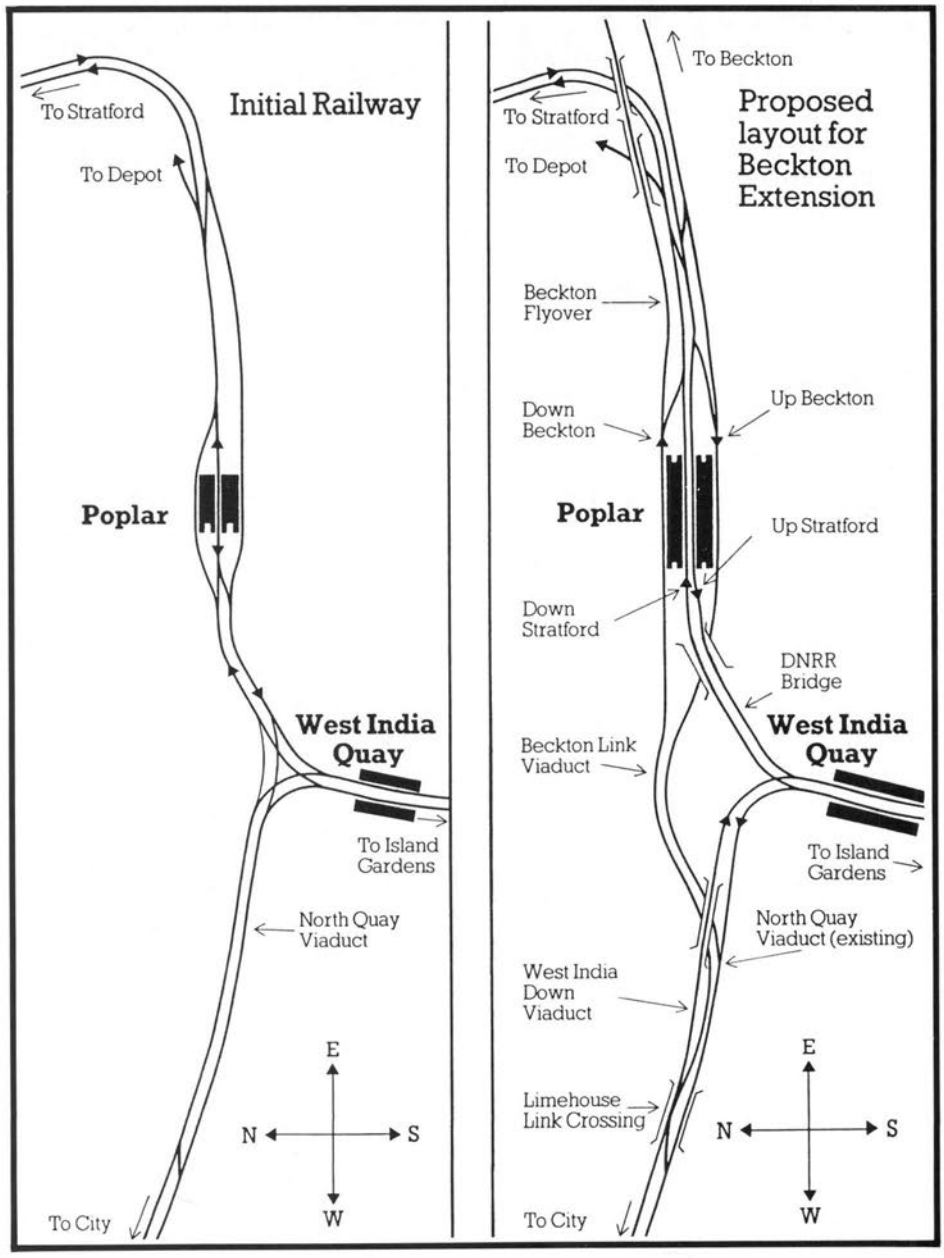
After that there is no shortage of ideas, with a projection south under the Thames to Greenwich and Lewisham to be the subject of a Bill. A further extension to Barking is also favoured in some quarters.

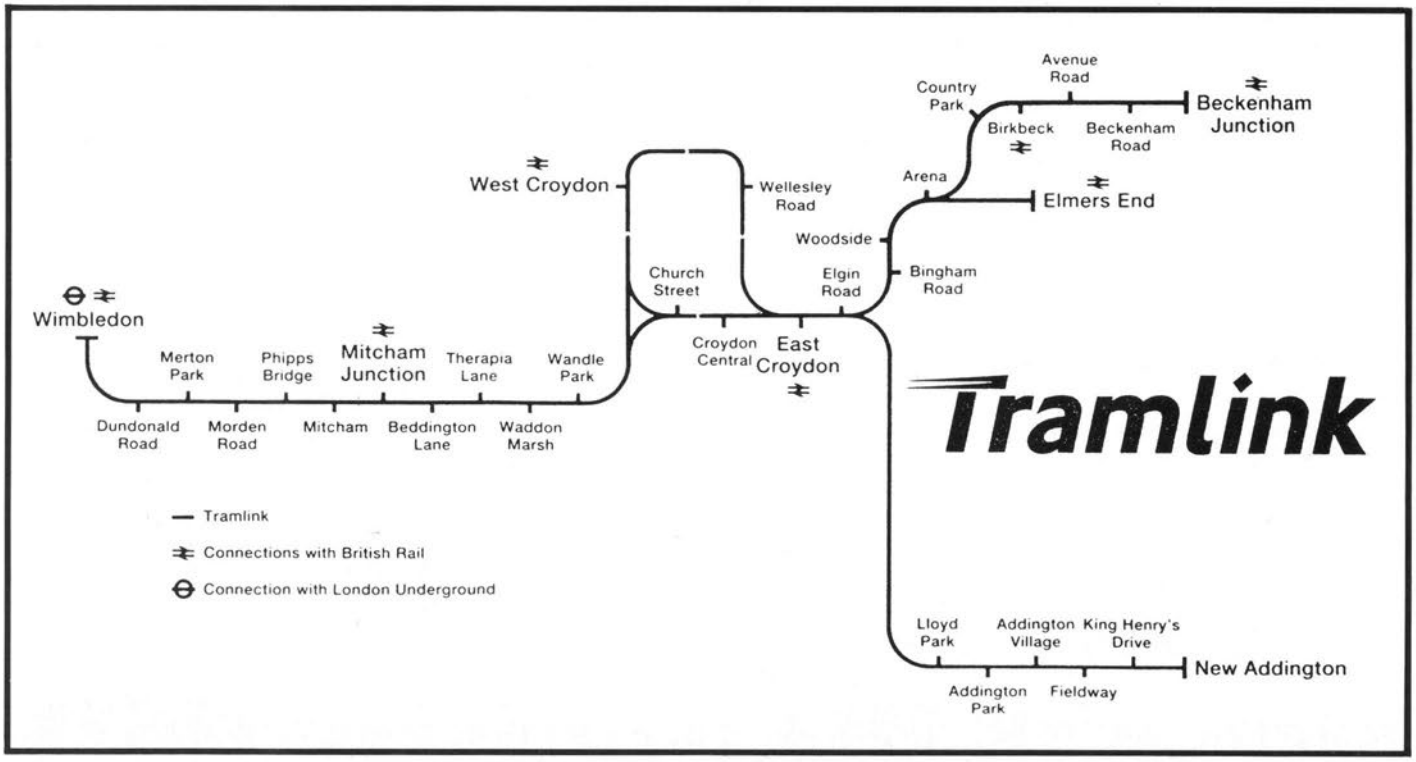
The DLR was not the first time light rail had been considered for London. Croydon to New Addington was an old favourite, while consideration was given to Finsbury Park and Muswell Hill along what was once to be part of the Northern Line. Cost was the main reason for abandonment, but light rail was a serious contender for the Terminal 4 link at Heathrow before the Piccadilly Line loop was decided upon. Docklands thus provided the first actual installation, and if nothing else, the experience has demonstrated how flexible the provision of light rail schemes can be. Fears expressed that technical excellence in Docklands might not be matched with sufficient traffic potential have proved to be the last problem which is likely to arise. However, the new-found belief in the efficacy of light rail to solve urban transport problems and indeed regenerate run down urban areas is fragile, and there is no scope for an engineering, operational or financial fiasco. Too often light rail is equated with trams, and the Chambers Committee's words of 1955 still find an echo in some quarters:

'We have no hesitation in saying that, having considered the evidence, we are satisfied that the decision (to cease tram operation) was right, but that whatever the merits of railed electric traction in some Continental cities with wide streets, such a system is clearly obsolete and impracticable for London. There can be no doubt that the removal of the trams has done more than anything else to improve road traffic conditions . . .'

What *is* light rail? The following is a generalised definition, representing more the concept rather than a specific technology:

- driver only, manual operation
- standard gauge, steel wheel on steel rail vehicles
- wholly or partially segregated rights of way, or completely unsegregated from road traffic
- simple, low cost, closely spaced stops
- minimum signalling
- lighter vehicles built to less onerous end loading and other design criteria, which are capable of negotiating sharper bends and curves and steeper gradients than conventional rail vehicles.





Left:
Track remodelling at North Quay Junction and Poplar, Docklands Light Railway, 1989.

Above:
Croydon area proposed Tramlink system.

All the above are, in a sense, negotiable, and trade-offs exist. If the proposed system merely replaces an existing railway using the same structures, there is no need to use vehicles capable of negotiating 20m radius curves. On the other hand, if high accessibility is the goal through providing frequent stops, good acceleration and braking characteristics are required. Wholly segregated systems (as in both existing UK applications) can consider automatic operation, but drivers are essential elsewhere. Light rail is the intermediate transport mode: ideally flows will range between 1,000 and 20,000 passengers an hour, with route lengths a maximum of 15 miles. Outside these rough orders of magnitude it will be bus for lower levels and conventional heavy rail above.

What is in it for London? With the requirements for Docklands now looking as if extension of the Jubilee Line ought to have been the prime project after all, where might one look next?

For central London the conventional heavy rail or Underground system will continue to be the unchallenged answer, but there are a number of intriguing possibilites for light rail in outer London. Although simple conversion of existing railways to light rail standards is not thought worthwhile, there are a number of sections of line which might benefit from light rail development, particularly outer branch lines and some local orbital routes in the inner suburbs. Of those schemes which have survived initial evaluation, that for the Croydon area is of most interest.

Croydon is an important regional centre and a focus for bus and rail services; it also suffers badly from traffic congestion. Light rail offers the potential for greatly increasing the accessibility, while not causing the environmental disasters associated with most road building. The objective would be to segregate the rail system generally from road traffic to avoid importing traffic delays. In the town centre, the system would need to penetrate the office and shopping areas; this might involve some sharing with road and pedestrian traffic, or going underground or elevated. The present proposal is:

- Convert the Wimbledon-West Croydon BR line to light rail, and extend to East Croydon station.
- Convert Elmers End-Woodside BR line to light rail, and extend to East Croydon station in one direction and Beckenham in the other.
- Establish a new light rail route from East Croydon station to New Addington (about five miles).

The economics of light rail would enable service frequency to be at least every 10 minutes on all routes, compared with a 30 minute BR norm at present. In all cases, new intermediate stations would be constructed, and the routes totally segregated from other rail operations. There would thus be no possibility of through running to or from BR destinations, notably London termini, but this is offset by achieving far better penetration of the centre of Croydon by all routes. It is not possible to have both. The high platforms used by BR stations would be lowered or replaced. Electrification is to be from overhead pick up using 750V dc throughout. Automatic operation as on the Docklands Light Railway is not possible, given the intermixing with other traffic; trains would be manually driven with traffic signals controlling rail/road intersections.

The most challenging task is to produce an acceptable arrangement in Central Croydon. Light rail can be placed in a central reserve of a dual carriageway, or supported on piers above. It can run on a segregated reserve at the side of a road, or share with other traffic and maintain a priority. Above all, it can be tailored to meet the situation.

The study which came up with the Croydon proposal looked at the whole of the British Rail and London Underground network in the London area, and about 40 sections of line were involved. The most important of the study findings was that a simple conversion of existing railways to light rail standards is unlikely to be worthwhile; the main scope is in applications where the special attributes of light rail can be exploited. These include the ability to use low cost stops (a more appropriate term than stations), street running, and the ability to negotiate track geometry more akin to the big dipper than a conventional railway. It was concluded that the best chances of success were in situations where there was scope for:

- cost savings on an existing lightly used line;
- improving access by constructing additional stops;
- joining existing lines by new links built to light rail standards;
- extending existing lines which stop short of traffic objectives;
- a small network rather than one route only.

Besides the Croydon area, three other schemes were dubbed worthy of detailed study. These were the conversion of the East London Line to light rail standards and its extension to Shoreditch High Street or Liverpool Street; linking Rickmansworth via the Watford branch of the Metropolitan and a short link to the Croxley Green branch of British Rail, and thence to Watford Junction; and conversion of the relatively under used ends of the Central Line (beyond Greenford in the west and north of Woodford and Hainault in the east) to light rail operation. Subsequent traffic growth has stilled such talk, and light rail work is now concentrated on new or lightly used British Rail alignments.

Chapter 12

London Underground Ltd

The creation of London Regional Transport in June 1984 and the subsequent formation of London Underground Ltd as a wholly owned subsidiary in 1985 represented a complete change of direction. LRT has three main tasks – an overall responsibility for the planning of public transport services in London, securing the provision of those services, and the effective running of a series of other businesses related to bus and Underground operation. LRT is the strategic planning and management body, while London Underground Ltd, London Buses Ltd and Docklands Light Railway are its three main transport operations. They are separate subsidiary companies operating independently, but coordinated by LRT. Just to confuse matters, 'London Transport' is the collective name now used for everything, including London Regional Transport itself. London Transport thus includes LRT's own operating subsidiaries, the transport services (notably bus services) that are provided by outside contractors as an integral part of the network, and the common activities such as ticketing, marketing and service information. The collective name is also applied to the activities of London Transport Advertising, London Transport International (the consultancy), London Transport Lost Property and London Transport Museum.

In discharging its principal job of determining what services should be provided or secured for Greater London, LRT has to have regard for London's transport needs, and to satisfy the financial objectives laid down by the Secretary of State for Transport. This means that it must break even after grants. Early in the life of the new undertaking, these objectives were set:

- Real fares to be held broadly stable beyond January 1985
- No programme of major route closures on the Underground
- Improved interchanges and travelling environment
- Improved coordination with British Rail
- the needs of disabled people to be given special attention
- Advice of the Passengers' Committee to be carefully considered
- Unit costs to be reduced by at least 2½% each year
- Revenue support to be reduced to £95 million in 1987/88

In response, the annual business plan for 1985/86 set out the action it was intended to take. Overall Underground mileage would increase slightly, with the aim of maintaining service quality as measured by the average waiting times for passengers. Investment in station modernisation was to press on apace, with one quarter of the capital budget being thus committed; the intention was that by the end of 1990 more than 80% of stations would have received some improvement since the programme began in 1981.

Underground symbol c1907

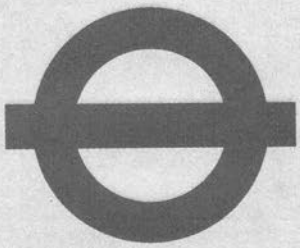
District Railway station nameboard c1908

Underground sign at Tooting Bec station 1926

London Passenger Transport Board symbol c1934

London Transport roundel as used in the 1930's

The London Underground roundel


The London Transport roundel

The LRT mark

Interchange improvements would continue as would a number of measures to enhance security for passengers and staff. On stations, the extension of centralised public address would become virtually universal, and the dot matrix train indicators would appear at more locations.

The initial emphasis of London Regional Transport was on cost reduction and consolidation after the turbulent years of the previous decade. But other forces were also at work, and one of the main factors causing the strategy to be rethought was the upsurge in passenger usage, fuelled by a growing economy and the runaway success of the Travelcard.

The first moves away from the traditional charging methods based on distance travelled were made in 1981 with 'Fares Fair', which established a system of zonal charging on buses throughout Greater London and on the Underground in the central area. It

was not until the May 1983 fares revision though that zoning was fully established. Beyond the central zone, an inner zone equivalent to its bus counterpart was formed, to be followed by three concentric ring zones roughly three miles apart, covering broadly the same area as the bus outer zone. The most significant change however was the replacement of Underground season tickets and bus passes with Travelcards. These gave their holders freedom to interchange without penalty, and to make additional journeys at no additional cost. Indeed, the greater the use made of the Travelcard, the better value the user obtained from buying it – irrespective of whether the fares level was low or high. Useage shot upwards. This was, of course, still under the GLC. Progressive improvements subsequently added in British Rail services in 1985, initially at a premium, and one day tickets available outside the morning peak.

There were two basic elements to the fares policy. Simplification asked whether the complexity of graduated fares was really necessary, and found that it was not. Integration was a more positive and creative approach, which attempted to develop new and attractive ticketing products for passengers. It was hoped that this would in turn result in a fundamental shift in the market for travel, thus enlarging the core of intensive users whose patronage is critical in sustaining the system, and abating the drift towards the use of the private car.

The policies were certainly successful. Starting from such a low base, the system at first had ample capacity to absorb traffic growth. But traffic grew and kept on growing, and in time coping with the effects became a major preoccupation. Overcrowding and congestion thus once again became part of the vocabulary of public transport operators in London, matters which had been of limited importance, other than in respect of road traffic generally, for a long time. Demand was racing ahead, stimulated also by economic growth. Such was the turnaround that the 498 million passenger journeys of 1982 – the lowest point – is now around 800 million, an increase of 60%.

The increased marketing activity was complemented by productivity measures, as exemplified by the Underground Ticketing System and One Person Operation of trains, as already described; in the five years from 1983, unit costs were cut by 15%. Infrastructure investment has been more than doubled, both to secure reductions in future running costs and to modernise and improve the amenity value of the system. After years of under-funding, much of this was still undeniably squalid, and perceptions of the quality of service offered correspondingly low. 'Tubular Hell' was one newspaper's way of describing it, while an (often exaggerated) view of crime in the Underground caught the public attention. Neither public nor staff confidence was improved by the major fire at King's Cross in November 1987 in which 31 persons died, and the sad tale of shortcomings unravelled by the public inquiry was followed by the deafening sound of stable doors being very expensively bolted. The railway was not being run professionally, and it ran out of luck. The most lasting result to come out of this incident was that safety must be managed positively: hazards must be identified and rated according to their potential impact and likelihood of happening. This includes not only standards, materials, communications and emergency arrangements, but also the need for crowd control plans at major stations and thus the means of providing for the growing problem of congestion relief. All costs money.

Another result was a complete change of top management.

If poor quality in a world of rising expectations was one problem, the other conundrum was growth. The level and pattern of demand for Underground travel is a resultant of multiple factors, many of which are way outside the control of any transport undertaking. Population, employment, personal incomes, car ownership, road conditions and tourism are among those factors. Projections can be made, but within them it is important to study the geographical aspects. If, for example, employment growth is associated with major developments in Docklands, the City and King's Cross, the loads imposed on the Underground network will be very uneven. It all boils down to a conclusion that without action being taken, probably irrespective of any fares levels which might be considered reasonable, system capacity will become totally inadequate.

There were five strategic issues facing London Underground Ltd:

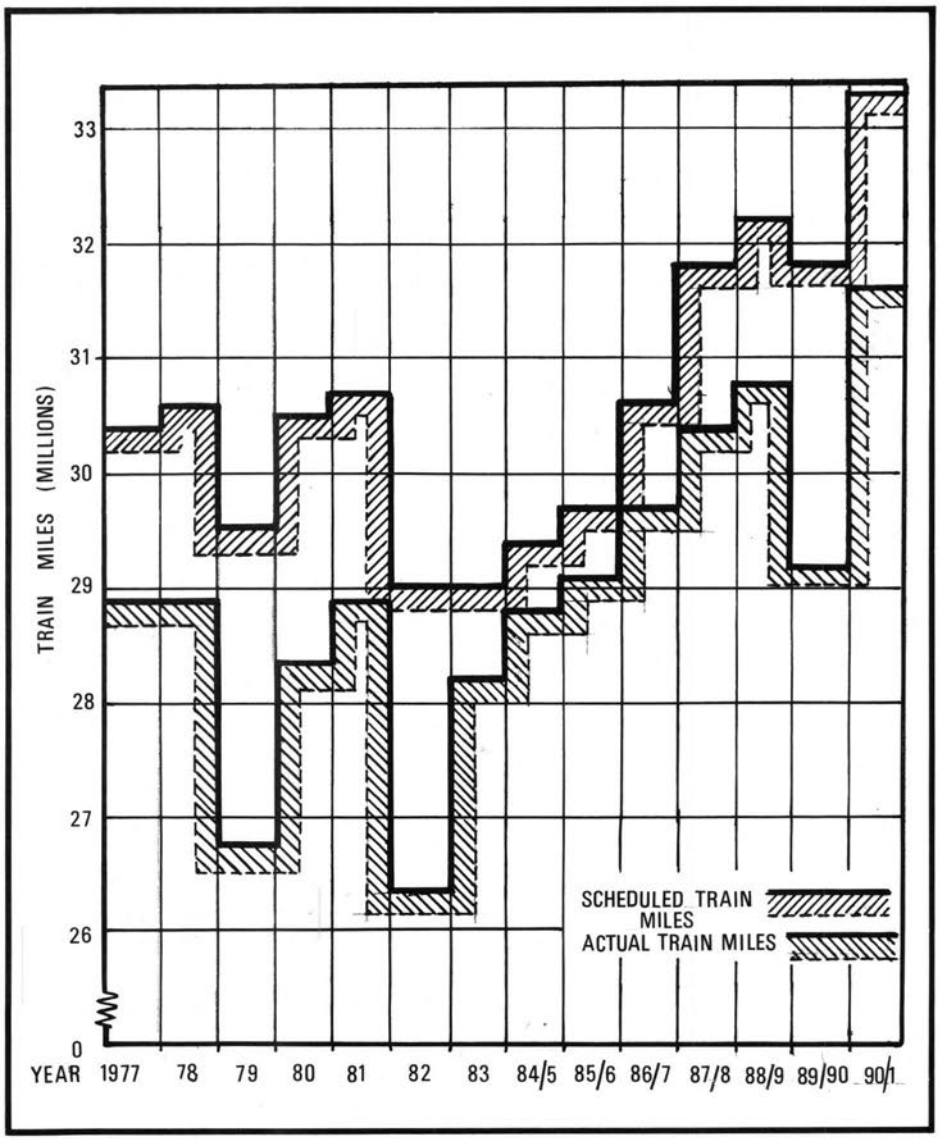
- The network capacity was constrained at the peak.
- There were service quality as well as safety problems as a result.
- The anticipated growth of demand would be a further 20% at peak and 30% at off peak by 1997/98.
- Major additions to capacity needed large investments and long lead times.
- LUL had neither the cash nor the borrowing powers to fund extensive new investment in either the short or medium term.

What then would be the likely effects of taking various broad courses of action?

- **Commercial network.** This would make money, and be cash rich in a decade through high fares and the lopping off of the extremities eg everything north and west of Harrow-on-the-Hill.

Left:
The evolving symbolism of the Underground and its parent organisations. For non-legal purposes, LRT has now vanished and its public title is plain 'London Transport'.

Below:
Underground reliability: scheduled mileage and proportion operated, 1977 to 1990/91.



Above:
New prototype 1986 stock for the Central Line underwent its trials on the Jubilee Line. In this picture are the four cars of green Train C, with two cars of Train A at the rear. They were photographed at Kingsbury in March 1988. ***R. J. Waterhouse***

- **Quality network.** The quality of provision would be brought up to predetermined levels, but essentially the system would remain within the lines of the existing infrastructure.
- **Expanded network.** As quality network, but providing additional works to relieve congestion and serving new areas of London as could be justified.
- **London Showpiece network.** This would be an attempt to make London resemble Paris, but at a cost of £10bn which could come only from outside sources.

What would the pursuit of a commercial network mean? High fares would certainly reduce congestion, and enable service quality to be improved significantly; the high revenues could be used to fund investment. However, higher fares would also reduce demand, and encourage relocation away from London. Was that what London Underground (and its LRT parent body) there to do? A reading of the 1984 London Regional Transport Act confirms that LRT is there 'to have due regard to the transport needs for the time being of Greater London'.

If however demand continues to grow unchecked, as seems likely, perpetuation of the present financial regime would result in service volume, quality and safety all suffering. The problem of inadequate capacity had to be addressed; unfortunately the levels of investment needed were not related to the volume of business, nor to the fares levels charged, or even the latent demand for services. It was simply not tenable to allow more and more passengers to crowd into the system unless it was expanded to cope: the safety of passengers in overcrowded conditions was at risk, and the congestion factor as on the roads would result in the overall throughput diminishing as trains were forced to spend longer at station platforms. This raised the spectacle of certain central London stations having to be closed for the duration of the peak. This situation is nearer than it might seem, with for example Chancery Lane already being available for exit only during the morning rush hour, while King's Cross adopts an elaborate one way system to keep the two flows of passengers apart.

Financial performance of the business cannot be separated from the above, and it was just not possible to have everything. An equation had to be found which balanced financial performance against adequate quality, safety and volume of service provision. What the customers of London Underground merited was a policy which allowed Government funding for major investment in expanding service provision, offset against internal efficiency improvements and restructuring of the business to improve its management, and the results showing within a five year time scale.

During this period, the standards of customer service and company performance must steadily improve, the gains must be consolidated with past standards restored, and the strength of the improved position used as a justification for further expansion. While the first stages were a matter for Underground management, the latter could only be accelerated or even achieved at all with the financial help of the Government and/or the private sector. Realistically, the return for private investment in rapid transit is just not there, so this means public cash in the vast majority of cases. With LUL at present, a substantial proportion of investment comes from operating profits, and the rest from external sources.

If that is the strategy, how can it be made to happen? The management organisation has been overhauled, with the small executive Board consisting of Chairman, Managing Director, Engineering and Finance Directors; there are also four non-executive positions. Each Underground line has been made a profit centre and given its own General Manager, responsible for the volume, quality and safety of the service operated. These Managers are also responsible for costs and revenues, the performance of the assets over which they have charge, and of that all important asset – people. Everything else is dealt with as a support function. As part of that shake up, all staff are responsible to one named manager, who controls directly a maximum of 100 individuals. This number was selected to enable all of them to be known personally to the manager, and replaces a system where an individual member of staff might be responsible, in turn, to a succession of shift supervisors.

This led to the five year plan extending from 1991/92 to 1996/97. This deals, in order, with: current status and performance, objectives, overall action plan, quantitative impacts, and the major recommendations. What is the current state of London Underground?

Sadly, the situation was not encouraging. Customer perception was decidedly poor, rating the Underground's value for money as inadequate. Both the capacity of the system and the conditions in which people had to travel were seen as inadequate. Staff were perceived as unhelpful, restrictive practices abounded, and their efficiency was poor. This was partly due to uncompetitive pay levels not attracting the staff quality needed. Many assets were near life expired and thus more costly to maintain than they should have been. Where investment had taken place, much of it had been fragmented and incomplete. There had been many improvement measures, but overall they had not been focused sufficiently; frustratingly in spite of all the efforts made, the results did not show and were neither recognised nor appreciated. Finally, management's ability to measure and control performance had been severely limited.

It was not just the politicians who had been at fault, as the Underground's 1988 'Plan for Action' frankly admitted:

'Though this thoroughly unsatisfactory situation derived in large part from the political and national economic context of the busi-

Above:
The eastbound Central Line platform at Bank was photographed in 1986, with a 1962 stock train arriving. The picture demonstrates clearly the sad state of even major stations before the modernisation scheme got into its stride. The severe curvature here may also be seen. ***John Glover***

Right:
A full size mock up of the new look for the Central Line. ***John Glover***

ness, there were also major weaknesses in the organisational structure and performance of management in the Underground.'

From such a base line, the only way to go is up. In 'PLEASE', the Company has set out a 'mission statement' of its aims:

Partner (in the development of London)
Leader (among rapid transit systems)
Enjoyable (experience as is possible for passengers and staff)
Affordable (fares for the ordinary people of London and visitors)
Safe (and seen to be so)
Efficient (and viewed as such by all concerned)

The long term objective is that the total service will be of the same standard which is implied by new trains, control systems, track and stations. The financial performance must be maximised within the constraints of volume and the extension of quality and safety of service. Market potential must be optimised, and long term total costs brought down to the lowest possible level.

The immediate response provided for a number of major upgrading proposals:

- Complete re-equipment of the Central Line to include new trains and signalling.
- Rebuilding of Angel station.
- Significant capacity improvements at some 20 heavily congested stations.

- Major lifts and escalators programme, with new equipment at 24 stations.
- Increase of train miles operated by 7%.
- All station staff to be trained in customer care and new station staffing arrangements to be implemented throughout the system.
- Dot Matrix Indicators to be extended to over 200 platforms.
- Public telephones to be provided on all platforms by 1991.
- Increase in platform seating by 25% by 1993.
- Major investment in specific safety measures.
- All wooden panels on escalators to be removed.

The majority of this work has now been authorised, of which the Central Line is by far the most extensive and exciting project. New trains are based on the 1986 prototypes, as translated into the 1990 production stock of 85 trains.

The 1986 prototypes were intended as a real advance in technology, just as the 1935 experimental stock had been a half century earlier. There was a shopping list of items which at least needed examination to see whether change could be supported. Could the costly and heavy underframe be replaced with welded aluminium, and offer revised internal layouts? Was thyristor 'chopper' control yet an economic possibility? Could electric braking which needed all axles to be motored be justified on the basis of cleanliness, if not on performance? What improvements could be made to ride quality, ventilation and noise levels to match rising expectations? Was full automation worth considering?

Some experiments were carried out on service cars of 1972 Mk I stock. Steerable bogies to keep the axles parallel to the rails when negotiating curves and thus reduce flange wear were fitted to one car, but were not judged satisfactory. Another had bogies of a new type with the motors mounted on the frame instead of being axle-hung, and these were adopted. Thyristor control was a feature of the 1973 stock Experimental Tube Train, since disbanded. Disc brakes were also tried on a 1973 car. The 1986 stock proper though consists of three four car prototypes, two of which have been built by Metro-Cammell, and one by BREL (1988) Ltd of Derby. Electrically, GEC, Brown Boveri and Brush have provided equipments. Each prototype train is made up of a pair of two car units with a cab at one end; they can be coupled in any combination to make a train of up to eight cars.

Doors are mounted externally to the welded (as opposed to riveted) aluminium body shells, and thus no longer slide into a pocket within the body sides when they open. Doors may be both opened and closed by passengers, and an audible signal warns when they are to be closed by the driver. The cab ends are moulded in glass reinforced plastic. Thyristor control and electric braking are provided.

Above:
The bright and pleasant surroundings of the original Metropolitan Railway platforms at Baker Street after thorough refurbishment and the installation of new lighting in the shafts. *Thorn EMI Lighting*

Both types of bogies mentioned above feature in the prototype cars. These have 700mm diameter wheels, as unfortunately attempts to design for the use of 600mm diameter wheels which would allow the car floors to be completely flat were unsuccessful.

In appearance terms trains were given either a red, blue or green prevailing colour scheme for easy identification. The internal design has tended to provide more standing space and fewer seats, with a decided 'new look', occasioned no doubt by the employment of design consultants from an early stage. The trains were displayed to the Press in 1987, and provided experimental service as six-car formations on the Jubilee Line in 1988/89.

For the Central Line, 85 x eight-car trains were ordered from BREL (1988) Ltd. These are being delivered between late 1991 and 1994, at a cost of around £4m per train. A further 15 cars have been added for NSE's Waterloo & City line. The trains feature extensive painted surfaces, bigger curved

windows, doors each 150mm wider and push button operated. Doors are hung externally to the body; together with banishing under-seat equipment elsewhere (except for the wheels towards the ends of the cars), this allows the all-longitudinal seats to be set back and thus create wider central aisles. It also allows possible rearrangement of seats in the centre section of the cars at some future date. Flooring is of rubber. Both heating and ventilation systems will be improved. The ends of the cars have windows to improve passenger security, and wider interconnecting doors to speed train evacuation in tunnels. The car maps displayed indicate the position of the train's location through lights, and announcements made by digitised speech. Maximum speeds are to be higher, and ride quality improved.

Technically, there is a monocoque extruded aluminium body shell, which acts effectively as a beam suspended between two bogies. All axles are motored, and thyristor (chopper) control with regenerative braking fitted. Trains have Automatic Train Control and Automatic Train Protection (ATC/ATP), and are capable of being

Left:
The driver of a C stock train at Fulham Broadway consults the television monitors before he closes the doors. ***John Glover***

Below:
Platform mirrors were installed for one person operation where a clear line of vision can be obtained. This view is from the driver's cab at the Hammersmith & City station of Royal Oak in 1984, with passengers waiting for the doors to open so that they may board. ***John Glover***

both operated automatically during the peaks and driver operated at other times. CCTV is fitted in the cabs, and enablea the driver to see the station platform as he approaches and before he departs, since the cab will be in the tunnel. The staff have been involved in designing a fully ergonomic cab. The PA system allows the line controller to speak to the passengers as well as the driver, and a talkback facility for passenger use is being provided. These are 'clever' trains, with on-board performance monitoring and fault diagnostics. All aspects of the new trains are high-tech, and will no doubt bring high-tech problems in their wake, but pre-planning should minimise or at least contain the effects of this.

As part of the Central Line modernisation, there will be complete fixed block resignalling, the installation of centralised control, and the power supply will be replaced and uprated. The signalling will aim to improve the 30 trains per hour (tph) throughput at present to 33/34tph; the restrictions such as speeds over the tortuous curves at Bank and the time taken to discharge passengers at Liverpool Street and other busy stations were as much limits as the signalling in increasing service frequency further. Speed control signalling, a feature of inter-war installations, had been removed in the declining traffic years of the 1960s and the 1970s. The new signalling offered the opportunity to get back to frequencies achieved in the past. While a transmission based signalling system based on a moving block section and offering a potential 38 or even 39tph is now available, it was not judged as yet being sufficiently developed or cost effective for Central Line use.

The whole project, which will increase the line capacity by about 15%, is due for completion in 1996. Other features include minor track realignments to raise speed limits and an increase in power supply capacity, to allow trains to run faster and reduce journey times. The first of the production 1990 stock trains are expected to run in passenger service between West Ruislip and Northolt.

The Northern is the second busiest line, with 720,000 passengers a day and still showing strong signs of growth. Large scale investment to catch up on 35 years of backlog is needed, and one of the major schemes is Angel. New office building at Angel has seen traffic rise by 123% in six years, with more to come as the area is ripe for redevelopment. At present the station is provided only with lifts, but under a £56m scheme, a new entrance and ticket hall will lead to the longest escalator shafts on the Underground. From there, a second short flight will descend to a circulating area to the west of the existing island platform. The northbound track of this will be filled in as was done at Euston (Northern City Line southbound platform) when the Victoria Line was built, and a direct passageway made to the southbound platform. A totally new northbound platform will be constructed in a new station tunnel, and the line diverted into it. This work is due to be completed in 1992.

Although the Northern Line is next in the queue for wholesale updating after the Central, a number of shorter term improvements are being undertaken. Transfer of additional trains from the Bakerloo as part of the repercussions of the delivery of the 1983 tube stock has boosted the number of trains in service. Highgate depot has been reopened and modernised, while 11 stations at the southern end of the line are to be extensively refurbished – with special attention paid to anti-graffiti measures. The dot matrix information displays are being upgraded at all 49 stations on the line, and a further extension of passenger security measures is anticipated at the southern end, which has seen some growth of late evening traffic in response. Dot matrix indicators are being provided in ticket halls so that passengers need to descend to platform level only when the train is due. Aerials are now being installed in the ceilings of underground passages so that staff can remain in contact by personal radio.

Below:
The East London Line's A stock trains carried several experimental versions of the new livery; here all the upper panels are blue and the lower in white. The train is arriving at Surrey Quays in June 1990. ***John Glover***

Above:
The definitive version reduces the blue to a narrower stripe on the lower body side, while doors and front end are red. This train was also photographed at Surrey Quays. ***John Glover***

The Northern is operated by 1956, 1959 and 1972 Mk 1 stock trains. Refurbishment work is to be concentrated on the 1972 stock as the remainder are too old to justify much expenditure. The new decor is designed to offer a brash (and graffiti-free) exterior and a homely interior. Lighting is being softened to reduce glare, while providing much liked end bulkhead lights to brighten up the gloomy corners. Repositioned grab rails are intended to encourage standing passengers to move away from the door area. Ceiling panels and other fittings which have been assessed as potential fire hazards are to be replaced, and public address fitted.

Replacement of the rolling stock would not result in carbon copies of the Central Line stock. The Northern has long continuous tunnel gradients to the north, and a high proportion of the line is underground. Station platforms are also relatively restricted in length, and operationally it would be desirable to get away from seven cars.

The line capacity had been reduced in the years of passenger losses by signalling simplification schemes, which are now much regretted. The practical maximum on the Charing Cross and City branches is 25tph although theory said more ought to be possible. Transmission based signalling is now the favoured means to overcome the problem; through this the headway might be reduced from 2.25min to 1.50min. In this, the 115 train fleet (1991 peak requirement 84) would signal its position and speed through the track to a central computer, which then analyses the information every 0.5 seconds and 'instructs' the train accordingly. Such measures are now favoured over splitting the line into High Barnet/Mill Hill East to Morden via the City, and Edgware to Kennington via Charing Cross. Difficulties with this option include the vast numbers who would have to change (especially at Camden Town) and its implication for station stop times, and the likely imbalances of peak and off peak traffic requirements on the two routes. (While peak traffic is expected to grow by 19%, off-peak may reach +32% by 1997.) A further complication is that of depot facilities. Spending £75m to rebuild Camden Town seems a lot merely to inconvenience passengers. However, the outcome will depend on the ability of the technology to do what it promises, and its cost. For the time being, the Northern Line updating scheme is in abeyance.

Throughout the system, station modernisation has absorbed large chunks of funds. The work is difficult as it has to be carried out when trains are still running and the station is in use. Consequently, much of the retiling and platform resurfacing can only be done at night. There were also unforeseen hazards; it was a materials store being used by a contractor during station modernisation at Oxford Circus in 1984 which caught fire and wrecked the northbound Victoria Line platform. A wide variety of schemes has been tried; one of the most successful was that at Baker Street on the original 1863 Metropolitan and Circle platforms. The original station was lit by gas at night, but by day natural daylight came from the shafts above the platforms which had been installed to allow the escape of smoke from the locomotives. Later, accumulated grime, advertising hoardings and fluorescent lighting made it a dismal place indeed. The refurbishment involved stone cleaning, the introduction of artificial daylight through sodium lights in the old shafts, and new seats and fittings.

Other notable past refurbishments have been David Gentleman's mural on melamine panels of the mediaeval craftsmen building the original Eleanor Cross above at Charing Cross (Northern Line), and a complementary portrayal of some of the treasures of the National Galllery and the National Portrait Gallery on the Bakerloo Line platforms. Eduardo Paolozzi's unique hi-fi inspired mosaics at Tottenham Court Road, the British Museum theme at Holborn, and the Brunel tunnelling shields at Paddington are others which catch the eye. Throughout, fittings such as cable ducts and seats are in the Line colour, and standard roundel style station names are used. Various experiments have taken place with signing, and illuminated 'Way Out' indicators, for instance, are all now in yellow.

The relief of station congestion has produced a list which included Monument, Bank (Northern Line), both as a result of the DLR extension, and Goodge Street as a result of UTS. The problems varied between locations; lift or escalator capacity (eg Russell Square), the ticket barrier or ticket hall capacity (eg Bayswater, High Street Kensington), platform capacity (eg Liverpool Street Central Line and Victoria, Victoria Line). At Euston Square, consideration was being given to 'double-ending' the station by providing a ticket hall at each end of the platforms; here that would have the additional advantage of improving the access to Euston

BR station. At Tottenham Court Road, better street access was needed, and a new escalator shaft. 27 stations have a measurable present problem, while an eye to future expansion as a result of new lines was also important. Thus the rebuilt Tottenham Court Road will include provision for both east-west Crossrail and the Chelsea-Hackney lines.

The difficulties at Victoria were complex. The Victoria Line ticket hall needed enlargement, with augmentation to the escalators and the lower concourse. Restricted platform widths increased station stop times, which had serious implications for the train service which could be operated. With trains halted by up to a minute to allow passengers to alight and board (preferably in that order!), this constrained the number of trains per hour which could be run on the whole line. The possible solutions, all of which were exceedingly costly, included widened station platforms, additional platforms, and 'double-ending' the station. In such cases, and Liverpool Street Central Line was as bad, the aim must be to control stop times, and if this needed new track layouts, rolling stock modifications, staff training or signalling changes, these had to be built into the plans.

The capacity of lines is governed primarily by train lengths and frequencies. More trains and longer trains were one of the options being pursued by Network South-East, but on the Underground it is considered that anything much more than 30tph is the realistic maximum, despite schedules in the past on the Bakerloo and District lines offering a (perhaps theoretical) 34 or 36 tph. Train capacities vary, but using the Underground's formal loading standards, an 8 x A stock formation will carry 680, while both 6 x C stock and most tube stock trains will carry 550.

To combat the spread of graffiti, painting of the East London Line trains was begun in 1988, at a cost of £5,000 per vehicle. The first A stock trains to be treated featured red fronts, blue doors and grey panels, but several variations have been tried on these, the C and the 1967 family of tube stock. The hope is that it will offer a much improved appearance over pitted aluminium, and be easier to clean if, or rather when, it is attacked by the spray can. The new external finishes complement the refurbishment programmes now underway for some vehicle interiors.

Welcome as all these improvements are, they will not do more than scratch at the surface of the underlying issues. The embarrassment of custom was to offer an unparalleled opportunity for network development. The Central London Rail Study (CLRS) was a joint approach by the Department of Transport, who brought together Network South-East, London Regional Transport and London Underground Ltd to address the wider issues. The terms of reference of the CLRS were as follows:

- To develop a strategy for improving services for rail passengers.
- To provide for forecast demand.
- To have regard to the need to maximise the use of existing resources.
- To put forward packages of measures whose costs were justified in terms of revenue and external benefits.
- To present the strategic choices.

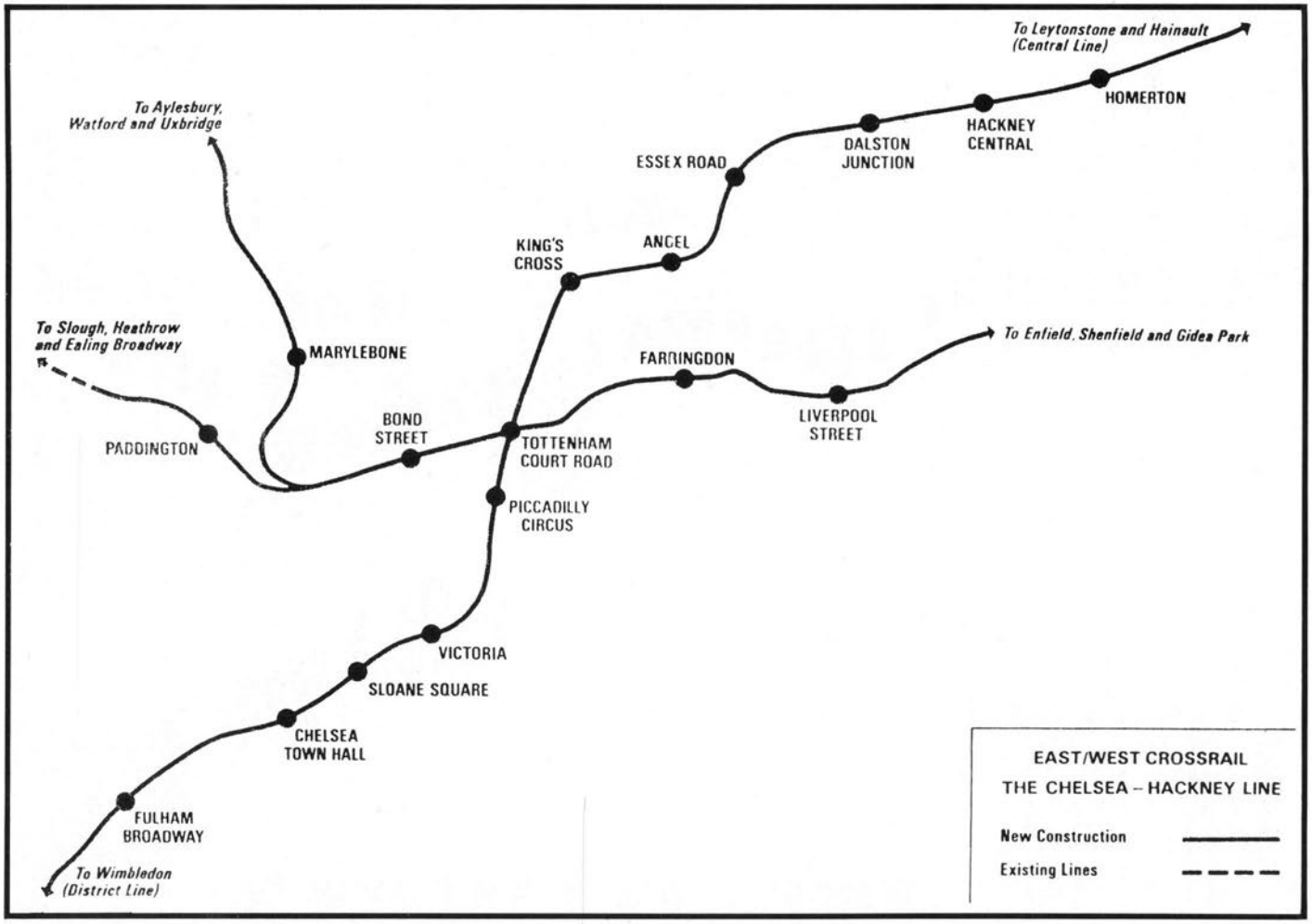
Above:
A North London Line service from North Woolwich formed of No 313.009 arrives at Stratford. It is intended that the Jubilee Line extension will parallel the NLL on the far side of the BR tracks, and terminate alongside the NLL station out of sight on the right of this picture. ***John Glover***

Above right:
The present burrowing junction at Leytonstone achieves full grade separation of the Epping service (centre) and the Hainault lines (left and right). The Chelsea–Hackney line is to take over one of these branches from the Central, and will require considerable changes here. A 1962 stock train bound for West Ruislip approaches. ***John Glover***

Right:
A special train organised by London Underground ran from Wimbledon to Wimbledon via most of the District Line on 2 October 1988. It consisted of Gatwick Express stock with one of the new battery locomotives at each end. In this view No L65 heads the train through East Ham. No L67 is out of sight as its tube gauge body is well below the roof line of the coaching stock! ***Brian Morrison***

Such a remit forces a position to be taken on a number of critical issues. Would the growth of the last few years persist – and what proportion would find its way to rail?

65



If the system was left as it is, would that have the effect of throttling that growth, which would then take place outside the London area altogether (and, if so, did that actually matter?). What were the various options for dealing with that growth, and what could be the basis for a justification of the expenditure needed for a really major increase in capacity?

Compared with 1987, the year 2001 was currently expected to see a further rise of between 20% and 30% in peak traffic, with off-peak growing between 30% and 45%. Employment was undoubtedly the key; roundly one million people were employed in the Central Area in 1987, a number which it was anticipated would grow by 100,000 (10%) or even by 150,000 (15%) by the end of the century. In Docklands the growth rates were much higher, given the relatively insignificant base levels, leading to employment there of between 120,000 and 150,000 in 2001.

It is the peak period where the capacity problem becomes acute. The system had, more or less, coped with the growth to date, albeit with severe discomfort in some areas. Identified sections of lines which were now overloaded in the peak included Oxford Circus and Euston, Oxford Circus and Swiss Cottage, Bank and Elephant & Castle, Arsenal and Holborn, St James's Park and Sloane Square, Archway and Warren Street, Leyton and Holborn, Fulham Broadway and South Kensington, Green Park and Victoria. Given another 20% additional peak traffic on the system by 2001, the general overloading would take in all the eastern part of the Central Line, large chunks of the Northern and Victoria Lines, the District and Piccadilly Line corridors to west London, and the Metropolitan and Jubilee Line corridors to north west London.

So far, then, the potential bill for the base network looked something like this:

Relief of station congestion		£420m
Improving operating performance		£60m
Service enhancements (LUL)		£200m
Service enhancements (NSE)		£550m
Major changes to service structure		£100m
Total	*up to*	*£1,500m*

Beyond that, the answer must lie in network extensions. The most exciting schemes are those for the new lines across central London. There are two schemes with a high claim to priority. The east-west Crossrail scheme would link British Rail suburban services at Liverpool Street and Paddington/Marylebone with a deep level tunnel and intermediate stations only at Farringdon, Tottenham Court Road and Bond Street. Liverpool Street to Paddington would be a 10min journey, and 24 trains per hour would use the link. Of all the schemes tested, this was the one which came closest to eliminating overcrowding on the most heavily laden section of the Underground. This is the Central Line between Bethnal Green and Liverpool Street, which in 1987 was carrying 26,500 passengers in the peak hour, 40% above the planning standard. It was also the only one to reduce loads to below the planning standard on the Metropolitan and Circle Lines east of Baker Street. Furthermore, it had some effect on the District and Piccadilly Lines around Earl's Court, by attracting people in the Ealing area away from the Underground.

Above:
East-west Crossrail and Chelsea-Hackney tube line proposals, 1989.

The north-south link is most likely to be provided by a new Chelsea-Hackney tube line, taking over the Epping branch of the Central Line. It would then proceed via Homerton, Hackney Central, Dalston Kingsland, Essex Road, Angel, King's Cross, Tottenham Court Road, Piccadilly Circus, Victoria, Sloane Square, Chelsea, Fulham Broadway and the present District Line to Wimbledon. Both schemes have substantial merit. A Bill for Crossrail is to be deposited in 1991, but Chelsea-Hackney will have to wait for the time being.

To the surprise of many, though, it was the Jubilee Line projection to Stratford for which a Parliamentary Bill was deposited in 1989, following pledges of financial support from private sector developers in Docklands. The Jubilee was not high on the list of the Central London Rail Study options for relieving congestion, and it transpired subsequently that private contributions would match less than 15% or so of the costs. The Charing Cross terminus is to be abandoned, and the line diverted east of Green Park to serve Westminster, Waterloo, Southwark, London Bridge, Bermondsey, Canada Water, Canary Wharf, North Greenwich, Canning Town, West Ham, and Stratford. The extension is 9 miles in length, and 60-plus trains will be needed for the line as a whole. Each will consist of three 1983 stock cars, plus four new build vehicles. These latter will

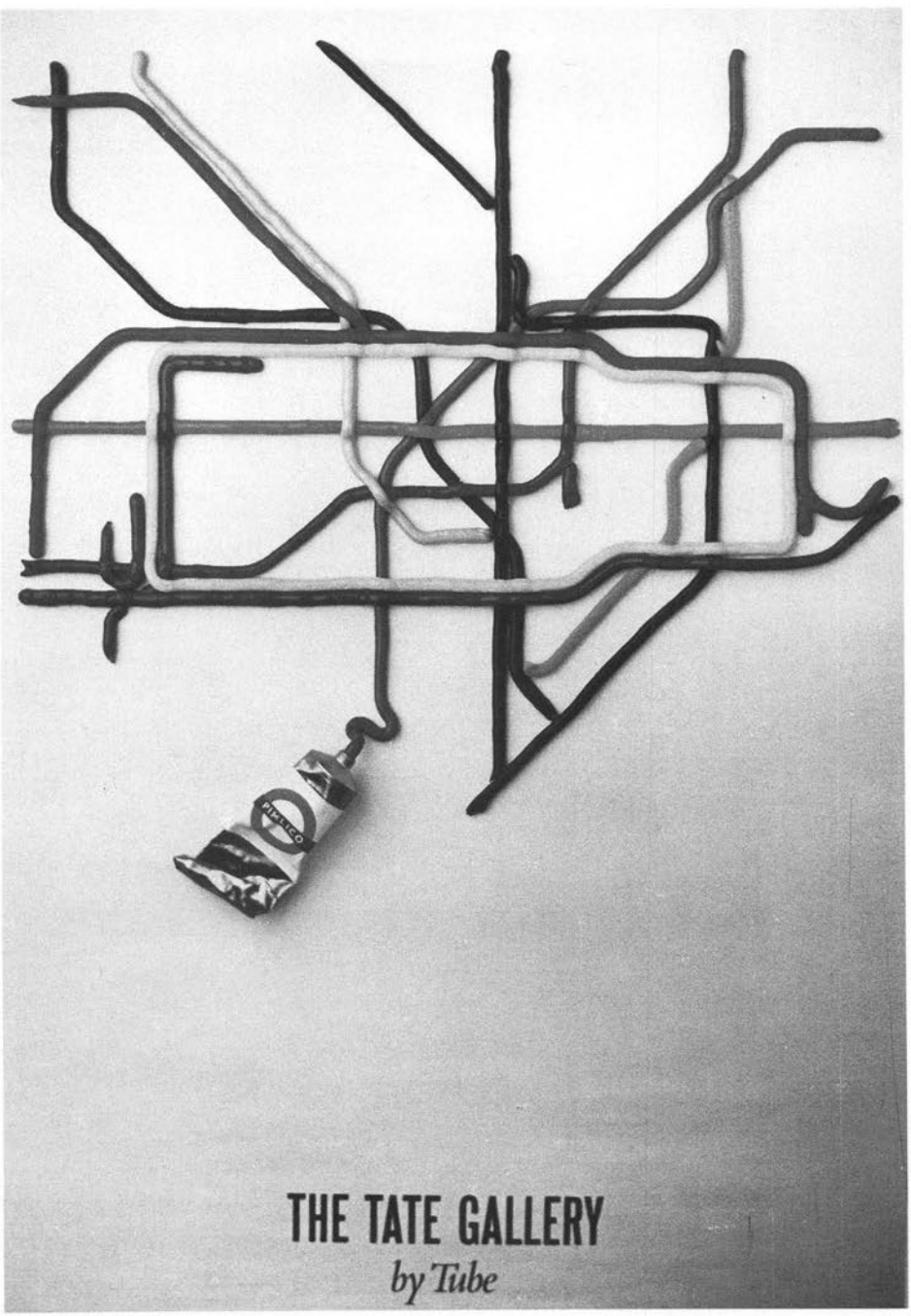
have conventional double leaf doors. The original cars, which will be reseated to increase standing capacity in the door areas, will be marshalled at the outer ends of the trains where passenger loadings are lower. The new fleet will all be thyristor controlled with solid state electronics. The depot site chosen is to be at Stratford Market. It is likely to open in 1996.

Other schemes under consideration include:

- East London Line extended north to Broadgate and Dalston, and south to Peckham Rye and East Dulwich.
- Central Line junction in tunnel, extended from Shepherd's Bush to Turnham Green and take over Richmond branch of the District; Bakerloo Line junction at Queen's Park, then extended in tunnel to North Acton onto Central Line and to Ealing Broadway. This scheme helps east and west of central area traffics of the Central, and relieves the corridor west through Hammersmith.
- Northern Line extended south from Kennington to Brixton, Streatham and Crystal Palace. This relieves existing lines and reaches new markets.
- Enhanced Thameslink service (NSE).

There are also other more modest schemes, and these include the projection of the Mill Hill East branch of the Northern Line to Copthall Stadium, and District Line services from Earl's Court to Clapham Junction over the West London Extension Railway.

Perhaps it should be stressed that London Underground is primarily looking at financial returns and revenue benefits, and not social benefits. But, if London is to grow as people appear to want, such massive investment is unavoidable, with the only alternative being demand management through fares. With major road building ruled out as a practicable alternative, rail must be the mode to be exploited further. The formal function of LUL and other transport operators is to best meet the transport needs of Greater London.



In the spring of 1989, London Regional Transport were set new objectives for their rail services by the Government. These were:

- To carry through the recommendations arising from the King's Cross fire.
- To provide for the continuing increase in traffic on the Underground, and for growing needs in Docklands.
- To improve the quality of services and security for the traveller.

With the scene having changed so significantly, formal targets have been set for service quality. Among these is the performance of lifts and escalators. Only 75% were in working order in 1989, which is freely admitted to be unacceptable. Those on the Victoria Line, which were only 20 years old, were failing. Underground escalators may now be the cleanest in the world in the aftermath of King's Cross, but the incapacity of the industry and the high loads now being carried for hours at a time have played havoc with performance. New escalators were to be installed at 12 a year, but the programme has been curtailed.

In escalators, as in so much else, the largely unsung role of the engineer is crucial. Here too there are changes. Technology offers the ability to squeeze more out of existing infrastructure, to increase construction benefits, and to reduce operating costs. But new technology is also demanding: new skills are needed, control over specifications is essential (including the interfaces between disciplines), while exploitation needs to encompass learning from outside. It is much more cost effective to learn from mistakes of others!

Power electronics offer tremendous potential. The positive effects include energy saving, regenerative braking, jerk free operation, wheelslip control, elimination of fire hazards through doing away with dc starting resistances, response to supply variations, and no contactor maintenance. Conversely, they add weight, interact with signalling and power supply, and need a greater engineering input.

Similarly, there are huge gains to be made in the inter-related fields of signalling, traffic control, communications and passenger information. What could be more antiquated in concept than traditional block signalling when track capacity is the most precious asset? Computer aided engineering enables calculations on matters such as safety and immunisation to be made more accurate and therefore reduces the likelihood of wasteful over engineering. Simulation for site specific designs can be carried out, and the testing of trade offs. The need to build prototypes for engineering reasons has now largely passed. Another fast developing field includes management information systems; the instant calculating ability of computer systems vastly enhances the capability of flexible systems scheduling.

Left:
'Tate Gallery by Tube' has sold more copies than any other poster at the London Transport Museum; the original idea was executed in toothpaste.
Author's collection

Studies continue into the possibilities of diverting the Watford branch trains into Watford Junction via a new 'Croxley link'. A train of A stock crosses the Grand Union canal as it leaves Watford on 20 April 1977. *John Glover*

The concomitant need is for wholly satisfactory agreements to be reached with the staff.

The conclusion is that the sheer scale of potential technology impacts must be managed, with London Underground determining where it is going and organising itself accordingly. Engineering activities are a service which is focused to meet the needs of business managers. Engineers determine standards. Equipment procurers (not all engineers) draw up specifications. Contractual obligations on outside purchases ensure (one hopes) reliability. However, while procurement by performance specification encourages the supplier to innovate (compared with technical specification), it has to be seen also in the context of managerial responsibilities. What is the best value for the business?

The Underground needs more revenue. By the end of the decade, it was noticeable that official noises were beginning to be made about fares levels; a slow increase in real fares since LRT took over in 1984 was approaching a cumulative 20% five years later. The harder line asserted that fares had not grown faster than earnings, and that fares levels still offered good value for money. Indeed, the average fare per passenger journey at 1990 levels is only 57p, contrasting with the minimum fare of 80p now applicable in the Central Zone 1. The users of the system are predominately under 35 and well off. With a Government view that passengers must pay for the benefits they receive, further real fares increases with alterations to the Travelcard zonal system in order to finance investment, at least for renewals, seem inevitable. Such, at any rate, was the view of the Monopolies and Mergers Commission, which reported on London Underground in 1991. With economic recession biting into traffic levels, and following some financial misjudgements, the Company has had to make economies in all areas. The MMC were critical of the physically decayed state of much of the infrastructure. 'The public's perception of an erratic, overcrowded and poorly maintained service in many areas is broadly correct' they said, albeit acknowledging that the overall picture was more favourable. They too concluded that substantially higher fares would be needed in order to finance investment and renewals.

It is system expansion that seems to cause the most difficulty. Who will pay for it? How much can users be expected to contribute? What can be expected from the private sector – and from Government by means of grant?

How reliable are the forecasts of employment and activity generally? Over the years, there have been three classic and interlocked mistakes: underestimating the future rate of growth, providing insufficient investment to meet demand, and a lack of foresight on the best way forward. Somehow, the same errors must not be made again. When it comes to new Underground railways, the costs are enormous and the time scale for building is extended, but once complete they are there for ever. The premium which is to be placed on stable policies is incalculable. Underground railways quickly become unseen but essential parts of the cities which they serve. But their conception, planning, financing and construction are so complex and involve so many different interests, that it is a major challenge to bring them into existence. New railways, or extensions to an existing system, can only be long term solutions to a problem.

And so the development of London's rail transport services continues. Let us not lose sight of the purpose of the system: people congregate in cities because of the greater opportunities which they offer in terms of employment, education and social life. These opportunities can only be grasped if efficient transport is available at a reasonable cost; otherwise the whole purpose of the city is lost. Roads alone can never be the solution: for London anyway, in a catch phrase always associated with the late Kenneth Williams, 'the answer lies in the soil'.

The years to come promise great things; let us hope that a combination of political will, managerial excellence and public support enable them to be achieved.

Below:
Crowds of commuters wait for their city-bound Central Line train at Stratford, May 1991. ***John Glover***

APPENDICES

1 Chronology of Principal Events

Opening dates of sections of line until 30 June 1933

Metropolitan Railway

10 January 1863	Farringdon to Paddington
1 October 1863	Connection to Great Northern Railway at King's Cross
13 June 1864	Paddington to Hammersmith
23 December 1865	Farringdon to Moorgate
13 April 1868	Baker Street to Swiss Cottage
1 October 1868	Paddington to Gloucester Road
24 December 1868	Gloucester Road to South Kensington
1 February 1875	Moorgate to Liverpool Street, connecting to the Great Eastern Railway
12 July 1875	Moorgate to Liverpool Street (Metropolitan)
18 November 1876	Liverpool Street to Aldgate
30 June 1879	Swiss Cottage to West Hampstead
24 November 1879	West Hampstead to Willesden Green
2 August 1880	Willesden Green to Harrow-on-the-Hill
25 September 1882	Aldgate to Tower Hill
6 October 1884	Liverpool Street to Whitechapel
25 May 1885	Harrow-on-the-Hill to Pinner
1 September 1887	Pinner to Rickmansworth
8 July 1889	Rickmansworth to Chesham
1 September 1892	Chalfont & Latimer to Aylesbury (old)
1 January 1894	Stoke Mandeville to Aylesbury
1 April 1894	Aylesbury to Verney Junction (absorbed)
1 December 1899	Quainton Road to Brill (absorbed)
4 July 1904	Harrow-on-the-Hill to Uxbridge
1 January 1905	Electrification, Baker Street to Uxbridge
1 July 1905	First stage of Inner Circle electrification inaugurated
2 November 1925	Moor Park and Rickmansworth to Watford
10 December 1932	Wembley Park to Stanmore

Metropolitan District Railway

1 October 1868	High Street Kensington to Gloucester Road
24 December 1868	Gloucester Road to Westminster
12 April 1869	Gloucester Road to West Brompton
30 May 1870	Westminster to Blackfriars
3 July 1871	Blackfriars to Mansion House and High Street Kensington to Earl's Court
9 September 1874	Earl's Court to Hammersmith
1 June 1877	Hammersmith to Richmond
1 July 1879	Turnham Green to Ealing Broadway
1 March 1880	West Brompton to Putney Bridge
1 May 1883	Acton Town to Hounslow Town
21 July 1884	Osterley to Hounslow West
6 October 1884	Mansion House to Whitechapel. Inner Circle completed and junction made with East London Railway at Whitechapel
3 June 1889	Putney Bridge to Wimbledon
2 June 1902	Whitechapel to Upminster
23 June 1903	Ealing Common to Park Royal
28 June 1903	Park Royal to South Harrow
1 March 1910	South Harrow to Uxbridge
2 June 1932	Through working Barking to Upminster begun

East London Railway

1 October 1884	Underground services operated Whitechapel to New Cross and New Cross Gate until 3 December 1906
31 March 1913	Shoreditch to New Cross and New Cross Gate using electric traction

Great Northern & City Railway

14 February 1904	Finsbury Park to Moorgate

City & South London Railway

18 December 1890	King William Street to Stockwell
25 February 1900	Borough to Moorgate and closure of King William Street
3 June 1900	Stockwell to Clapham Common
17 November 1901	Moorgate to Angel
12 May 1907	Angel to Euston
20 April 1924	Moorgate to Euston reopened after reconstruction. Through running to Hampstead line via Camden Town
1 December 1924	Moorgate to Clapham Common reopened
13 December 1926	Clapham Common to Morden. Through running via Kennington and Embankment to Hampstead line

Waterloo & City Railway

8 August 1898	Waterloo & City, worked by London & South Western Railway

Central London Railway

30 July 1900	Shepherds Bush to Bank
14 May 1908	Shepherds Bush to Wood Lane
28 July 1912	Bank to Liverpool Street
3 August 1920	Wood Lane to Ealing Broadway

Baker Street & Waterloo Railway

10 March 1906	Baker Street to Lambeth North
5 August 1906	Lambeth North to Elephant & Castle
27 March 1907	Baker Street to Marylebone
15 June 1907	Marylebone to Edgware Road
1 December 1913	Edgware Road to Paddington
31 January 1915	Paddington to Kilburn Park
11 February 1915	Kilburn Park to Queen's Park
10 May 1915	Queen's Park to Willesden Junction
16 April 1917	Willesden Junction to Watford Junction

Great Northern, Piccadilly & Brompton Railway

15 December 1906	Hammersmith to Finsbury Park
30 November 1907	Holborn to Aldwych
4 July 1932	Hammersmith to South Harrow
19 September 1932	Finsbury Park to Arnos Grove
9 January 1933	Acton Town to Northfields
13 March 1933	Northfields to Hounslow West and Arnos Grove to Oakwood

Charing Cross, Euston & Hampstead Railway

22 June 1907	Charing Cross to Golders Green and Archway
6 April 1914	Charing Cross to Embankment
19 November 1923	Golders Green to Hendon Central
18 August 1924	Hendon Central to Edgware

Major events from 1 July 1933

1 July 1933	Formation of London Passenger Transport Board under Act of 1933
31 July 1933	Opening, Oakwood to Cockfosters, Piccadilly Line
18 September 1933	Monument to Bank escalator link opened
25 September 1933	Opening of reconstructed Holborn station and closing of British Museum
23 October 1933	Opening, South Harrow to Uxbridge, Piccadilly Line
5 June 1935	New Works Programme 1935-40 announced
1 December 1935	Quainton Road to Brill closed
6 July 1936	Aylesbury to Verney Junction closed
1 November 1937	All steam locomotives and goods rolling stock transferred to London & North Eastern Railway (except service stock)
30 June 1938	1938 tube stock enters revenue earning service
31 October 1938	Opening of new Aldgate East station
4 December 1938	Opening of new Uxbridge station
3 July 1939	Opening, Archway to East Finchley, Northern Line
1 September 1939	Control of undertaking passed to Government through the Railway Executive Committee

20 November 1939	Opening, Baker Street to Stanmore, Bakerloo Line
14 April 1940	Opening, East Finchley to High Barnet, Northern Line
20 October 1940	Latimer Road to Kensington (Olympia) closed
19 January 1941	Opening of Highgate station, Northern Line
14 March 1941	Opening, Finchley Central to Mill Hill East, Northern Line
4 December 1946	Opening, Liverpool Street to Stratford, Central Line
5 May 1947	Opening, Stratford to Leytonstone, Central Line
30 June 1947	Opening, North Acton to Greenford, Central Line
23 November 1947	Opening of new White City station, replacing Wood Lane
14 December 1947	Opening, Leytonstone to Woodford and Newbury Park Central Line
1 January 1948	Formation of London Transport Executive as a nationalised body under the British Transport Commission, following Transport Act 1947. End of wartime controls
31 May 1948	Opening, Newbury Park to Hainault, Central Line
21 November 1948	Opening, Woodford to Hainault and Loughton, also Greenford to West Ruislip, Central Line
25 September 1949	Opening, Loughton to Epping, Central Line
18 November 1957	Opening, Epping to Ongar, Central Line
26 January 1958	First installation of programme machines for automatic junction signalling at Kennington
1 March 1959	Opening of interchange between Central and District/Circle Lines at Notting Hill Gate
2 March 1959	Acton Town to South Acton closed
12 September 1960	Opening of electrification, Rickmansworth to Amersham and Chesham, Metropolitan Line
11 September 1961	Metropolitan Line services north of Amersham withdrawn; end of steam passenger working on Underground services
18 June 1962	Completion of four tracks, Harrow North Junction to Watford South Junction, Metropolitan Line
1 January 1963	Formation of London Transport Board, following Transport Act 1962
10 January 1963	Centenary of first Underground railway
5 January 1964	First automatic ticket barrier installed at Stamford Brook
5 April 1964	Full scale trials of Automatic Train Operation commenced between Woodford and Hainault
4 October 1964	Finsbury Park to Drayton Park closed
10 October 1964	District Line services withdrawn between Acton Town and Hounslow West
5 February 1967	Opening of new Tower Hill station, District and Circle Lines
1 September 1968	Opening, Walthamstow to Highbury & Islington, Victoria Line
1 December 1968	Opening, Highbury & Islington to Warren Street, Victoria Line
7 March 1969	Opening, Warren Street to Victoria, Victoria Line
1 January 1970	Formation of London Transport Executive under the control of the Greater London Council, following Transport (London) Act 1969
23 July 1971	Opening, Victoria to Brixton, Victoria Line
14 September 1972	Opening of Pimlico station, Victoria Line
19 July 1975	Opening, Hounslow West to Hatton Cross, Piccadilly Line
28 February 1975	42 killed and 74 injured in tunnel wall end collision at Moorgate, Northern City Line
7 September 1975	Moorgate to Old Street closed
5 October 1975	Old Street to Drayton Park closed
16 August 1976	British Rail commences services Old Street to Drayton Park
8 November 1976	British Rail commences services Old Street to Moorgate and Drayton Park to Finsbury Park BR station
16 December1977	Opening, Hatton Cross to Heathrow Terminals 1, 2, 3, Piccadilly Line
1 May 1979	Opening, Baker Street to Charing Cross, and transfer of Baker Street to Stanmore Line to new Jubilee Line. Opening of interchange at new Charing Cross station
28 March 1980	Opening of London Transport Museum at Covent Garden
4 October 1981	'Fares Fair' introduced by Greater London Council, reducing fares by 32%
2 November 1981	Blake Hall station closed
17 December 1981	Law Lords rule 'Fares Fair' unlawful
21 March 1982	Fares increased by 96%
24 September 1982	Bakerloo Line services withdrawn north of Stonebridge Park
22 May 1983	GLC reduces fares by 25%. Travelcards introduced
1 July 1983	Golden Jubilee of London Transport
26 March 1984	Introduction of One Person Operation, Surface lines
4 June 1984	Bakerloo Line services restored between Stonebridge Park and Harrow & Wealdstone
29 June 1984	Formation of London Regional Transport under control of the Secretary of State for Transport following Act of 1984
1 April 1985	Formation of London Underground Ltd as a subsidiary of London Regional Transport
12 April 1986	Opening, Terminal 4 station, Piccadilly Line
31 August 1987	Opening, Tower Gateway and Stratford to Island Gardens, Docklands Light Railway
31 August 1987	Introduction of One Person Operation, conventionally driven trains, on Tube lines
18 November 1987	31 killed in fire at King's Cross, Piccadilly Line escalators
29 July 1991	Opening, Shadwell to Bank, Docklands Light Railway
1992	Opening, Poplar to Beckton, Docklands Light Railway
1996	Opening, Green Park to Stratford, Jubilee Line

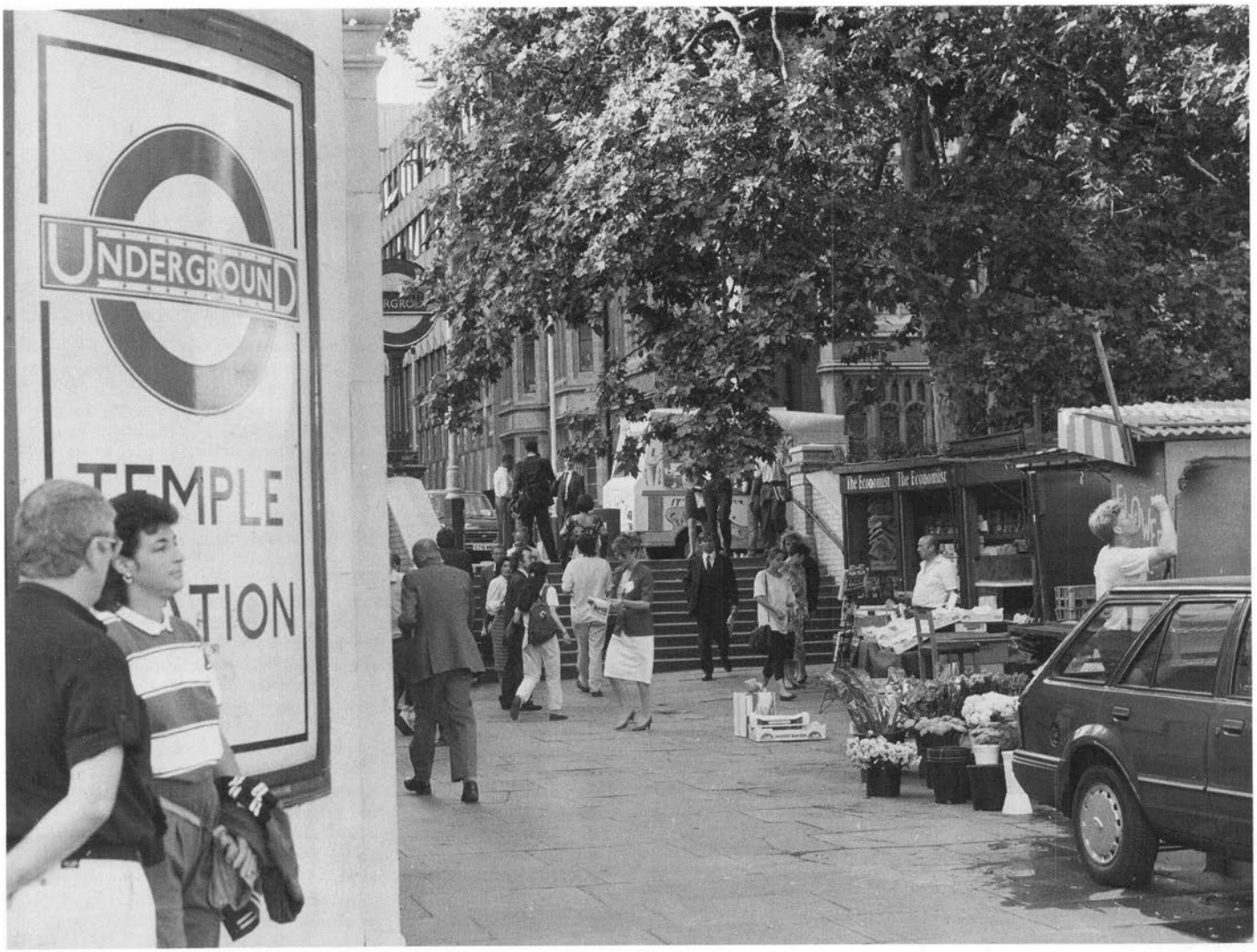
Notes

Dates shown as 'Openings' refer to the first day of public service. Thus although the Jubilee Line was officially opened by HRH Prince Charles, public services south of Baker Street did not commence until the following day. Sometimes opening dates refer to the first Underground involvement. 14 April 1940 was the first day of electric traction from East Finchley to High Barnet, the Underground having supplanted the previous L&NER steam service. Withdrawals refer to the first day on which the new arrangements applied; thus the last steam passenger services ran on 10 September 1961, and British Railways took over all services north of Amersham on 11 September. Throughout, present day names of stations have been used to avoid confusion; the station shown as opening on 25 September 1882 at Tower Hill, for instance, was originally named Tower of London.

2 List of Underground Lines and Routes

	No of stations	*Route miles*
Metropolitan: Aldgate to Amersham, branches to Chesham, Watford and Uxbridge	34	42
District: Upminster to Ealing Broadway, branches to Richmond, Wimbledon, Edgware Road and Kensington (Olympia)	60	40
Circle: A combination of sections of the Hammersmith & City and District Lines, plus Aldgate and Cromwell Road curve	27	13
Hammersmith & City: Hammersmith to Barking	28	16
East London: Shoreditch to New Cross and New Cross Gate	8	5
Bakerloo: Elephant & Castle to Harrow & Wealdstone	25	14
Central: Ealing Broadway and West Ruislip to Epping and Ongar, with a loop via Hainault	51	52
Jubilee: Stanmore to Charing Cross	17	14
Northern: Morden to Edgware and High Barnet via Charing Cross or Bank, with a branch to MIll Hill East	49	36
Piccadilly: Cockfosters to Heathrow terminal loop and Uxbridge, with a branch to Aldwych	52	45
Victoria: Walthamstow to Brixton	16	14
Docklands Light Railway: Tower Gateway/Bank and Stratford to Island Gardens	16	9

Below:
The ambience of Temple station is enhanced by the flower stall and news kiosk. ***John Glover***



3 Royal Occasions

4 November 1890	Prince Edward (the future King Edward VII) visited Stockwell to open the City & South London Railway
27 June 1900	Prince Edward opened the Central London Railway, riding from Bank to Shepherd's Bush
26 February 1929	Prince Edward (the future King Edward VIII) visited Chiswick and Acton Works
14 February 1933	Prince Edward visited the Piccadilly Line eastern extension
15 May 1939	Princess Elizabeth and Princess Margaret rode from St James's Park to Tottenham Road and back as part of their education, accompanied by a lady-in-waiting and a governess
12 July 1968	Prince Philip and Prince Charles inspected tunnelling work under Vauxhall on the Brixton extension
7 March 1969	The Queen became the first reigning monarch to ride in the cab of a tube train between Green Park and Oxford Circus as she opened the Victoria Line
23 July 1971	Princess Alexandra opened the Brixton extension
16 December 1977	The Queen rode from Hatton Cross to Heathrow Central as she opened the airport extension
30 April 1979	Prince Charles opened the Jubilee Line, travelling from Charing Cross to Stanmore
28 March 1980	Princess Anne opened the London Transport Museum at Covent Garden
1 April 1986	The Prince and Princess of Wales opened Heathrow Terminal 4
30 July 1987	The Queen opened the Docklands Light Railway,travelling from Island Gardens to Poplar, and thence to Tower Gateway

Selected Further Reading

This brief guide can only skim the surface of the available literature, and those looking for a deeper understanding of various parts of the subject matter will have to explore further.

For a general overview of London itself, the series of books by Gavin Weightman and Steve Humphries *The Making of Modern London* (Sidgwick & Jackson, from 1983) is difficult to beat, while the standard work on London Transport is undoubtedly T. C. Barker and Michael Robbins' *A History of London Transport*. Volume 1 The Nineteenth Century, and Volume 2 The Twentieth Century to 1970 were both published by Allen & Unwin, in 1963 and 1974. Mike Horne's current series of short histories of individual lines published by Douglas Rose is also excellent. Bringing in some recent history, though hardly in the same detail, is the present author's *London Transport Buses and Trains Since 1933* (Ian Allan, 1988). Those interested in the political machinations will find Paul E. Garbutt's *London Transport and the Politicians* (Ian Allan, 1985) of value. For a look at the wider railway scene, H. P. White's Volume 3 *Greater London* in the David & Charles series of Regional Histories of the Railways of Great Britain is an excellent historical account, while numerous HMSO/Department of Transport publications, such as the *Central London Rail Study* (1989) give glimpses into the future. The *Annual Report and Accounts* of London Transport are a mine of financial and statistical information; more recently from London Regional Transport they have been supplemented by their *Statement of Strategy* and the *Annual Business Plan*.

Dealing specifically with the Underground, the technical side of the rolling stock is dealt with in loving detail by J. Graeme Bruce in three complementary volumes: *Steam to Silver* (Capital Transport, 1983), *The London Underground Tube Stock* (Ian Allan, 1988), and *Workhorses of the London Underground* (Capital Transport, 1987). Fleet details and various statistics will be found in John Glover and Colin J. Marsden's *Motive Power Recognition: 4 London Transport Railways and PTE Systems* (Ian Allan, 1985), but those interested in the number details of all the rolling stock will want to turn to Brian Hardy's *London Underground Rolling Stock* (Capital Transport, 12th edition, 1990).

Of the detailed company histories, few can compare with Alan A. Jackson's *London's Metropolitan Railway* (David & Charles, 1986). From the same author, in conjunction with Desmond Croome, came *Rails Through the Clay*, published by Allen & Unwin in 1962; a new edition is in preparation. A quite remarkable treatise on the stations, illustrated by many drawings, is Laurence Menear's *London's Underground Stations: A Social and Architectural Study* (Midas Books 1983). As to establishing 'what opened when', Douglas Rose's splendidly detailed and privately published *The London Underground: A Diagrammatic History* (5th edition, 1990) knows no equals.

'Official' publications presently in print are *London Underground Ltd: An Official Handbook* (1990) and Bob Bayman and Stephen Jolly's *Docklands Light Railway Official Handbook* (2nd ed, 1988). Both are published by Capital Transport.

Articles appear in *Modern Railways*, *Railway World* and other magazines from time to time. Finally, *Underground News*, the monthly journal of the London Underground Railway Society can be recommended as a good record of current events, with other topics covered in *Underground* and similar publications from the same source.

Index

'A' class locomotives 33
American Car & Foundry Co 29
Ashbury Railway Carriage Co 12
Ashbury & Brush 27
Ashfield, Lord 30, 38, 61
Automatic Fare Collection 85
Automatic Train Control 145
Automatic Train Operation 75, 103, 122, 124, 125, 134
Automatic Train Protection 145
Automatic Train Supervision 134
Aveling & Porter locomotives 18
Aylesbury & Buckingham Railway 15, 18

Bakerloo Line 30, 125-7, 146
Barlow, Peter 19
Beck, H. C. 43, 92
Bell Punch tickets 84
Beyer Peacock & Co 12
'Billy Brown' 51
Birmingham Railway Carriage & Wagon Co 27, 35, 75
Brush locomotives 28
Broad gauge 10, 13
Brunel, Sir Marc Isambard 9, 18
BREL (1988) Ltd 144

Car maintenance 106-9
Channel Tunnel 16
Central Line 42, 144, 146
Central Line extensions 55-9
Central London Railway 27
Central London Rail Study 148
Chambers Committee 1955 62
Charing Cross, Euston & Hampstead Railway 28
'Chopper' traction control 135
Circle Line 16, 26
City & South London Railway 22, 23, 26, 27, 36
City Lines & Extension Act 1879 15, 16
Coal gas lighting 14
Condensing gear, steam 12
Computer Aided Railway Timetable 93
County of London Plan 61
Clark & Webb chain brake 12
'Cut and cover' construction 9

District Railway 13, 14, 15, 18, 22, 30, 32, 38, 39
Docklands Light Railway (DLR) 132-3
DLR Bank Extension 138
Dot matrix indicators 82, 144, 146
'Drico' communication equipment 96, 103
Duke of Buckingham 18

'E' class locomotives 33
East & West India Docks & Birmingham Jct Railway 133
Ealing & Shepherd's Bus Railway 35
East London Railway 16, 19, 129
Edmondson, Thomas 84
Electric lighting 22
Electric locomotives 22, 27
Electro-pneumatic brake 71, 75, 76, 96
Elliot, Sir John 63
Ellis, Hamilton 27
Experimental Tube Train (ETT) 75, 76

'F' class locomotives 33
Fares 130-1
Fireless locomotive 10
Forbes, James Staat 15, 16
'Fore and aft' brake control 80
'Fowler's Ghost' 10
Fowler, John 9, 10

'G' class locomotives 33
Ganz 31, 115
Garbutt, P. 92
Gibb, George 28
Gladstone, W. E. 10
Graffiti 148
Great Central Railway 18, 35, 37
Great Eastern Railway 15
Greater London Council (GLC) 125
Great Northern Railway 7, 10, 15, 35, 36, 38
Great Northern & City Railway 28, 30
Greathead shield 20, 28, 63
Great Western Railway 7, 10, 13, 14, 15, 34
Green, Leslie 28
Great Northern, Piccadilly & Brompton Railway 38

'H' class locomotives 33
Hamersmith & City Line 39
'Handing' 27
Heathrow Loop 83
Holden, Charles 81
Howson, Henry 5
Hungarian Carriage & Wagon Works 29
Hunslet locomotives 27
Hutchinson, Harold F. 92

Inner Circle 13, 15, 16, 32

Jackson & Sharpe 26

King's Cross station 7, 9, 43
Kerr, Dick 26, 28

Les Ateliers de Construction du Nord 29
Light rail systems 138-9
London & Blackwall Railway 6, 132, 133
London & Greenwich Railway 6
London & North Western Railway 7, 10, 14, 30, 32
London & North Eastern Railway 33, 38
London & South Western Railway 14, 26, 35, 39
London, Brighton & South Coast Railway 16
London, Chatham & Dover Railway 15
London Electric Railway Co 30
London Electric Railway Facilities Act 1915 42
London, Midland & Scottish Railway 38
London Docklands Development Corporation 80, 132
London Traffic Conference 30, 84
London Passenger Transport Board 43
London, Tilbury & Southend Railway 18, 32
London Transport Board 69
London Transport Executive 54
London Transport Museum 13
London Regional Transport 140
London Underground Ltd:
  objectives 140
  strategies 141-2
  long-term goals 143
  new stock 144-5
  network extensions 150-1

Mather & Platt 22
Maunsell 'K' and 'N' classes 33
Maybury, Sir Henry 38
'Metro-Land' 61
Metro Cammell 75, 78, 79, 144
Mercury tube safety apparatus 71, 74
Metropolitan District Electric Traction Co 28
Metropolitan District Railway 12, 13, 14
Metropolitan Railway 7, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 18, 22, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 37, 38
Metropolitan Line rebuilding 66-9, 129
Metropolitan Railway, Carriage & Wagon Co 27
'Miniprinter' ticket machine 85
Ministry of Transport 42
Motor cars 26
Multiple-unit working 27

New Works Programme 1935-40 45, 54
North London Railway 133
North Metropolitan Railway Co 7
Northern Line 30, 37, 146
Northern Line extensions 59-61

Outer Circle 14, 32
Oil gas lighting 14, 15

Passenger lifts 87, 90, 91
'Passimeter' 42
Paxton, Sir Joseph 7
Pearson, Charles 7
Piccadilly Line 30, 37, 39
Piccadilly Line extensions 127, 129, 131
Pick, Frank 61, 81
Pneumatic Camshaft Motor 70
Power generation 112-3
'Rapidprinter' ticket machine 85
Rail conductor 115

Shillibeer, George 6
Siemens 26
Speyer, Edgar 28
Spiller, George 13
Signalling 96-102
Sprague, Frank J. 27, 28, 70
St Pancras station 43
Stanley, Albert 30
Staff training 95-6
'Station of origin' ticket 85
Station modernisation 147
  congestion 147-8
Substations 113, 115

'Talkback' facility 65
Thomson-Houston Company 31, 70
Thames Tunnel 19, 50
Thyristor control 75, 135, 145
Tower Subway 19
Tubes, Tunnelling 20, 21
Train formations 74, 78, 80
Travelcards 82
Track maintenance 109-12
'Trav-o-lator' 82
Timetabling 93-5
'Twopenny Tube' 28, 84

Underground Centenary Celebrations 116
Underground Electric Railway Co 26, 28
Underground tunnels and air raids 50
Underground map 92
Underground Ticketing System 86

Ventilation of tunnels 91
Victoria Line 5, 63, 116, 118-9, 122-5, 146

Waterloo & City Railway 26, 144
Watkin Sir Edward 15, 16
West London Extension Railway 14
West London Railway 14
Westinghouse, air brake 12, 96
traction controls 33
Worcester Engine Co 15
Widened Lines 118
World War 2 and the Underground 49-53

Yerkes, Charles Tyson 28, 30, 31

On 16 July 1991 a special event was organised by LUL at which refurbished units would be displayed to members of the press.

Left:
Refurbished Cravens A62 stock, with DC No 5132 leading, waits to leave Moorgate for Rickmansworth.

Below:
Examples of refurbished (L-R) 1967, 1972, 1973 C69 and A62 stock on display at Rickmansworth South Sidings. ***Both: Brian Morrison***

ISBN 0-7110-1899-5

9 780711 018990 90000